

Vol 2

THE PROSE BRUT: A PARALLEL EDITION
OF GLASGOW HUNTERIAN MSS. T.3.12
AND V.5.13, WITH INTRODUCTION AND NOTES

by

LISTER MALCOLM MATHESON

VOLUME II

SUBMITTED FOR THE DEGREE OF PH.D.
TO THE UNIVERSITY OF GLASGOW

DEPARTMENT OF ENGLISH LANGUAGE

MARCH, 1977

THE PROSE BRUT

VOLUME II

HUNTERIAN MSS. T.3.12 and V.5.13. TEXTS AND NOTES

MS. B(Hunterian MS. V.5.13)

(Fol. 2^a) Her¹ begynnyth A Boke Wyche that ys callyd
Brute of the Croneclis of Engelande²

[T]³ be wych booke treftyth 7 lellyth^a of þe kyngys and
 princypall lordys þat euyr was in þis lond and of aventur
 and wonderdyrfull^b thyngis and batayllys and opir notabyll
 actys warres conquestys þat be fyll in þis þis⁴ Same lande
 // ⁵ And þis lond ys callyd Brytayne after hym þat fyrst
 inhabit hit whos name was⁶ Brute / And þis same brut be
 gane fyrst þe Cite of london þe wyche he lett call þat
 tyme newe trove ~~//~~⁷ in þe remembrauns of þe old Troy from
 whens⁸ he and hys lynage were come / And þis boke made and
 compild men of religione and opir good clerkys þat
 wrytterne what be ffyll in thre^c tyme and mad þer of grett
 bokys and remembrance to men þat comen after hyme to her
 and See watt be fyll in þe lond afor tyme // And callyd
 heme cronycle And in thys lond haue bene frome brute on
 to kyng Edward þe þird after⁴ after þe conquest. C.xxxij
 kyngys whos trewys^d and actys bene compyld scortly in þis
 book⁹ wyche booke þe-wyche⁴ conteynyð CCxxxviiij Chaptirs
 wyth oute þe prothogoll^e [.]^r¹⁰ prolog

Here begynnyth a prolog¹¹

[T]¹² the prolog of þis boke declaryth how þis¹³ lond was
 callyd Albione after þe heldest dou3ter of þe reyall kyng
deoclician of Surre / The wych dou3tyr was callyd albayne
 And she with her xxxij Sustrys wer exylyd out of þeyr owne
 lond for gret tryspas þat þey haddyn[e]¹⁴ doo and þey
 Aryvyd in þis¹³ lond casuelly^f wher was no lyvyng creatur

Fol. 2 ¹H- outlined in red. ²Underlined in red; hence-
 forth no distinction is made betw. underlining or boxing in
 red or black ink, and no record is made of these in the
 textual notes. ³Erased three-line ornamental initial in
 blue. ⁴Stroked out. ⁵In red. ⁶Followed by superfluous
 double hyphen. ⁷-oye ~~//~~ poss. by corr. over erasure.

MS. A (Hunterian MS. T. 3. 12)

(Fol. 1^aa)¹ Here may a man here how engeland was first
Called Albyon And afterwarde Whan it hadde first þe name.

In² the noble londe of Sirrye þer whas a noble kyng & al
so myghty and of grete renoun than men Called Dyoclecyan.
þat wel and noblich hym gouerned^a and rewled þorogh hys
noble Chyualrye so þat he conquered alle þe londes þat
were a boutte hym. so þat almost alle the kynges of þe
world weren to hym entendaunt^b ¶³ And þus it by fylle
that thes Dyoclecyan wedded a gentyll damsell þat men
called Labana that whas hys Emes doghter. and sche loued
hym. as reson wolde. And so longe þei leuedyn in feere
þat he hadde getyn on here xxxiiij doghters of wiche
doghters þe Eldest men called Albanye ¶ And þese damesels
whan þei comen to age. weren and weren^c so fayre þat it
whas wondre. and þer fore Dyoclecyan. þat was⁴ her fader
made a sompnyng by hys letters. and commaunded. alle þe
kynges þat heldyn of hym. þat þei schulde come to hym at
a certeyne day as in þe letters whas conteyned to be at
hys solempne feste. And at þe same day alle þe kynges
comen & broghten wiþ þem admyralles and princes and Dukes
& noble Chyualrye. and so muche mirþe and Ioy what at þat
solempnite. þat wonder it whas to wete. And þus it fylle
þat þis dyoclecyan þoȝt to wedde hys xxxiiij doghters. vn
to þe kynges þat were comyn to þat solempnite. And so
þei spekyn. and dedyn. þat Albanye þe Eldest doghter and
alle her sistres (fol. 1^ab) Weren worthilich married vn
to the xxxiiij iij kynges þat weren lordes of grete powere

Fol. 1 ¹Hand A commences. The chapter-heading is in red, as are all chapter-headings in the MS. ²Three-line ornamental gilt initial I, with the ornamentation and flourishes continued round each column of writing (see Frontispiece). ³In blue. Paragraph marks are in blue or red in Hand A; henceforth the colour is not recorded in the notes. ⁴Superscript s.

but wyld (fol. 2^b) bestys as afor ys Said // And how
onclene Spyritis lay by heme and pey browthe forthe
horrybyll geantys 7 brut brut⁴ kyllyd heme¹⁵

Some¹⁶ tyme in þe nobyll lond of Surre þer was a mane of
gret renoun callyd /diocliciane/The wyche well 7 worthly
rewlyd hyme /⁵ So þat all most all þe kyngys Crystyne wher
to hyme contributours and to hym obbedyente // And þis
/diocliciane had be hys wyff /labana/ xxxiiij^{ti} dou3tirs
of þe wyche the eldis was callyd /Albyne And þes
damesellis whanne¹⁷ þey came to age þey wexit wondyr fayr
women wher for thys /dyoclysiane lett Sommen a gret
concell be-hys^{4g} of all þe kyngis þat held of hyme þat
þey schall come att A sertyn day at wyche dych¹⁸ day he
wyll make aryall fest / At wyche day þey comen bothe
kyngis.Dukys.and Erllys and much oþer pepyll out of
nombyr and þat fest was ryally arayid//⁵ And þis
/dioclisian pou3te to marry all hys dou3tyrs amongis all
þes kyngis assembeled /¹⁹ at þis Solemnite And Soo þes
womene was marryd to þes kyngis

⁸w- inserted by corr. above; caret in text. ⁹Inserted above by corr.; caret in text. ¹⁰Letter illegible.
¹¹Chapter-heading in red by rubricator, as are all succeeding chapter-headings unless otherwise indicated in the textual notes. ¹²Erased three-line ornamental initial in blue; black guide-letter t visible. ¹³Superscript -is; not henceforth noted. ¹⁴-e erased. ¹⁵Line completed by red pen-flourishes. ¹⁶Three-line ornamental initial in blue; henceforth only erased ornamental initials are indicated. ¹⁷By scribe over erasure. ¹⁸Stroked out in red. ¹⁹-beled by (?) scribe over erasure.

lastyng þat solemnpnite // And whan þis feste whas done.~
 euery kyng name hys wife and lad her home to hys contre
 and þer made her quene ¶ And so it fylle that Dame Albany
 bycome so wickyd and so steerne 7 so proude and hadde
 Dyspite and scorne of her lorde and wolde not done hys
 wylle but done alle thyng þat her likede. And alle so
 alle her other sustryne bare hem so wickedlich. a 3enst
 her lordes þat wonder it whas to wete and hadde scorne
 and despite of her housbondes. ffor hem þo3t þat þei were
 no3t of so grete kynde comen as þei were 7 as Dyoclicyan
 her fader ¶ And þe kyngges þat were her lordes wolden
 haue chastised hem in fair manere. ffirst þorgh fair by
 heste and 3iftes and it whas neuere þe bettere but þe
 wors for no maner chastysyng And so þei hadde alle her
 owne wyll and dede alle þyng as hem liked. // And so vppon
 a tyme þe xxxiij betyn her wyfes and many tymes 7 ofte 7
 wende haue hem a mendyd but it wold nou3t bene for no
 manere chastysyng but alle bycommen wers. and wors^d and
 so þei hadde her owne custum and wille ¶ And ther fore
 þe kyng þat hadde spoused þe eldest doghter. Albanye
 wrote þe condycyons 7 þe maners of his wife Albanye and
 sente hem vn to dyoclecyan her fader. And whan alle þe
 othir kynges herde þat.~ þei name 7 wrote þe condycyons
 and tacches of her wyfes 7 sent vn to Dyoclicyan enseled
 with her seles ¶ And whan Dyoclesyan (fol. 1^ba) her fader
 herde and sawe þe condicyone and tacches. of his doghters.
 he whas sore a shamed and by come wonder wrothe and þou3t
 both nyght 7 day. howe he myght amende her dedes ¶ And so
 he sent vpon a tyme vn to þe xxxiij kyngges þat þei
 schuld come to hym and brynge wyth hem her wyfes at a
 certeyn day þat he wold assigne. and þou3t a mende and
 chastise his doghters yf he myght. of her sternesse. ¶ And
 so alle the kynges comen vn to dyoclesyane at þe day þat
 whas assigned 7 bro3ten wiþ hem alle her wyfes.⁵ And

⁵Otiouse flourish betw. wyfes and (.).

and led hem home in to her owne contre And afterward þis
dame /Albayne be come So Stowte and statly þat Sche ne
told no pryse by her hosbond and nothyng woold doo after
hyme but all her owne wyll and all þe²⁰ opir Sustyrs bare
heme in þe²⁰ Same maner and for theyr lordys wer of lowere
parage^h þane þey wer þey wer þe stouter²¹ of⁵ And þeir
lordys wold haue chastid hym be fayr speche but þey wold
nat in no maner wyse (fol. 3^a) wher for¹ þes xxxij. kyngis
by her comen A Sente wrote the evyll techys of her viuis
vn to her fader /Dyoclisian be seken hym so^a Sett remedy
in thes maters // And whene² whene þe kyng þeir fadyr herd
of this tydyngys he was was² wondyr wrote toward hys
dou3tors And thowth how he mythe make heme amend her
mesdedis³ // ⁴ And Anone Send hys lettyrs to þesse xxxij.
kyngis þat þey scholl come to hym euyry chone And bryng
wyth⁵ heme her wyuys att A Sertene day porposyng to make
hem leue her evyll techys and correctene preuely with
fayrnes yf þat he mythe in ony wysse // ⁴ So þat all þes
kengis wer assemblyd att day prefixid^b And

²⁰Inserted above by scribe. ²¹-r by scribe above; caret
in text. Fol. 3 ¹Inserted above by scribe; caret in text.
²Stroked out in red and black. ³Vertical red line sepa-
rates her from mesdedis. ⁴In red. ⁵-h added by corr.

Dyoclician vnderfonge heme⁶ wip muchel honure and made a solempne feste vn to alle þo þat were vnder his lordschip. ¶ And the thrid day after þat þei were comen vn to þat solempnite. Dioclicyane sent for alle his doghters. þat þei schuld come and speke wip hym priuelich in his chambre. And whan þei were comen he spake to hem 7 repreued hem of her wickydnes. and of her foly/and seid to hem but if þei wold amende hem þei schuld lese his loue foreuere more ¶ And whan þe ladies herd þes wordes. þei bicom wonder soor asshamed and seide þat þei wolde make a mendes. And so þei wenton out of her faderes Chambre. And Albany þat whas þe Eldest suster made alle gon wip her in to hir Chambre and made alle gon oute of þe Chambre but she 7 her sustren ¶ Tho spake Albanye to hem 7 seide. My fayr sustren. 3e wote welle þat þe kynge our fader (fol. 1^b) hathe repreued vs for we schulde bene obedient 7 meke vn to oure housbondes 7 þat wil y neuere doon þe while þat I leue/sith þat i am comen of an heyer 7 a werthiere blode þan myne housbonde. And al her oþer sustren graunted 7 consented þe same ¶ And wel y wote þat our housbondes han made playnt vpon vs to our fader. and þer fore he hath vs foul repreued. And þer for my counseil is. þat we þis nyght kytten alle our housbondes throthes. and þan we mowen bien in pees of hem And beter we mowe do þis dede vnder our faders power. þan in a nother lande. and al þe ladies consented in to þat counseil. ¶ Ande wan nyght whas come. þe ladies went to beddis wip her housbondes and as þei leyon in slepe. þei kitten her housbondes throtes. and so they killed hem alle ¶ And whan Dyoclicyan herd this tydyngges. he wex wonder wrope 7 sory and hugely agreved a yens his doghters. and wold haue brent hem alle ¶ But þe barones and þe lordes of Syrrye counseilled hym nouzt to do so muchell cruellte vnto his owne doghtres and counseilled hym to make hem to voyde. his lande and neuere

⁶By scribe above; caret in text.

þer thys /dyoclician vnderfong heme wyth⁵ muche honour and
 Solempnite and mad to heme to heme² agrete fest And in a
 day of þat Solempnite þe kyng /dyoclesvane Send for hys
 xxxij.dou3tyrs þat þay Schull come and speke with hym
 preuely in hys Shambyr and so þey dedyne // ⁴ And þer he
 horraby reprevyd hem¹ of þeyr evyll condyciones And Swore
 but yf þey wold a mende heme þey Schold be correctyt be
 ponnessment / ⁴ and þes ladyis herkyn þis 7¹ was euyll a
 Schamyd and a baschyd and sayd þes condiciouns schull be
 amendyd in all þyng to þeyr fadyr And so þey departyth
 frome her fadyr Chamber / ⁴ And dame /Albayne þe elder
 Sustyr toke all her opir Sustyrs / And sayd / My⁶ fayr
 Sustyrs full well 3e wott owr fadyr hathe hous repreuyd
 Schamfully to make vs obbedyent and bouxum to hour hosbondys
 but sekyrly þat Schall I neuyr wyhill þat I lyue And all her
 sustyrs (fol. 3^b) sayd þe same // ⁴ And þane said dame
 /Albeyne this is beste concell þat þis same nyth wene owur
 hosbondys bene a Slepe that we cott her trotys and þane we
 mow be pesse for euyr mor And we may doo þis bettyr her
 vndur our fadyr protexcione þane in any⁷ ober plasse / And
 anone all þes ladyis grantyd vnto þis concell And ded as
 for hys sayd // And when þe kyng /deoclyciañ/hard of þis
 he¹ was sor amewyd and wold haue lett heme be brente/ But
 þe barons of þe lond wold nat but concell heme to woyd þe
 lond of hem for euyr more

⁶Third minim of m lengthened to approximate to M.

⁷Vertical black line separates in from any.

to come þere no more and so þei deden̄ ¶ Tho commaunded
 his doghters Dyoclicyane a none for to wende in to a
 shippe and lete deliuere to hem vitayle for halfe a 3ere
 and so þei wenton̄ in to a shippe and sayled forth⁷ in to
 þe see and by toke alle her frendes to apolyne her god
 ¶ And so longe þei sailed to þat þei comen̄ in and aryved
 in an yle þat whas alle west. and whan (fol. 2^a) they
 comen to the londe. Dame Albanye went first out of þe
 schippe. and seide vn to hire othir sustres ¶ ffor as
 mucche as y am þe eldest sustre of þis companye. and first
 am comen to londe and for encheson þat my name is Albanye
 y will þat þis londe be cleped Albyon after myn owne name.
 And All her other sustres. graunted hyt with good will
 ¶ Tho went out all her other sistres of þe shippe & comen
 in to þe londe of Albyon and wente vp & downe in þe londe
 and fonde neiþer man ne womman. ne child but wilde beestis
 of dyuerse kynde. And whan her vitayles wer doon and
 spended. þei fedden hem wiþ herbis and froytes in seson
 of þe 3ere and lyuedyn as hem thoght best. And afterwarde
 þei etyn fleisch of dyuerse bestes. and by comen̄ wonder
 fatte & in gret state. & moche þei disiredyn̄ man ys companye
 þat failled hem ¶ And for hete^a þei become wonder plenteuous
 of kynde^b & more desireden mannes companye þan any other
 þing ¶ And a none þe deuell it perceyued and wente by
 diuerse contrees. and toke a body of þe eire lykyng
 natures^c shadde of men. and come in to þe lande of Albyon
 and lay by tho wymmen. and shadde þoo natures in to þe
 cursed¹ wymmen and thei conseyueden and brou3tten forth
 geauntes of wiche oon̄ men callede Gogmagog and a nothir
 Laughherigan̄ and so alle þei hadde dyuerse names. and þan
 þei come forth and were bore horrible geauntes in Albyon
 as hem liked in alle manere þinges. to þat brute come
 and a ryved at Totnesse² in þe Ile of Albyon and þere

⁷-th by scribe above. Fol. 2 ¹ Written heavily.
²_T - shaded in red.

And So he dede And þis /dioclician comandet heme to Schep
 And hyme wyteyll for A half A 3er And þis was done thesse
 Sustryn tokyne her schip and saylyd styll in the hy See /
 And so long Saylid tyll þey come vn to ~~nyll~~⁸ a yle⁹ was
 all wyldernes And þis dame /Albeyne toke þe lond fyrst and
 Said to her Sustyrs for as muche as I hame þe heldest
 Sustyre and haue takyne þe londe and my name ys /albayne
 I wyll þat þis lond be callyd /albeyne after myn owne name
 And her Sustyrs grauntyd ther to /⁴ And went oute of þe
 schipe and toke þe lond and þer wente vp and doune and
 fond nothyng but/ wyld bestys and wormes And whene theyr
 wytell was done þey / feddyne hym op on herbys 7 frutys
 in þe Sesone of þe 3er and leuyd in þe best wysse þat þey
 myth And after þey toke flesche and byrdys and wyld bestys
 and wondyr fat wexen¹⁰ So þat þey dyseyryd mannys company
 þe wyche hem lakkyd and be com coragios of natour þat
 nethis heme must (fol. 4^a) haue mannys helpe //¹ And when
 þo² develis^{3a} þis consayuyd he went be dyuers contres⁴
 and toke bodyis of erth and lykyng natur shedde of men and
 com in to þe lond of albyoun 7 ley be þe wommane in mannys
 lyknes and sheed thesse natursse oppon hem and þey
 conseyyd and browthe forthe gret geantys of þe wyche
 oon was callid /Gogmagog 7 he was xl foot of length and
 xij fott of bred and thes Ieantys dwellyd in dyuers places
 in þis lond and in othyr londys Also in Cauis and in
 mountayns in to þe tyme þat brute come and areyuyd at
Tottenes þat was in þe Ile of Albyone And ther

⁸Stroked out. ⁹a yle by corr. in right margin. ¹⁰By
 corr. in right margin. Fol. 4 ¹In red. ²Inserted above
 by corr.; o badly formed with tail like s. ³-velis gone
 over by corr., poss. over erasure. ⁴-r- inserted above;
 caret in text.

Brute³ (fol. 2^ab) conquered and ouercome the geauntes
aboue seid

¶ Here endeth þe prologe of the Ile of Albyon. and now
herkeneth^d how þat brute whas by gete. and how he quellyd
first his moder. and afterward his fader. and howe he
conquerid Albyon. 7 nempned it Bretaigne after his owne
name. þat now is called Engeland after þe name of Engist.
þat whas of Saxsoyne.

In⁴ þe noble Cite of gret Troye þer whas a noble strong
knyzt and myghty and of gret power þat men called. Enneas.
and whan þe Cyte of Troy whas distroied þorgh hem of greke
þis Enneas fledde þennes in Alle þat he myght and come in
to lumbardy þat whas under þe lordschip of kynge latyme.
And another kynge þat men Called Turosolyn. warred
strongliche⁵ vppon latyme and ofte tyme dede hym muchel
harne 7 desese. ¶ And whan kynge latyme herde telle þat
Enneas þat noble knyzt was come in to his lande. he
vnderfongedde^e hym wip muchel honour and wip helde hym^f
for encheson þat he whas a noble knyzt and bold 7 hadde
herde muche of hys goode name and of hys hardynesse. ///
¶ And þe noble knyght Enneas halpe kynge latyme in his
werres and so wel þei deden shortly for to telle. þat he
kylled kynge Turoselyn in werre and discomfited alle his
men. And whan þis whas doon. he sesed all Turocelinus
lond in to his hande 7 3afe hytte in mariage wip labyane
hys doghter þat whas þe fairest creature þat any man þo
wist on lyue. And þei leued in fere wip muchel loye ¶ And
so it by fylle afterwardes. whan god (fol. 2^ba) wolde þis
Enneas deide/ and whan he whas dede. Asquanius his sone
þat come wip hym fro Troye vndirfange þe lande. and hadde
hit at his wille. al his lyves tyme. And afterward he

³B - shaded in red. ⁴Three-line ornamental initial I in
blue with red pen-flourishes continued up and down left
margin of col. ⁵g by scribe above.

thys /brut/scomfetyt and conquered this Ieauntys eche chone
and slow hyme all

// Howe Brute [was beg]⁵oten. and howe he slow3e his ffadir
7 his modir

[I]⁵n the nobyll Cite of gret Troy was a my3ty and amanly
kny3the called /Eneas And wene the sitte of /Troy/ was
dystroid purh hem of Greke This Eneas fled in to lombardy
and þe kyng of þat land men called /latyme And þer was A
nothyr kyng callyd /Turocholyne and strong wered op on þis
kyng latym and dedde hym muche harme and sorowe And þis
latym hard that þis /Eneas⁶ was come he welcomyd hym with
much onour for as muche as he herd muche worscip of hyme
and þat he was a nobyll kny3th And þis Eneas⁶ helpyd þis
kyng latym And slo Turosolvñ and dyscomfyt all hys pepyll
And þis was done kyng latyme gaff all þe lond to Eneas⁷ in
maryage with /leman/hys dou3tyr a fayr creaturr and leuyd
well to gyddyr in Ioy and myrth Than afterward yt be fyll
that Envas deide And after his deth Asquanius (fol. 4^b)
his sone þat com wyt hym fro troy vndyrfong þe lond and
held hyt his lyff tym and

⁵Erased. ⁶-e- like d. ⁷-ne- by corr. over erasure.

spoused a wyfe 7 on her he gate a sone. þat men called
 Selueyn⁶ wich⁶ whan he come to age a 3ens his faders wille.
 and wetyng he quented^g with a damsel that whas nece to
 labyane. þe quene that whas kynge Enneas wife and bro3t þe
 damsell wiþ childe ¶ And whan Asquanius his fader hit
 wiste he lete enquire of þe wisiste maistres. and clerkes
 þat coude many sciences. whate child þat damsell schulde
 bryngge forthe. And þe maistres answered and seide. A
 Child þat first schulde kille his moder 7 after his fader
 and so it fylle for his moder deide on childe berynge
 ¶ And whan þis childe was boren his fader lete calle hym
 Brute and þe maistres seide þat þe child schuld doon
 mochel harme and wickidnes in many dyuerse places. and
 aftur he schuld come to mochel honour. And afterward kynge
 Asquanius deyde wan god wold and Selueyn vnderfonge al þe
 londe and made hym wel byloued And wan Brute his sone whas
 xxti. 3ere olde. he went on a day wiþ his fader to solace
 hym 7 to play. And as þis Brute schulde shete to an herte
 his arowe þorgh mysauentur glased^h 7 þer kyllled his fadere

Howe Bruyte whas dryve oute of his lande ande dwelled in
 þe lande of Greke ¶ Capitulo ¶ Secundo.

And⁷ after þis myschefe whas doon. 7 þe pepel of þe londe
 were wondere sory and euele payedⁱ. and a none dryuen Bruyte
 (fol. 2^b) out of þe londe and wold not suffre hym a monges
 hem. And Brute went fro þennes and come in to Greke and
 there he fownde .viij. M^l men of þe lynage of troye þat were
 comyn of grete kynne and of grete blode as þe story telleþ
 bothe of wymmen and of children. þe wiche weren kepte in

⁶Faintly written above whan. ⁷Two-line ornamental initial
 letter in blue with red pen-flourishes continued up and
 down left margin of col.; the initial letter of each suc-
 ceeding chapter is of the same size and is similarly
 ornamented unless otherwise indicated in the notes.

had a wyff and gatt oppon her A sone þat callyd /sylvyn̄
 the wych when he couth resone of mane a quayntyth hym wyt
 a damesell þe wyche was his lemañ wyche was /Eneas wyffe^b
 and gatt þe damessell wyt schyld And when hys fadyr
Asquanius wyst þer of he lett enquer of þe wysyst Clerkys
 wat maner of Chyld þe woman schud bryng forthe and they
 sayd sche shuld bryng forthe a Sone þat shuld sle bothe
 hys fadyr and hys modyr and so he ded for hys modyr deid
 in chyldyng^c of hym And when þe chyld was borne þe fadyr
 lett hym call /Brute And þe mastyr Said þat Chyld shud doo
 mucch harme in many dyuers places and aftyr þat schuld
 com to mucche worschip 7 honore And þis kyng Asquanius
 deied and /seluen hys sone Reseyuyd þe lond and gret⁸
 welbelouyd amongys pepyll And when /Brute⁹ was xv 3er of
 age he wente oppon a day wyt hys fadyr to wood for to play
 and solas And as þis Brut shuld haue Schott on to an harte
 his harrow clenchyd^d and kyllyd his fadyr þer forth rythe

Howe Brute was dryven out of his owñ londe and held hym
 in Greke

And when this myshap was be fall þurh¹⁰ outhe the pepyll
 þey mad sorrow Inoze and for Sorrow þeyr of they dryvyne
 out /Brut out of his contre and wold nott Suffur hym¹¹
 amongs hem And /Brute persevyng¹² this went fro thens in
 to Greke And ther he fond vij meñ men of þe kyngis^e of
 troy They¹³ weryn come oute of greke of men and women and
 chyldryne the wer^f holdyne (fol. 5^a) in

⁸-r- inserted above. ⁹-e added by corr. ¹⁰Inserted above
 by scribe; caret in text. ¹¹-y- by corr. over -e-. ¹²-y-
 from -q-. ¹³-y from -r.

thraldome and bondage. vnder kynge pandras of Greke for
 encheson of achilles þat whas be trayede ⁊ queleed atte
 Troye ¶ This Brute whas a wonder stronge man and a huge
 as of his age and amyable to alle men and a wise man and
 worthy of body and whas by louede welle of alle folke.
 This kynge pandras herde speke of Brutus goodnes ⁊ of his
 condicyones and made brute to dwelle wip hym so þat brute
 by come wip þe kynge wel by loued and wondere pryue. /// ¶
 So at þe laste þo men of Troye ⁊ Brute speken to gedere
 of lynage and of a queyntaunce and her bondage þat þei
 hadde and suffred vnder kynge pandras and alle seiden vn
 to Brute. 3e beth a lorde of oure nacyon and of lynage.
 and a stronge man. and a myzty. be 3e oure lorde ⁊ manteyne
 vs. and we wil by come alle 3our men and doon 3our wille ⁊
 3our commaundement3 in alle manere þynges. and brynge 3e
 vs out of þis sorowe ⁊ mischiefe þat we hauene and suffryn.
 and late vs goon and fight wip þe kynge and þorogh þe grace
 of god. we schulle ouercome hym and make yow kynge of þis
 lande. ⁊ doon to 3ou homage ⁊ schullene (fol. 3^a) halde of
 you for eueremore ¶ Bruyte hadde gret pyte of her sorowe.
 þat þei hadede^a and suffred and priueliche wente fro þe
 kynges Courte and al they þat weren of Troye folewed hym.
 and wente ⁊ putte hem in woodes and in hilles. ⁊ þere hydde
 hem. and sent to kynge Pandras þat he wolde 3eue hem leve
 to weende sauelich out of his lande for þei wold no lenger
 a. bide. ne dwelle in his bondage // The kynge whas soore a
 noyed of þis tydyng ⁊ swore þat he wold kille hem euerychone.
 and ordeyned hym a strong power ⁊ come for to fyght wip
 hem And Bruyte ⁊ his companye. so manliche hem defended.
 þat þei killed alle kynge pandras men. þat none of hem
 escaped. and token kynge. Pandras. and putte hym in pryson.
 and ordeyned so a monges hem to vndoon kyng pandras ¶ And
 som seiden he schuld be doon to þe dethe. and Bruyte schuld
 haue þe lande. And somme seiden he schuld be exiled of þe
 lande for euermore and seid^b he schuld be brente ¶ And þo
 spake a wise kny3th. þat men callede Menpris. and seid vn to

tharldon^{1a} be kyng /pandras/ of Greke for the deth of
Achilles þat was trayd and slayne at Troy Thys /Brut was
a wondur fair² mane and a strong and was welbelouyd among
his pepyll Thys kyng pandras hard speke of his worthynes
and of hys condycioun and a none mad hym dwell wyt hym So
at þe last þe pepill of Troy and /brut Spake to gyddyr of
linage and³ þat kyng /pandras⁴ had heme in bondage⁵ Apone
atyme they sayd too /Brut/ 3e be a lord of 3our^b lynage
and a my3ty mañ be 3ee our lord and we scholl be 3our
sworne men 7 doo 3our comandment in all maner thyngis And
bryng vs out of our wekednes and bonddag and feyth 3e
wyth þe kyng for by þe grace of god⁶ 3e schall ouer come
hyme and we schall make 3ou kyng of þe londe and we schall
hold of 3ou /brute had grate⁷ pete of their wordys and of
þe bondage þat þey wer brouzt in And⁸ preuely⁹ went hym
forthe in þe kyngis hews¹⁰ courte 7 all þo þat and¹⁰ wer
of þe lynage of Troy put hem in wodys and mounteyns and
hyd¹¹ hem¹² der And sent vnto kyng pandras þat he schuld
geff hym leff to goo out of þe lond ffor þey wyll none
lenger dwell in þis bondage And þan kyng pandras was
wrotth and Swor be god þat day þey^{13c} schull dy euyry
chone and went vn to hym for to fythe and Brut and hys
mene hem manly defendyt¹⁴ and slow3 all þe kynges men euyr
chone þat none of hem Schapid and toke þe kyng and put hym
in presone And toke (fol. 5^b) concell how þat þey my3tht
best done and som sayd he schuld be dede sum sayd oon and
sum sayd anothyr //¹⁵ And þane sayd A wysse kny3th callyd
/menses

Fol. 5 ¹t- and -l- inserted above by scribe; carets in text. ²-i- by scribe above. ³Inserted above by scribe; caret in text. ⁴-d- by scribe above; caret in text. ⁵in bondage by scribe above; caret in text. ⁶-d inserted above by scribe. ⁷-t- from -c- by (?) corr. ⁸A- from a- by corr. ⁹Second -e- inserted above; caret in text. ¹⁰Stroked out. ¹¹-y- over -a-. ¹²-e- over -y-. ¹³Inserted above by corr.; caret in text. ¹⁴de- by corr. over erasure. ¹⁵In red.

Bruyte. 7 to alle hem of Troye. if þat kynge pandras wold
 zeld hym and haue his lyfe. I counseile þat he ze fe vn to
 brute our duke. Gennogen his doghter to wife and in mariage
 wip here an hundrede schippes wel aparaylled 7 al his
 tresoure. of golde 7 seluir with Corne 7 wyne. and as muche
 as hym nedeth. of oon þyng 7 of othir 7 late vs goon þan
 out of his lande and ordeyne vs. lande. elles wer ffor after
 this tyme þer schalle neuere none of our lynage haue reste
 ne pees. in þis (fol. 3^ab) lande. a monges hem of Greke. for
 enchesoun. þat we haue killed so muche of her peple. of
 Barons. 7 of othir folke ffor werre and debate. schuld
 euermore bien a monges vs 7 hem ¶ Brute 7 alle his peple
 þo consentede vn to þat counseil and þo told hit vn to þe
 kyng pandras ¶ And þe kynge for to haue hys lyfe grauntted¹
 hem as muche as þei wolde axen. 7 3if Gennogen his doghter
 to wife vn to bruyte 7 to hundrede shippes with alle
 apparayle þat hem neded Brute name þo his wife and alle
 his men. and forsoken þe londe of Greke 7 wenten hem forthe
 vn to þe see 7 hadde wynde 7 weder at wille^c 7 comen the
 thridde day. in to an Ile þat hight loegers. ¶ Bruyte sent
 to lande. somme of his men for to spye þe manere of þe
 contre 7 þei comen 7 fonden an old Cite alle wasted. 7
 þer in whas neiþer man womman ne childe. dwelling. And a
 myddes þe cite þei fownde an old tempyll and þer in a
 fayre ymage^d. þat hight Dyane a Goddes 7 þei comen a 3en
 vn to Bruyte and told hym wate þei hadde seene 7 founden.
 7 counseile. hym to goon 7 doon sacrifice to dame Dyane for
 sche whas woned to zeue answeere of what thyng þat men
 preide her 7 principally hem þat hire honoured þorgh
 sacrifice. ¶ Bruyte wente to þe ymage 7 seide Dyane noble
 goddes lady þat alle þinges hast in þi power. wyndes waters.
 wodes feldes. and alle þe world and alle maner beestes. þat
 þer in bene. And to yow y make nowe my mone 7 prayer þat ze
 me telle. and counseil were 7 in whate place. J schal haue a

Fol. 3 ¹MS. has 3 minims for -un-.

3if kyng /pandras wold haue hys lyff I wyll concell hym
 to gef on to /Brute our souereyn hys doughtyr /Gennogen
 to wyff and in mariage wyt here and M¹⁶ schippis well a
 Rayd wyt her and gold and Syluyr and as opyr thyng as we
 nedyth And goo we pane oute of thys lond and orden ve vs
 londe ellys wher for we wote¹⁷ wyll pat¹⁸ none of our kyne
 pat come aftyr vs schall haue¹⁰ neuyr haue pesse fro we
 haue haue¹⁰ sleyn here¹⁹ So meny of peyr frendes pat euyr
 mor wer in stryff schall be among vs ///¹⁵ /Brut pan and
 hys pepyll consentyd well to pat concell And pis matyr was
 pott op on kyng /pandras and he fayne was²⁰ for to³ haue
 grauntyd hem as muche as pey pey²¹ wold axe /⁶ And 3af
/gennogen/his dou3tyr and as much as hym nedyth of stoff
/to Brute²² And pey went oue¹⁰ on to be See and had wynde
 and weddyr at wyll And came be thyrd day¹⁸ to an yle
 callyd /logiers/Brut anone Sent hys mene to land to aspy
 be maner of be contre And pey fond a Sytte all wast and
 for lat wher was nethyr man ner womaⁿ ne chyld dwellyng
 and pey²³ fonden a meddell of be Site a nold tempyll of a
 fayr lady Callyd /dean/ the Goddes And come a 3ene to
/Brute and told hym wat pey had sayne and concell hym to
 doo scracrifyce^d to pat goddys for Sche was wont to gyf
 an[d]²⁴ answe²⁵ of ony thyng pat Sche was comandyth or
 enqueryd of /¹⁵ And Brut went vn to pis emage and knelyd
 doune vp on²⁶ his kne and said good lady /dian/pat all
 pyng hast in dyne (fol. 6^a) powr¹ to 3ou lady I make my
 prayer pat 3e wyll tell and² in wat plasse pat I may han a

¹⁶Inserted above in red. ¹⁷By corr. in right margin; verti-
 cal line in text. ¹⁸By corr. in left margin at start of
 line. ¹⁹-e by corr. over orig. letter, with flourish.
²⁰By scribe above; -s blotted. ²¹Stroked out in red.
²²/to Brute by (?) scribe in left margin with caret; caret
 in text. ²³-y inserted above; caret in text. ²⁴-d erased.
²⁵-w- by corr. (?) over orig. letter. ²⁶Inserted above by
 corr. Fol. 6 1-w- inserted above; caret in text.
²Stroked out.

conable^e dwellynge. for me ⁊ for my peple ⁊ in þat place
 y schalle (fol. 3^ba) make in honure of the a noble temple
 wher yn 3e schalle eueremore be² honoured ¶ whan Bruyte
 hadde done his prayer Dyane the goddes ansuered to Bruyte
 yn this maneere. Bruyte wende forth thy way ouere the see
 toward ffrance to þe west and þere 3e schulle fynde an
 yle þat is Called Albyoun ⁊ þe see gooth a bout hit and
 no man may come in to þat lande. but it be by ship and in
 þat londe were wonte to be Geautes but nowe it is alle
 wildernesse and þat londe is distroied and ordeyned vn to
 3ow and to 3our peple.

How Coryn by came brutus man. and howe kynge Goffar whas
 discomfited in Bataile ¶ Capitulo tercio.

Whan Brute hadde herde þis answeere. he vnankeryd hys
 shippes and sayled in to þe hye see. And whan he and hys
 folke. hadde sayled xx^{ti} dayes ⁊ more. þei fonde fast by
 a coost of þe see iij. C. men of þe lynage of Troye. and
 her lorde ⁊ souereyn men Callyd Coryn ¶ And whanne Bruyte
 herd þis tydyng ⁊ wiste of whenes þei weren. he name hem
 in to hys shippes. ⁊ made wip hem moche joye. and ledde hem
 forthe. wip hym. ¶ This Coryn þo by come Bruytes man. and to
 hym he dede fewte and homage. And so longe þei sailed
 forth yn the see to þat þei comen in to Gasquoyne. ⁊ a
 ryved in þe hauen off loogers. and þer þei abiden viij
 dayes to rest hem. and to amende her sailes þer þat it whas
 nede. ¶ Tydynges come þo vn to kynge Goffar þat was kynge
 of þat londe howe þat moche straunge folke. were a ryved
 and come in to his lande. and weren in þe hauen (fol. 3^bb)
 of loegers. werfor he whas sore anoyed of her Aryuyng in
 his lande. wip out leve. And anone lete gader ⁊ ordeyn an
 huge power to dryve bruyt out of þe lond and al his

²By scribe above.

couenabyll dwellyng for me and my pepyll and þer I wyll
 make in þe honour of the a fayr tempyll in þe wyche 3e
 schall be honouryd for eu~~er~~ // And whan /Brut had mad thys
 prayer /deane answerd in þis maner /Brut quod sche goo
 forth ———³ dy wey in to france and so forth in to þe
 west And þer 3e schall fynd an ylle⁴ callyd /Albyone and
 þat ys closyd wyt þe See þat nomaf may come þer but be
 schippys and in that lond is⁵ wont to be many /leauntys
 but now þer be but few in that lond ys all weldernes þe
 wyche geauntys leuyne wyt Erbys and rotys and wyt flesche
 of schepe as gret as ony horsse and þat londe ys hordynyd
 for 3our pepyll and for 3ou

Howe Coren be come Brutus man 7 kyng Goffar discomfetid

When /Brut herd þis Ansquer of /deane the Goddes anone he
 lett wynd vp an hanker and saylyd vp in to þe hy See / And
 when hys men had saylyd xx dayis and mor þey fond fast by
 þe coste of þe See certen men of lynage And kenred of troy
 And he þat was mastyr and souerayne of heme hall was
 callyd /corvn/And when /Brut wist of wens þey wer he
 wevyd hyme fawe^a in to hys schippys wyt much worschip and
 honour and led hym forthe wyt hyme /This Corvn by com
 /Brutys counand mane^b and to hym ded homag and fealte And
 soo þey saylyd forth to þe hy See tell þey comen to Gascon
 and þer þey aryvyn in þe havyn of /lygers and þer þey
 dwellyth vij dayis for to rest hym and to a mend hem² þeyr
 Saylle and opyr thyngis þer as ned was // Tydyngys come
 Soune to /kyng Goffare þat was lord of þat lond how þat an
 huge (fol. 6^b) pepyll of strang lond weryne aryven in hys
 lond in þe hauyn of lygers wer of he was hangry and Sor
 agreuyd þat þey com and a Reyvyd in hys lond wyt outtyn

³Red line over erasure. ⁴Vertical line separates an from ylle; -e prob. added by corr. ⁵Inserted above by corr.; caret in text.

companye 7 went hym selfe in to fraunce to haue socour 7
 help of hem. And þat tyme þer were in fraunce xij kyngges.
 And þe .xj. kyngges assemblid a gret power 7 a stronge
 for to helpe kynge Goffar a 3ens Bruyte ¶ And kyng Goffar
 dwellid with hem. of ffraunce halfe a 3ere 7 more. And
 Bruyte in þe mene tyme and his companye destroyed alle
 the londe of Gasquoyñ. and lete take alle kynge Goffar is
 tresoure and lete brynge hit in to his schippes. And brute
 fonde in þat contre afair place 7 a conable. 7 þer he made
 a fayre Castell 7 a good 7 a stronge. ¶ And. And^f whan þis
 whas done. 7 þe xj kyngges comen fro fraunce 7 kynge Goffar
 wip hem. and broghten with hem .xx. M^l men for to fyght wip
 Brute and his Companye. And bruyte hadde but .viij. M^l men
 and .iiij. C. ¶ And whan þes. to. hostes metten 7 fowten y fere.
 brutus men þorogh helpe of hym selfe 7 of Turyn his
 Cosyn. and of Coryn al so þat whas a nobil body in lytil
 tyme þei killed of þe ffrenschmen ij. M^l 7 mo. 7 þat othir
 parte fledde. And in þis batayle Turyn þat whas. Brutus
 Cosyn whas killed And brute noblich lete hym intere whan
 he hadde space in þe noble Castell þat he hadde made 7
 þo lete calle þe Castell Tours for encheson of Turyn þat
 þer in whas entered. 7 3it is þer a noble Cite þat is
 (fol. 4^a) Callid Tous^a. ¶ Whan kynge Goffar wiste that
 Turyn whas dede. 7 he came a3en with his peple and 3af a
 stronge Batayle vn to Bruyte. And Brute and his men weren
 so wery of fyghtinge þat þei myght no lenger endure. A
 maugre^b alle hys enemyes. 7 he fley in to his owne Castell
 þat he hadde made 7 alle hys men. and faste shetton þe
 3ates to kepe hem selfe. And þat same nyght þei tokyn
 counseil. a monges hem Bruyte and Coryn took consell^l þat
 Coryn schuldyn go oute by nyght at a Posterne of þe Castelle
 wip halfe hys men and schuld busch hym^c in a wode tyl vpon
 þe morn. so þat on þe morowe. whan Bruyte schuld fyght wip

Fol. 4 ^l took cōsell by scribe above; line in text marks
 point of insertion.

leve /And a none he hordaynyd a gret powr of Mene opyr
to dryue hem out of his lond or ellys for to Sle hem /
And þer þey fowtheñ foll sor tell /kyng Godfar was
dyscomfet and all his pepyll and hyme Selfe fled in to
fraunce for to Seke help and Socur And in þat tyme Reynyd
in fraunce xij kyngis and A xj of þeme Semlyd a grett pour
for to help /Goffare to fythe azens /Brut and þis Goffar
dwellyd styll in fraunce a half a 3er and mor And Brut in
þe mene tyme Stroyd all þe lond of Gascoyne and lett take
All þe tresur of² þat kyng Godfar had 7 let bryngyt to þe
schippis and þis Brute fond in þat lond a fayr plasse 7 a
couenable and Brut mad þere⁶ a fayr castell and a streng
when all þat was done kyng Godfre com fro fraunce and xj
kynges wyt hyme and Brouth xx thowsand men for to fey3thyn
wyt Brut and his company And /Brutt had but viij Myl 7
iiij C mene but neþyr lesse wene þe to hostyne mett to
gyddyr Brutys folk wyt help of hem Selfe and of /tewryn/
hys Cossyne and of /Coryn/ þat well and manly defendyth 7
fou3t Soo þat wyt in a lytyll wylle þey had I Slayne of
frensse meñ ij Myl and moo And þo þat wer alyue ffleddyne
a way In þis batayll /Turyn þat was Brutes Cossyne was
slayne 7 Brut lett enter hym wordly when he had spasse and
leyser in þe Castell /towrys for þe name of Turyne þat þer
was Enterd and 3ett in to þis day þer ys afayr (fol. 7^a)
Cete þat ys callyd /Tours And when¹ kyng /Goffere wist
verely þat Turyne was dedde he retorne a 3ene wyt his mene
7 hys Sonne gaff a strong batayll to Brut /But Brut and hys
men wer So wery of fythtynge þat þey ne my3tyn no lenger
endewr But Magre goffer and of¹ all his meñ /Brut went in
to þe castell wyt all his men and sparryd fast þe gatys and
kept hem in closse and mad a councel A mongys heme/what wer
best to doo /Brut and Coryne wyt her Councell ordynyd so
þat Coryn shuld goo preuely þat nyzte out of þe postrone of

⁶Added by scribe in left margin at start of line. Fol. 7
¹Inserted above by scribe; caret in text.

hys enemyes. Coryne schuld þan come out of þe buschment^d in þat oon halfe. to kille of her enemyes. and done alle þat þei myghte ¶ And on þe morowe in þe dawning Bruyte wente oute of þe Castelle and come 7 fawte with hys enemyes and manliche hym defendede and with ynne a lytell stownde. Bruyte and hys peple hadde kyllid .vij. C. of his enemyes. And þo come Coryn out of the buschment 7 smote to grownde he 7 hys companye as many as thei myght take. ¶ And so whas kynge Goffardyscomfited and putte to fliht And Bruyte 7 Coryn. wip her company hem pursued manly and killed of her enemyse. mo yn the fleyng þan þei deden in batayle. ¶ And þus hadde Bruyte þe victory. and Bruyte made moche sorowe for Turyn his nevewe that whas slayn. and al so for other men þat he hadde loste þat is to say .vij.^C 7 xv. 7 alle he lete noblissh^e entere in þe Castel of Tours. wher in he hadde enteered (fol. 4^ab) hys nevewe Turyn.

How Bruyt come and a ryved at Cottonesse^f in þe Ile of Albyoun. and of þe Bataille þat whas by twene Choryn. and Gogmagog. Capitulo v.^{to}

And whan þis whas doon. brute wolde no lenger a byde. þere no more to fyght ne lese no mo of his men ffor kynge Goffarus men þat whas hys enemye. myght euery day encrease mo 7 mo. 7 hys men lesse. And þer for he tooke alle hys men. 7 wente to þe see and hadde wynde 7 weder at wille And þe firste day þei arryued 7 comen in to þe hauene of Cottonesse 7 so þei comen in to Ile of Albyoun And þer þei fonden man neiper womman ne child as þe story telleth but Geauntes þat were dwellyng in hilles. ¶ Bruyte sawe þat þe lande whas fayr and profytable for hym and for his peple as dyane þe Goddes hadde by hyght hym. Tho whas Bruyte wonder glade and Assembled vppon a day alle hys peple to make a solempne sacrifice and a feste in reuerence of Dyane þe Goddes. þat counseiled hym to dwelle 7 wende in to suche a londe ¶ And vp on a day whan þei hadde made her sacrifice. and wenton and seetyn at her mete. þere

of þe castyll wyt alfe hys men and shuld go buske hyme in a wood tell in þe morow So þat in þe mornynge wene Brut shuld fy3th wyt his Enmys Coryne shuld come wyt his folke on þe oþyr Syd and sle and doo all þe harme þat he my3th And in þe mornynge in þe dawnyng /Brut went owt of fott^a wyt his Enmys and þey hem fresly defendyd But in Schort tyme Brut and his meñ in Schort tyme had Slayne viij C of Goffarrys men And þan com /Corene out of the /² Busmente And Smettyn done to gronde all þat wold stond and a byde so þat kyng godfar and his folke weryne dyscomfyt and fled fast away but Brut and Coryn wyt her company pursued on hem fresly and slow moo of þeme in þe flying þan in þe bateyll And in þat maner /Brut had þe wyktory But neþyrles /Brute mad mucche Sorow for hys Cossyn Turyn þat he was slayne and for oþyr also þat he had lost of his men þat ys to say vij C 7 xl.bodies þe wych he lett ter wordly in þe castell (fol. 7^b) of Tours þer as he had enterid his cosyn^b /Turyn /how Brut-7-Ierdy-at-Tottenesse-in-þe-Eyl-of-albynus-his-cosyne and-of-þe-batayll þat was betwene Coryng and Gogmagog³

Howe Brute a ryvid at tottenes in þe Ile of Albion

Whene all þis was done /Brut wold no lenger a byd ther for to fy3t ne no more lesse of his men ffor kyng /godfarrys pepyll my3t euery day increas mor and mor and⁴ brutys to lesyne and þer for he toke all his men and went in to þe see and had wynd and weddyr at wyll And forth þey aftyrward þey⁵ a Reyvyd^c in ane hawyne þat ys now callyd /tottenas 7 so come in to þe yle of albyone and þer þey fonden neþyr man ne womman⁶ as þe Story tellyd but Geantys⁷ and wonyd in hyllys and cawys /Brut saw þe lond fayr at his lykyng and goodly for his folke as /dian/þe Goddes had hem be hith /Thane was he¹ wondyr glad and assemlyd on a day all his

²Erasure. ³Stroked out in black to batayll; underlining in red. ⁴Stroked out. ⁵Stroked out in red. ⁶v- by corr. over erasure. ⁷-a- inserted above in red; caret in text.

came vppon hem sodayneliche .xxx Geauntes and killed of brutus meyne xxx ¶ And Bruyte and his men. seen þis ⁊ anone sterte vp fro þe mete. and faught wip þe Geauntes ⁊ killed alle þe Geauntes. but oon þat whas maister of hem alle þat men callyd Gogmagog^g and he whas lenger gretter and more strenger. þan eny of alle þe oþer Geauntes. And þer for Brute kepte hym a lyue. for he schuld wrastel wip Coryn ffor as myche as Coryn was strenger and lenger al so þan eny of (fol. 4^ba) Brutes men from þe gyrdyl place^{2h} vpwarde ¶ And so Gogmagog and Coryn comen and wrastled to geders longe tyme but at þe laste. Gogmagog helde Coryn so faste and so sore. þat he brastⁱ two rybbys of his side. ⁊ þer of whas Coryn euel a payde. an^j angery and a none toke gogmagog in his Armes and caste hym downe vp on a roche^k so þat he brake alle to pecys and so he deide in euel dethe And þer for þat place þat þei wrasteled inne is called in to þis day þe sarte^l of Gogmagog And þo Brute 3afe alle þe cuntre to Coryn. And Coryn called þe cuntre after his owne name. Cornewaile. ⁊ his men he called Cornwales ⁊ so schal þe peple of þe contre be called for euermore. And Coryn dwelled þo in þat cuntre. and his folke and made many fayre places. and townes ⁊ þus þei enhabite þe lande at her owne wille.

¶ How brute made london ⁊ callid þis lande Brutayne after his owne name And Scotlond Albyn. ⁊ wales kambere

Bruyt and his peple wente forth in þe lande and soghten wer that they mytth fynde to make a couenable place and a Cite to set. þer on for hym and for his peple. So at þe last þei comen bi a fayre Ryuere þat is callid Tamise. And Bruyte by gan þer a fayr Cite. that is called newe Troye^m in remembranceⁿ of þe Cite of grete Troye from wiche place al her lynage whas comen. And lete caste downe wodes and ery^o landes and

²By scribe above; caret in text.

pepyll to make a solempne sacryfyse and agret fest in onur
 and Reuerens of /dyane/ the goddes purh⁸ whos concell he was
 comen into þe lond And when þay had mad a Solemnyte /as they
 sat oppon A day sodenly þer come vppon heme xxix geantys
 and slow³ anone xxx of Brutys meñ þan Brut and his meñ
 stert vp fresly and fawthe wyt þe geantys and Cyllid hem
 euyry chone Saff hane þat was¹ mastyr of hem all þat meñ
 callyd /Gogmagog 7 /coryne be þe desire of /Brute wrestelyd
 long to gyddyr but at þe last /Gogmagog held Coryn so fast
 þat he brake ij of hys Rybbys in his seyð Thane (fol. 8^a)
 sayd /brut/ to Coryne 3if /ymborne/ þi paramor ~~/~~¹ vyst þat
 O man ferd so fowll wyt the Sche wold neuyr louf dee wher
 for /Corne was agrewyd and sor A Schamyd and he toke
/Gogmagog and cauth hym wyt a grett strenthe by twene his
 harmes and cast hym done of A Roche of Stone So þat Gogmagog
 brake all to pessys And so he deyð ewyll deth and þer for þe
 plasse ys callyd in to þis day the monte of Gogmagog or ells
gogmagogys lepe /And after gaff Brut all the contre vn to
/Coryne/ and /Coryne/ lett call þat contre after his owne
 name /Coryn/ /Corowell and his mene he callyd Cornwalys or
Corinwell And in þat Contre dwellyd Coryn and his meñ and
 mad bothe townes 7 howsys And in habytt in þe lond to her
 owne wyll

Howe Brute made london 7 callid this londe Breteyn

B/rute and his men went forth ~~to-fyzt~~² and souzt A boute in
 dyuers contreys wher he myth fynd Aconabyll plase for hym
 and for his folke /So at þe last þey come be a fayr Reuyr
 wych ys now callyd /tamys/ þe wyche reuyr hath his name of
 ij Ryuyrs þat one ys callyd Thame 7 þe tother þe kny3th^a to
 gedre far aboue to london and þer as london ys now /Brut be
 gane afayr sytte and let call yt /New troy // ffro whens he
 and all his men³ lynage wer com and þe Brut lett fyll doune
 wodys 7 mad to here⁴ and

8-h inserted above by (?) corr.; caret in text. 9-3 added
 by corr. Fol. 8 1In red over erasure. 2Stroked out.
 3Stroked out in red. 4-e inserted above by corr.

dougen hem and afterwardes saawe hem 7 mowdyn medewes to
 sustynance of hym and of his peple. and departed þe londe
 a monges hem. so þat eueryche of hem hade (fol. 4^b) a
 certeyn place for to dwelle vppon. 7 Brute lete calle þis
 londe Bruyteyn after his name 7 lete calle his men Britones.
 And this Brute hadde gete vp on his wife Gennogen. thre
 sones þat wer noble bodies. and worthy ¶ þe first hight
 lotryne. þe second Albanacke. and þe þrid kamber. And brute
 was kynge and bare þe crowne in þe Cite of newe Troy .xx^{ti}
 3er after þe Cite. was made. And þere bien ordeyned þe
 lawes þat þe Brutones. schuld halde. And þus Brute whas
 wel byloued a monges alle men. And al so brutus sonnes
 loueden to geders. wondre wele. And whan þis Brute had
 soght þorgh oute alle þe lande in length 7 brede. he fond
 a land Ioyned vn to Brutaigne. in þe north 7 þat lande he
 3afe vn to his sone Albanake 7 he lete þat be callyd
 Albany. after his owne name. þat now is called scotlond
 ¶ And Brute fonde a nother cuntre toward þe west 7 þat londe
 he 3afe to kamber his oper sone. and he called þe lande.
 kamber after his name þat now is callid walys. ¶ And whan
 Brute hadde regned xx^{ti} 3ere. as by fore is seide. he deide
 in þe Cite of newe troye. and his sones with mochel honour
 þere enteerde hym. And þo whas lotryne his sone Crownyd
 kynge wip much solempnite of alle þe lande of Brutayne.
 And whan þis whas doon. Albanac and kamber his two
 brethryn wenten a 3en in to her owne contre. and lyuede
 with muchel honoure and lotryne her brother whas kyng and
 lyued wip mucche Ioy. and wel and nobliche gouerned his
 lande. (fol. 5^a) for he whas a good man. 7 a welbeloued
 of his lande. ¶ And so it felle þat Albanacke dwelled in
 his lande wip muchel honure and after ward come kynge
 humbar of Irland wip a grete strength. 7 a grete power. of
 folke and aryved in Albanye and wolde haue conquered þe

Sawe londys And also mow medys fer⁵ sustynauns of hym and
 his pepyll and his bestys And Brut sett þe fyrst stone of
 new Troy þat 3it stondyth þer /And aftyr þat he had partyth
 þe lond a mong his mene So þat eche one of theme had a
 serten plas for to dwell vp one And Brut (fol. 8^b) lett
 Call þis lond Brytayne aftyr his owne name /Brut 7 his
 folke he lett call /Brvtons 7 þis brut be gatt vp hone hys
 wyff /Gennogen iij Sones⁶ þat wer worthy kny3tys of ded /
 the fyrst was callyd /lokeryn The second /Albanoc the third
 /Cambre And Brut bar crone in þe Cite of new crowy⁷ xx^{ti} 3er
 aftyr hit was made And ther he mad lawes and² þan Bretens
 holde and this⁸ brute was wonderly welbelouyd Among all his
 men And Brutys Sonys lovyd well to gyddyr /And wen Brut had
 sothe all þe lond of lenthe and bred he fond a lond þat
 Ioynyd vn to Brytayne in þe north party And þat lond Brut
 yaf yt to /Albynake his sone and callyd Albayne aftyr his
 name Albenake /And þat lond ys callyd scottlond Also Brut
 fond a nothyr Contre toward þe west and þat he 3af /Cambyr
 his opir Sone And he cald yt Cambyr aftyr his name And now
 yt ys cald /wallys wen Brut Reynyd xx[x]⁹ 3er as be for ys
 sayd he dyde in þe sytte of new troy And ther is¹⁰ Enterd
 wyt muche honour /And þen logneryne þe eldest son was
 Crownyd kyng wyt muche¹¹ Solemnite of all þe pepyll of
 Bretayne And aftyr ward wane he was crownyd /Albenac and
 /Cambre his to Bretheryne went a 3ene to his owne contre
 and leuyd wyt-much³ wyt much honour And /lokeryne or lotryne
 as sum men wrytyth her brteyne^b reynid and was kyng of
 Bretane and gouernyd þe lond well and wyssly for he was a
 good mane 7 welbelouyd of his folke and aftyrward yt be
 fyll so þat (fol. 9^a) albenak dwellyd in his owne lond wyt
 honour and worschip 7 þane came kyng humbar of humland wyt
 a strenth and arryven¹ in albain porposyng to conquer þe

⁵Poss. a badly formed -o-. ⁶-nes over erasure. ⁷Poss. a badly formed t-. ⁸t- inserted above. ⁹x erased.
¹⁰Inserted above. I¹MS. has 6 minims for mu-. Fol. 9
 l-ven by scribe in right margin at end of line.

lande ⁊ by ganne for to werre vppon. Albanake and kylled hym in bataille. And whan Albanake whas slayn þe peple of þe lande fledde and comyn to lotryne þat whas kyng of Bretaigne and preyden hym of socour. and of helpe ⁊ to avenge his brothers deth. ¶ lotryne anone lete assemble alle þe Bretaignes of kent from Dover vnto darwent^a of Northfolke. ⁊ southfolke and kistonen of lyndeseye^b and whan þei weren al assembled þei spedde hem fast toward her enemyes. to yeue hem batayle ¶ And lotryn hadde sente to kamber his brothere þat he schuld come al so to hym. wip alle þe power þat he myght to helpe hym and a venge his brother dethe. And he come to hym wip good wil so þat þei come alle to geders and token her way priueilich. for to sech þis humbar. wher euere þei myght hym fynde. And so it felle. þat tyme þat humbar. whas by sydes a water. a grete ryver. wip his men to playe. and disporte. And þo come lotryn. and kamber. his broþer sodaynlich wip alle her power or any of humbar ys men it wist. And whan humbar sawe hym come. he whas sore adradde for as muche. as hym selfe ⁊ his men weren vnwar and vnarmed and hym sylfe þere for drede lepte in to þe watere and shamelich drenchit^c hym selfe and so deide he þere / and al his men þer were slayne so þat none of hem. ascaped. and þerfor is þat water called hum (fol. 5^ab) bar and schal for euermore for encheson þat humbar whas þer in dreynte ¶ And after wardes. wente lotryme^d in to humbar is shippe and toke out þer of gold and seluere to hym and¹ as muche þyng of valewe as he fonde þer inne. And alle þat oþer pilage. he yafe to his men. of þe ooste. And þei fowndon in a nother shippe a fayr Damysell þat whas kynge humbar is doghter and men called her Estrilde. ¶ And whan lotryn saugh her he whas soor anamered and toke for loue in herte for her fairenes and so he toke and ladde her wip hym and wold

Fol. 5 ¹-d by scribe above.

lond and² by gane strongly to werryn vp on Albenak and at
 þe last he kyld hyme in a batayll And³ when yt was þus
 mescheuesly⁴ þe pepyll of his lond fle⁵ to /lotryne kyng of
Bretayne and told hym of albenac his broþyr was slayne and
 prayd hem to A wenge his brother dethe /bene lotren anon
 Assemblyd all þe bretonys of kente of douoyr to-þe-wer^{6a}
 of Norfolke and sothfulke of kesteyne 7 of lendesay and
 wene þey wer assemlyd þe Sped hym fast toward her enmysse
 for to 3eff hym batayll And so lotren had sent to chambyr
 his brothyr þat he shuld come also to hym in hast wyt all
 his pour þat he my3th for to helpe hym and so he ded wyt
 good wyll and att delast þey mett all to gydyr and tokyne
 her wey all to gyddyr for to seke humbar wher euyr þey my3t
 fynd hyme and so yt be fyll þat þis humbar was þat tyme at
 a⁷ grett reuyre⁸ wyt his folke to dysport hem and þan
lotrayne and combe his brothir wyt all hys folke sodenly
 or eny of þe oþyr party wyst þer of /whanne humbre saw hyme
 com all he was adred for as much as his men wyst yt noht 7
 Also þey wer vnrayd and anone humbre⁹ for dred lept to þe
 watyr and drynchyd hym selfe 7 so he ded and all hys men
 wer slayne and none of hem Schapyd 7 þer for ys þat watyr
 callyd vmbar was drynnchyd þer in and aftyr þat /lotrene¹⁰
 wente vnto her schippys and toke all her gold and Syluyr all
 þat he fond to hym Self And all þat oþer goodys he lett part
 among þe host (fol. 9^b) And þey fonden in hon of þe schippis
 a fayr /damesell þat was kyng humbre dou3tyr and her name
 was /estrelde and when lotrene saw her he toke her wyt
 hyme for her bewte And so gret loff he sett vppon her þat
 for loff he wold

²Inserted above by scribe; caret in text. ³A- from a- by
 corr. ⁴-ly inserted above. ⁵f- from s- by corr. ⁶Stroked
 out in red. ⁷at a by scribe above; caret in text. ⁸Red
 dash over erasure. ⁹-u- by scribe above; caret in text.
¹⁰-t- inserted above by scribe.

haue spoused here This tydyng come þo to Coryn his broþer.
 and Coryn thought haue be venged vpon lotryne for as
 mucche as lotryne hadde by hote. Coryn for to haue spoused
 his doghter. and in hast went to hym vn to þe newe troye
 and saide. Lotryn̄ nowe trewlich 3e a quyte ful euell þe
 trauail and desese. þat i haue hadde. and suffred wip
 bruyte your fader and þerfor now y wil be a venged vpon
 þe. and anone drewe out his fawchon^e. an hye^f and wold han
 killed lotryne. þere / but Estrild þe damysell went bi
 twene hem. 7 made hem a corded in þis manere þat lotryne
 schuld spouse. Quentolen þat whas Corynus doghter and so
 he dede. Natheles lotryne afterward toke Estrild
 priueiliche and gate vpon her a doghter þat men called
 Abraham. a none after hit felle þat. Coryn. deyde. and a none
 as he whas dede. 7 lotryn forsoke Gwentolen his wife. and
 made Estrilde quene. And Qwentolen. went þō alle in wratthe
 in to Cornwaile and sesed alle þe lande in to her hande.
 for as moche as sche whas eir after her faderes deth and
 vndir fonged homages and feautees of alle manere men of
 þe lande. /// And after (fol. 5^ba) she assemblid an huge
 oost and þought to² bien avenged vpon lotryn̄ her lorde
 and come vn to hym. and 3aue hym 7 hys men. a stronge
 batayle. 7 in þat bataile. 7 lotryne whas killed 7 all his
 men discomfited and þis whas in þe v. 3er of his regne.
 ¶ Guentolen. þo lete take Estrild and Abraham. her doghter
 and lete bynde hem handes 7 fete. and caste hem in to³ a
 water and so þei were both dreynte. and þer for þat water
 ys called Abraham. after þe damesell ys name. þat whas
 Estrildes doghter. and Engelissh men callen þat water
 Seuerne and somme englissh men callen hit Abraham. 3it
 ¶ And whan þis whas done. Quentolen lete her coroune quene
 of þe lande. wel 7 wiselich vn to the tyme. þat Madhan her
 sone þat lotryne had gete vpon her wer of age. of xx^{ti}

²In right margin. ³By scribe above with caret in text.

haue wedder^b /Thys tydyng come to Coryne in Cornewayll and
 a none to wenge hym appoñ lotryne for as meche as lotryne/
 had mad counande for to spouse Gwentolyne and Coryn went
 to hyme in þe new troy and sayd þus to lotryne now sekerly
 sayd he yee¹¹ wyll Reward me for my labor and trawayll þat
 I had many tymys for 3our fadyr þat þer for I wyll aweng
 me oppoñ 3ou and drew out hys fawchone on hyth and wold
 haue Slane lotryne but þe damesell went by twex hym þat
 was callyd Estrell and mad hyme A cordyd in þis maner þat
lotryne shuld spowse Gwentolyn Coryny3 dou3thtyr and so
lotreyne¹² dyde but neuyr þe lesse þou3 he had spowsyd
Gwentolene 3et come he preuely a mongys^c to Estrel and gatt
 her wyt chyld and sho bar hym a dou3tyr þat was callyd
Abraham / yt be fyll after coryne deyde anone after his deth
lokeryne for soke Gwantolyne his wyff and mad Estreld qwene
 and Gwentolen¹³ went þus all in wrat in to Corwyll 7 sesyd
 all þe lond in to her owne hond for as muche as sche was
 her fadyrs heyr and vnderfong homagys 7 fealtes of all meñ
 in that londe And after þat sche a Semlyd a grett pour and
 Aryall oste for to be Awenged vp on /lotrene/þat was (fol.
 10^a) her lord and come to hyme a gaff hym a grett batayll
 and þer was lotrane slayne and all his meñ dyscomfyt the
 v.3er of his Reyng Gwentolyne þat^a let take Estryll and
habraham her dou3tyr and bynd hym bothe handys 7 fett and
 cast hem to A watyr and so þey wer drynchyd wher that þe
 watyr was callyd after habraham after þe name of þe damesell
 þat was Estryll dou3tyr and Englysmen callyd þat watyr
Swethin^{1b} and walsmeñ þay callyne þat watyr habrahame dys
 day And thys done Gwentolene lett croune her quene of þe
 lond and gorverned^{2c} þe lond full well and wyssly to þe
 tyme þat /maddhane/³ heyr sone þat lotrene had be good vp
 hon her wer xx^{ti} 3er of age

11he prob. added later by scribe; yee inserted above by
 scribe with caret in text. 12Badly formed -o- and -e-.
 13By corr. (? rubricator) over erasure. Fol. 10 10r -m̄.
 2-verned by corr. over erasure. 3Second -d- inserted later.

3ere. þat he myght be kynge. so þat þe quene regned xv 3ere.
 7 þo sche lete corowne her sone. and he gouerned þo þe lande
 wel 7 nobliche. 7 þo sche went in to Cornewaile 7 þer
 dwellid al her lyues tyme.

Of kyng Madhan how he regned in pees alle his lyues tyme. 7
 of Mempris. and of Mawlyne. his sonnes and how Mempris. sloghe
 Maulyn his broþere. and how wolfes afterward droghe hym al
 to peces. Capitulo .vj^o.

And whan madhan hadde bien kynge .xxx 3ere. he deide and
 lithe at newe Troye and hadde getyn̄ two sones þat oon men
 called Mempris and þat opere Maulyn. and þes to breþeren
 after her faders dethe. stryuen and made grete debate for
 þe lande. But Mempris for encheson þat he whas Eldeste
 wolde haue hadde alle þe lande. But Maulyn̄. wold not suffre
 it so at þe last (fol. 5^b) þei toke a loueday^g of a
 corde. and at þe same day. Mempris lete kille his 3ongest
 broþere. þorgh treson of hym sylf / þo helde he al þe
 lande and lete Corowne hym kynge. and regned ¶ And
 afterwardes. he bicom̄ so wicked and so sterne so þat he
 distroyed in a litill tyme. alle þe men of his lande. and
 by come so cursed þat he forsoke his owne wife. and haunted^h
 þe synne of sodomye. 7 þerfor our lorde god. whas wroþ and
 toke vpon hym vengeaunce / ffor vp on a day. as he wente
 in a wode on huntyng he hadde loste al his men and whas
 hym selfe alone. 7 wente vp 7 downe and gradde 7 criedeⁱ
 after his men. þer come rennyng wolfes 7 drogh hym al to
 peces. whan he hadde regned .xxiiij 3ere^j. And a none as
 his men wist it. þei weren gladde i nowe in herte. and
 made Ebrak his sone kynge of þe lande wip muchel honour.

Off þis kyng Ebracke how he conqueryd alle fraunce. and
 gate vpon his wife xx^{ti} sonnes and xxiiij doghters.
 Capitulo. vij^o.

þat he my3th be gyne So þat þe quene my3t Reyne xv 3er and
þen let sche crowne her Sone kyng 7 he reigniȝd and gouernȝd
þe lond well and worthely And sche went in to Cornuall and
þer Sche dwellyd all her lyffe tyme

When kyng Madhan regned his tyme in pees 7 of Menses 7 Maliñ
his sones 7 howe menses slou3e Maliñ his brothir and howe
wolvis drou3e hym to pecis

Whene /madham had reygnyd xxx 3er he diede and lyith at new
troy 7 he had ij Sonnez þat one was callȝd /mempris 7 toþyr
/Malyñe and þer^d ij brethrene Aftyr her fadyr dethe strywyne
fast for þe land And /mempris by cause he was þe Eldest
broþer hē wold haue all þe lond bot /Mauliñ woold nat suffer
heme so þat þey tokyne a day of loue And acordment And at
þe day asyngnyd /Mempris lett kyll⁴ his broþer /Māllvñ⁵
(fol. 10^b) by tressone /and heme self afterward held all
hys lond hyme Selfe and a none lett crowne hyme kyng 7
reygnyd and afterward he be come so lecher a mane þat he
dystroyd in a wylle allmost all þe grett mene of his londe
And at þe last he be come So wekyd 7 so lechorys þat he
forsoke his ownne wyff and howsyd þe syne of Sodomye⁶ wher
for all my3ty god was wrotth and toke weniansse vp oñ hyme
as a^e went vn to Awood on huntyng he lost all his pepyll
and went Alone op and doune Crying after his men 7 þer cam
wyld wolvys and all to drew hym all to pecys and þat tyme
he had Reygnyd xxiiij 3er And his pepyll wyst þat he was
dedd þay mad grett Ioy and anon mad /Elrake hys sone kyng
and he Reyngnyd wyt mucche honour /how kyng Ebrake conqueryt
ffraunce and by gatt xx Sonnez and xxiiij Doghters

howe kyng Ebrake conqrid ffraunce

⁴k- from c- by corr. ⁵-ñ added by corr. ⁶-ye badly
formed.

And þis kynge Ebrak whas a stronge man and myghty and he whas kynge Sixti.3ere and þorogh his doughtynss^k and helpe of his Bruteynes conquered alle fraunce.and gate þere so muche gold and siluere.wher with he made a noble Cite.and cald hit after his name.Ebrak þat now is callid euerwike.and þe Ebrake.made the Castell of maydenes þat now is callid Edenburgh. And þis Ebrak hadde gotten xx^{ti} sones and xxij doghters vpon diuerse wymmē and men named the sones as 3e schullen here.Bruyt.Gronneschal.Margane Seysyll.Morwigh.fflegam.Bladud.Ia (fol. 6^a) kyn kynber Rotelaij.Spadozh.Godeheil.Thornham.Eldaugh.Iorkanghut.haibor.ketyn.Rother and asarught ¶ And þes were þe doghters names as 3e schullen here afterward Elgyn.ymogen.Oghdas.Guontold Tangustell.Gorghon / Michel.Medhan.Mailour.Ondur Cambrendan.Ragan.Routley.Neost Chegham.Scadud.Gladus.heberhyn Abalaghe And Blandan. And þese wer þe names of xxij doghters and alle þe bretheryn.by come worthy kynges and goode.in diuerse contreys

Off kinge Bruyte Grenneschall þe first sone. Capitulo.vij^o.

And whan Ebracke was dede.Bruyt Grenneschalle his first sone.whas made kynge.and regned .xxij 3ere.7 gouerned þe lande wel and nobliche.and after he deide and lithe at 3orke.

Off kynge leyle.¶ Capitulo.ix^o

And whan Bruyte Grenneschal whas dede. leyl his sone was made kynge 7 regned xxij 3ere.and þis kynge leyle made a fayre town 7 lete calle hit after his name.carleyle.and he whas a good man.7 myche byloued a monges his peple. And whan he hadde bien kynge.xxij 3er he deyde.and lithe at Carlile and in his tyme regned kynge.Salomon.in

This Ebrake reigned lx 3er astrong man was 7 a mystry and
 this Ebrac poure goddys grace 7 hys owne myth and god helpe
 of hys Barons conqueryd all fraunce and wane þer so muche
 gold and Syluyr þat when he came a3ene in to þis londe he
 madde a ryall Sytte aftyr hys name Ebrake let callyd hyt
 Eborall and aftyrward yt was callyllyd^f euyrlike 7 now yt
 ys callyd /yorke And þis kenge Ebrake made a castyll of
 Meydens þat now ys callyd Edenbourgth Also þis kyng Ebrake
 had xx sonnez and iij.7 xx^{t7} doughters getyn by dyuers
 womene and thes wer þe namys (fol. 11^a) Sonnys Brut
Brenehalt Morgan Saysell Morge with fflengham Bladyd Iakeng
kember Roselyn Spadoth Soodherke Thorman Eldagh Ioraght
haybor ketyn Rother keyer and assouth and þes wer þe namys
 of þe douctyrs¹ Eleyne Innogyn Guenbrañ Ganardych Angarell
Guenthol Tangustell Goghgon Mychell Medhan Mayllour Ondur
Cambreden Ragan Reutheley Nesthehe Scadud Gladus heberyn
 Abalage and blandañ and þes wer worthy ladys aftyrward And
 he^a xx sons² by come good kny3tys and wordy men in dyuers
 contres

Of kyng Brute Breneshell þe first sone of kyng Ebrake

Aftyr the deth of /kyng Ebrake/reynyd /Brut Brenyll and
 wordely gouernyd hys lond and wene god wyll he dydde and
 lyith at yorke of kyng loyle

Of kyng leill

And when /Brute Brene-shall³ was dedd reynngnyd his Sonne
leyll xxij 3er and he mad afayr towne and let callyd aftyr
 hys owne name and was a wordy mane 7 welbelouyd of hys pepyll
 and when he had Reynyd xxij 3er he dyde and lyith at
Carllivll/ And in his tyme⁴ Regnyd kyng Salamon þat mad in

⁷Superscript -i prob. hidden by first letter of following word. Fol. 11 ¹-us abbreviation-mark used. ²By corr. over erasure. ³Joining stroke added by corr. ⁴Inserted above by (?) scribe; caret in text.

Iherusalem.and made the temple. And peder come to hym
 Sybele þe Quene of Saba for to proue 7 se.if it were
 sothe þat men spekyn of hym.and of his grete nobley^a and
 of his grete witte.and she saugh and fonde muchel more
 of hym þan men hadde her tolde

Of kynge lud ludibras þat whas leyle ys sone. Capitulo
 Decimo.

(fol. 6^ab) After þe dep of kynge leyle.regned his sone
 lud ludibras þat made þe Cite of Canturbery.and of
 wynchestre and he regned xiij 3er and after deyde and
 lythe at wynchester.

Of kynge Bladud þat was a gret Nigromauncer. capitulo.xj^o

And after þis lud ludibras regned Bladud his sone a gret
 Nigromauncer and þorgh his crafte of Nigromauncy.made þe
 meruayle of þe hote Bape and he whas kynge xxj 3ere.and
 afterwarde he deyde and lith at newe Troye.

Of kynge leyle^b 7 of þe answe.re.of þe 3ongest doghter of
 his þat was noblissh.spoused to þe kynge of fraunce ¶
 Capitulo.xij^o

And whan kynge Bladud was dede.leyle his sone whas made
 kynge and he made þe toune of leycestre.and lete calle
 it after his name 7 wel and nobley gouerned þe land. And
 þis kynge leyle hadde iiij doghters.the first hight
 Gonorille.þe seconde Rigan.and þe iiij Cordeille And þis
 Cordeil whas þe fairest damesell and best of Condyciones
 ¶ And so it fille þat þe kynge here fader wex an holde
 man and wold his doghters were married er þat he deyde.
 And first he þought to asay weche of hem louedyn hym
 beste. And she þat louedyne hym beest. schulde best be

Ierusalēn^b the Ryall temple þat tyme come to hym to
 Ierusalem Sibyll quene Saba for to here and to See wethyr
 yt wer trew þat men spake of wytt and wysdome of kyng
 Salamon and sche fond yt Sothe þat men told her of hym

/of kyng lidebras þat Sone mad þe (fol. 11^b) Sete of
 Cantyrbury and of wenchestyr and he had Reynyd ther xiiij
 3er and deid and lyth at wenchester

Of kyng Bladudd a Nigromancere

Than aftyr thys ludebras regnyd bladud hys sone a grett
 Negromencere and þurh hys craft⁵ of Nygromancy⁶ he mad the
 hott Bathes cronyclys tellyd he regnyd xxj 3er and lyith
 at newtrowe

Of kyng leyre þat was bladud sone þat made þe town of
 leycestre

Aftyr þis kyng /Bladud regnyd leyr his soñ and this leyr
 mad ~~te-þe-to~~⁷ þe towne of leycestre and lett call þe towne
 aftyr hys owne name leyr and he gouernyd hys lond well and
 worthely þis kyng ler had iiij dou3tyrs The fyrst hyth
 goronell the second Rigane and þe thyrd Cordeyll þe 3ongest
 dou3tyr was fayryst and of þe best condycioun /The kyng leyr
 her fadyr ffyll fast in age and wold þat his douthers wer
 marryd or þat he deyd but fyrst he thouth to a say wyche of
 þem lowyd hym best and most / shold best be

⁵-a- poss. over erasure. ⁶N- from s-. ⁷Stroked out.

married ¶ And so vp on a tyme he axed of his eldest doghter
 how muche sche loued hym. And sche seide to hym. moor þan
 here owne selfe. May fay seide þe fader þat is a gret
 loue ¶ þo axed he. of þe seconde doghter howe moche. sche
 loued hym. And (fol. 6^ba) sche seide moor þan alle þe
 creatures of þe world. Ma fay seide þe fader more may y
 nat axe of þe ¶ And so he axed of þe iij. doghter þat whas
 3ongest. how muche sche loued hym. and she answered 7 saide
 ¶ By my fey fader my sustren haue yow glosed^c and told
 you fair wordes you to plese. but I schalle telle you soth
 and make 3ou certeyn I schalle telle 3ou howe loue gob.
 ffor as muche as 3e haue. so moche 3e bien worthe. and so
 muche y loue 3ou. ¶ þe kynge here fader wened þo þat sche
 hadde hym scorned and by come wonder wroþ and swore by
 heuene and erthe. þat she schuld neuere haue good of hym.
 But his doghters þat loued hym so muche schuld bien wel
 married 7 so he lete marie þe firste doghter to Manglos
 kynge of Scotlande. And þe seconde he married to Hanomos
 þat whas Erle of Cornwaile. And so it whas ordeynede þat
 þo two lordes schulde haue and departe þe Reaume bytwene
 hem. to. whan þat he were dede. so þat Cordeill þe 3ongest
 doghter schuld no þyng haue ¶ This Cordeill was a fayre
 damisell and of gentil condycyones. and þer of herde
 agampe þat whas kynge of fraunce. and sente a none to
 kynge leyle. her fader and seide hym þat he most haue þat
 Damseille. to wife. And kynge leyl sente to hym worde a
 yen. þat he hadde 3euen. and departed hys lande vn to tweyn
 of his Eldeste doghters and seide he hadde no more lande
 wherwip to marien his iij doghter. ¶ And whan Agampe kynge
 of fraunce herde þis answer. (fol. 6^bb) a none he sente
 to kynge leyle 7 seide þat he axed no more wip here but
 onliche her body and her clothyng And a none kynge leyle.
 sente her ouer þe see to Agampe kynge of fraunce. And he
 receyued her wip muchel honour and wip muche solempnyte
 hur spoused 7 made her quene of fraunce.

marryd And he axyd of þe fyrst dou3tyr how muche she louyd
hyme And sche Answerd and sayd bettyr þene her lyff // Now
sertes sayd⁸ her fadyr yt ys A gret lowf /Than he axid þe
second dou3tyr how myche sche louf hym and sche said
passyng all creaturs of þe world // Ma fay I may axe no
more /And þane he haxit of hys⁹ yonyst dou3tyr how moche
sche louf hym Sekyrly fadyr sayd Sche my sustyr haue told
3ou glosyng wordys but for soth I shall tell 3ou þe trewth
for asmuche I loue as I wyll (fol. 12^a) to louf My fadyr
and for to bryng 3ou mor in sertene how louf I 3ou I schall
tell 3ou /for as muche as 3e bene worthe /so much schall 3e
be¹ loufyd /The kyng her fadyr wend sche had schorne hym
and was wondyr wrothe and Swor by heuen kyng Sche schuld
neu3r haue good of hym but hys dou3tyr þat louyd hym so
muche scholl be well A waunsyd and Maryde to magnys þe kyng
of Scotlonde and þe second he maryd to hanemos þe Erle of
Cornuale and so þey hordynyd and spake by twene heme and
schull de part de —² lond by twene heme and ~~A none aftyr~~
~~þe leyr her fadyr þe~~³ So þat /Cordell/hys dou3tyr⁴ shuld
haue nothyng of his londe But þis Cordell was wonder fayr
and of so good Condycioun and fayr of maners þat þe kyng of
france agampe/when he had speke of her he send to þe kyng
leyr for her to haue to his wyff and prayd hym þer of And
þe kyng leyr her fadyr Send hym word þat he had partyd hys
londe to hys dou3ters and sayd he had no mor lond wher wyt
her to mery And whene Agampe hard þis Answer⁵ he send anone
azene to kyng leyr and sayd he axid nothyng wyt[..⁶] her but
her cloþis and her body And a none kyng leyr her fadyr send
her ouyr þe See to þe kyng of fraunce And he Resayuyd her
wyt muche honour and worschip and solempnite and aftyrward
wyt gret Ryallte⁷ spousyd here and mad her quene of fraunce -

⁸-d inserted above. ⁹Superscript -s. Fol. 12 ¹Inserted above; caret in text. ²Red stroke over erasure. ³Stroked out in red. ⁴-us abbreviation-mark used. ⁵-e by corr. over erased -d. ⁶Two letters erased. ⁷-te added by corr.

How kynge leyl þorgh his owne foly whas dryue oute of þe
londe and how Cordeille his 3ongest doghter halpe hym
a3en. Capitulo.xiij.^o

And whan þis was done þe twey lordes.þat had spoused his
Eldest doghters.wold nat a byde.tyl kyng leyle were dede
to haue þe lande as is a boueseide but stronliche vpon
hym werred and dede hym muchel sorowe ⁊ shame.and by nome
hym al his reme. And þus hadde þei ordeyned a monges hem
þat kynge leyll schuld sojourne and abide wip on̄ of hem
wip xl knyghtes and her sqiers^d þat he myght worschupfully¹
gone and ride in to wate cuntre þat he wold to play and
to solace hym ¶ So þat þe kynge of Scotlonð þat men called
Managles hadde wip hym leyl his wifes fader at sojourne^e.
And so whan þat xij monthe and halfe a 3ere whas done.and
passed.Gonerell þat whas his Eldist doghter.þat whas Quene
of Scotlande.was a noyed and full of her fader and of his
companye and seide vn to her lorde.þat hir fader schuld
nat haue.wip hym so many knyghtes and squiers and so
þorgh procurynge of her.^v leyl her fader hadde wip hym
butte xxx.^{ti} kny3ttes and Squieres./// (fol. 7^aa) And whan
leyl sawe þis he become in herte wonder sory for encheson
þat his companye and his meyne^a wer wip drawe.and men
þerfor hadde hym in scorne. þan wist nat kyng leyle.whate
to doon̄ for sorowe but at þe laste bithoght hym for to
wende in to Cornewaile for to a say þe will of his oþer
doghter þat men callid Rigan ¶ And whan he whas comen in
to Cornwaill þe Erle of Cornewaile and his doghter
vndirfenge hym with michell honure and xxx^{ti} knytes and
sqiers wip hym. And kynge leyl hadde nought dwellyd þer
oon 3ere.þat his doghter whas ful of hym ⁊ of his companye.
And her lorde ⁊ sche hadde of hym scorne.and made hym to
forsake his kny3tes.so þat he ne had wip hym of xxx^{ti}

how kyng leyr whas dryvayne out of thys lond thorowe hys owne folly and how Cordell hys vonyst dou3tyr help hym at hys nedde

(fol. 12^b) Aftyr yt be fyll þus þat kyng /levre ij eldeste dou3tyrs aftyr þat day wer marryd þe nold nott abydd tell /levr her fadyr was ded but werd vp on hym wylle he leuyd and ded much Sorrowe wherby þey Reftyn^a hyme þe rayalme And bytwex hem the maden A norpinaunce and þe tone of hem shall haue /lyre her fadyr to Sogerne all hys lyff tyme wyt xl knytrys and Squirys wyt her stoff of meñ þat he mythe ryaly and worschiply to goo weder þey wolld And in to wat contre hyme lykyd to play hym and Solas So þat /Manglos kyng of Scotland had kyng /levr wyt hym in þe maner as ys abowe sayd and opire halfe 3er wer passyd /Gonorall his heldest dou3tyr þe 8⁸ quene of Scotlond was so Anowd of hym and of his pepyll þat Anone sche and her lorde spekyne to gyddyr and hordynyd þat half his kny3tys and half hys squyrs and so All þe Remnante shuld be A woyd and so half hys men wer put A way fro hym and no moo lefte wyt hyme but xxx And wene þis was done /levr be gane to make Sorrow by cawse his state was in payryd and men had of hyme mor schorne aftyrward þane euyry^b day had afor /wer for he wyst nat for to doo And at þe last he porposyng hym to Rydde in to Cornuall to Rygan hys hodyr dou3tyr /And when he was com þe Erle 7⁹ Rygane hys wyff wel com hym Ryally and of hym mad mucche yoye and þer he dwellyd wyt her xxx kny3tys and Squirys and¹⁰ (fol. 13^a) he had nott dwellythe ther Scharsly iij monethys full / his dou3tyr was fful of hyme and of hys company and her lord and sche had grett Schorne and dyspyte so þat frome xxx kny3tys and squiers they browthe hyme^e^a to

⁸ Stroked out. ⁹ Inserted above by (?) scribe. ¹⁰ Catchword by scribe below: he had not dwell.

knyztes but.x and fro.x.vn to.v. And so he hadde wip hym
 no mo.¶ þo made kynge leylye sorowe y nowe.and seide sore
 wepyng¹. Alas þat euere icome in to þis londe for me had
 beter haue dwelled wip my firste doghter And wente² anone
 to his first doghter. And a none as sche sawe hym come.
 sche swore by almyghty god and by his holi names^b.þat he
 schulde nat dwell wip her but wip o knyzt 7 no moo ¶ þo
 by ganne kynge leyl to make sorowe and saide alas now i
 haue to longe lyued sith þis sorowe ys me by falle.for
 now y am poor but somtyme.y whas woned for to haue y nowe
 / and nowe haue y neiþer kyn ne frende þat wil do me any
 manere good. But whan y hadde riches. men (fol. 7^ab)
 honoured me and deden to me reuerence and now euery man
 hathe of me scorne and despite. And sothe told me cordell
 my 3ongest doghter.whan sche seide.As myche as y hadde.
 so moche y whas worthe. And whiles þat y hadde goode men
 honoured me for myne hauynge. And now y fynde.þat my too
 doghtres glosedyn me.and nowe þei setten of me but litil
 price.and sothe told me Cordeil.my 3ongest doghter but I
 wold not here leue^c.7 þerfor y lete her lyztliche goon
 fro me and I told of her no prise.and now wote y neuere
 wate to done ne weder to wiende.sith my to doghteres haue
 begyled me and disceyued.þat I so moche loued And nowe y
 most nedes goon and seche hir þat is in an oþer lande.þat
 went fro me.7 hadde of me no maner good and sche seide
 sche loued me in as muche as sche schuld loue her fader.
 by reson. And þat tyme if y had do wele.y schuld haue
 axed.of hir no more. And þo to oþer sustren þat me glosed.
 and me fayr by highte þorogh her fals speche haue me
 disceyued. And in þis manere kynge leyl made sorowe and
 mornynge longe tyme. And at þe last he þoght for to goon.
 ouere þe se in to fraunce and aspye wer þe quene myght be
 fownde.and in whate place ¶ And so at þe laste.he come

Fol. 7 ¹Prolonged flourish on -g. ²By corr. above.

x. and afterward to.v.and so þey left hem no moo Thene mad kyng /lyre Sorrow I now and sayd sore wepyng all as þat euyr I came vn to þis lond and sayd he I had leuyr to dwell wyt my first¹ doughter And þat hard his douȝtyr Rygane and came to hyme in grett hanger and Swor be good and hys holy nammys and be all þat Sche mythe he shuld wyt no moo but one knythe ȝef he wold theyr a byd /Thene be gane lever to wepe ~~wepe~~² aȝene and mad much sorrow and sayd Allas now to long I haue lywyd þat þis³ sorrow and meschef ys to me be fall / now ham I pour þat Somtyme was Ryche And all meñ honowryd me and worschip me wane I was Ryche and had good and now of me haw euyry mane hawe⁴ schorne And dyspyt and now I wott well þat /corell my douȝtyr ȝongest sayd to me treuth when sche Sayd as mucche /as I had so mych I Shall be louyd and all þe wyll I had good I was welbelouyd and honoyryd for my ryches But þene my to heldest dowthers Sayd to me full fayr 7 now of me þey sett full lytyll prysse But Southe told me my douȝtyr /Cordell but I wold nott be lewe her (fol. 13^b) nor vnderstond her her wordys And þer for I lett her goo and as thyng that lytill prysse and now wot⁵ I neuyr for to doo sythyne my ij douȝters haue me desseyuyd þat I So much louyd And now must nedys schesyn^b her þat ys in anothyr lond wyche I latt lythly goo þer fro me wyt ony^c reward orr ȝeftys And sche⁴ sche sayd sche lowyd as much as sche owthe to leff her fadyr by all aȝt⁶ maner of Resone wyche Answered I consayvyd /⁷ nott but þer þat me so fayr by hythe good wreke me vp on hyme /In þis maner lyre long tyme tyme⁴ mad his mounne and at þe last he schippyd one^d þe See and passyd

Fol. 13 ¹By corr. over erasure. ²Altered by corr. from wer, followed by erasure. ³Altered by corr. from ys with superscript i. ⁴Stroked out in red. ⁵-o- from -a- by corr. ⁶Stroked out. ⁷In red.

ouer þe se in to fraunce.and men told hym wer he schuld
fynde þe quene. And so he come in to þe Cite þat þe quene
whas dwellyng ynne 7 priueilich sente his sqier to þe
quene.7 told her how her fader whas come þedere to haue
of hire socour.and helpe.7 the sqier telde þe quene
euerydell (fol. 7^ba) how his two doghtres.had hym serued
and forsake ¶ And Cordeill þe quene a none toke gold 7
seluir gret plente and toke hit to the squyer and told
hym priueilich þat her fader schuld goo in to somme good
Cite 7 wel apparaille.hym.7 bathe hym 7 wesch.hym and
richely aray hym in kynges clothyng 7 þan come a.3en.and
brynge with hym of his owne nacyoun xl.knytes.and þan he
schuld sende worde to her lorde.þat he whas come in to
his lande to speke wip his Doghter and to sene her.¶ And
whan alle whas done.as þe quene hadde ordeyned kyng leyle
sente to þe kynge of fraunce.and seide þat he whas comen
for to speke and seen his doghter. And þe kynge a none 7
þe quene.comen a 3enste hym and vndirfongon hym wip muchel
honour ¶ þe kynge of fraunce sent þorgh al his reaume and
commaunded þat alle manere men schuld bien to hym
entandaunt asse þei wolde vn to hym ¶ And whan kynge leyl
hadde dwelled þer a monthe 7 more he tolde þe kynge.and
his doghter þe quene how his to eldist doghters hadde hym
serued. And a none Agampe kyng of fraunce lete Assemble an
huge oost þorow al fraunce and sente hem in to Bretagne
wip kyng leyle for to conquer his lande and his kyndom^d
a3en ¶ And Cordeill al so þe quene of fraunce.come wyth
hym in to Bretayne for to haue þe Reaume after her fader
ys day ¶ A none þei wente hem in to þe se.7 come in to
Bretayne 7 foghten wip her enemyes and kyllled hem. And
kynge leyl hadde þo his lande a 3en.and after he leued.
thre 3er and hadde alle hys reaume yn pees (fol. 7^bb) and
after he deyde. And Cordeil his doghter.lete entiere hym
wip muchel honour.at leycestre

in to fraunce and axyd and enquerd ~~ei~~⁶ wer þe Quene my3th
bene And men told hyme wer sche was And come to þe Citte
þer sche was in Preuely⁸ he send a⁹ Squier to þe quene to
tell her þat har fadyr ~~her~~⁴ was come to her for grett
nedde // And whene þe Squire come to her he tolde her euyry
dell of her Sosters fro þe⁹ be gynnyng vn to þe Endynge
Thene Cordene be quene¹⁰ preuely toke þe Squir bothe gold
and sylluyr gret plente And in counsell to goo and beryth
her fadyr and he schuld goo in to A Serten¹¹ Citte and a
Ray hyme well and bad hym was hym and Shafe hym¹² clene 7
thene come a 3en vn to her and bryng wyt hyme honest company
of knyztys xv at þe lest wyt her mayne and þen he schuld com
to¹³ her lord þe kyng and say þat he wer come to speke wyt
hys doughter and hyme Also and to See / and whene þe kyng
and þe quene hard how þey come they Resayvyd hem wyt much
honour and then þe kyng of france lett cry⁹ thorw out hys
Reme and comand þat all hys legge mene shuld be in tendans
lawly and serwysabyll to /lyre/ (fol. 14^a) the quenys fadyr
in all maner thyng as thay wold doo to hym selfe And /leyr
had dwellyd þer a monyth and mor he told þe kyng and þe
quene of hys dousters how hys ij Eldest doustyr had Serued
hyme /Agampe be kyng of fraunce þene a none let hordene a
grett ost of france 7 send in to Bretayne wyth¹ lyer þe
quenys fadyr for to conquer hys lond a3ene and his kyngdom²
cordell Also come in to Breteyne wyt her fadyr for to haue
þe Rem aftyr her fadyr dethe And a none þey passyd þe See
wyt þe schipys and come in to breteyne and fawthe wyt þe
fellows and scomfet heme and kyllid hym and theyr had leyr
hys lond a3ene and aftyrward deid and Cordell³ hys doustyr
lett hym Entyr wyt much honour and worschipe at laycestre
þe wych þat hym Self had mad

8-l- inserted above; caret in text. 9Inserted above by
corr.; caret in text. 10be quene by corr. above; caret
in text. 11Second -e- from -o- by corr. 12-hafe hym by
corr. over erasure. 13com to by corr. over erasure.
Fol. 14 1-h added by corr. 2MS. has 4 minims for -m.
3-d- from -a- by corr.; -e- inserted above.

How Morgan and Conadag pat weren Cordeyl Cosyns werred vp on hire and brozt her in to prison. Capitulo.xiiij.^o

And whan leyle whas dede. Cordeyl. his doghter held þe lande. v. 3ere. and in þe mene tyme. dyed her lorde. Agampe kyng of fraunce. 7 so sche whas widowe. and whan þo. v. 3ere were passed Morgan and Conadag pat weren her two sustre sones. had Enuye to Cordeill her ownte^e for encheson pat sche schuld haue þe lande. and þei assembled a stronge power and werred vpon her. 7 rested neuere to þat þei hadde taken her 7 brozt her vn to þe deth. And þo Morgan and Conadag toke and departed. þe lande by twene hem. 7 helden it xij. 3er. And after þo xij. 3er þere aroos by twene hem grete debate and werre 7 eche of hem deden grete harme to opere for Morgan wold haue hadde. alle þe lande by 3ende humble^f pat Conedag held and Conedag come azeinst hym wip a stronge power so þat Morgan. dorst not abyde. But fledde away and Conedag pursewde hym. 7 drofe hym. in to wales and þer he killed hym Tho come Conedag a 3eñ and sesed al þe land in to his hande and helde it and whas kynge xxxiiij 3ere and after he deyde and lithe at newe Troye.

How Reynold whas kynge and in hys tyme it Rayned blode thre dayes and thre nyght in tokenyng of grete dethe and Mortalite of peple. Capitulo.xv.^{mo}

And after þis Conedag Reynold whas made kynge. pat whas Conedag sone a wise kny3th and a (fol. 8^a) bolde and al so curteys. and wel gouerned þe land and made hym welbe loued^a of alle his peple. And in his tyme it Reyned blode. iiij dayes. 7 iiij. nyghtes. as god wolde. and sone after þer come strong dethe. of folke. for þe hoostes foghten to geder wip out nombre. pat no man myghte. hem cese. vn to þe dethe. þo god þer of toke pite. and cased þe dethe And

Howe Mergan ⁊ Conedag þat were brotheris to cordell werrid
oppon leire^a and put heir in prison

Whenne kyng /leir was dedd /Cordell hys 3ongeste douztyr had
and held hys lond v 3er and in þe mene tyme deyð her lord
/Agampe/þe kyng of fraunce aftyr hys sesse Sche leuyd wedow
And þan com /Morgane⁴ and conadag þat weryn cordell syster
Sonnez and to here they⁵ had enwy for as much as her hawnte
shuld haue þe lond so þat by twene heme þay ordynyð a grett
pour and werryd strongly vp on her and neuyr sesyd tell þey
had take her ⁊ put her to dethe / And thene /Morgane and
conodage cesyd all þe lond and þepartyth^b by twex hem⁶ to /
and þey held hyt Soo xij 3er and aftyr þane gane grett
debatt be gañ⁷ by twene hem⁸ so þe werryd strongly to gyddyr
and eyder ded opyr much Sorrowe for Margane wold haue all þe
lond (fol. 14^b) frome vmbar þat Conodage held Do^c Condag
come a3ene wyt a grett pour and so þat Morgon dorst not A
byde but flet a way in to walys And /conodag⁹ toke¹⁰ hym and
preseuid hym and tok hym and slew hyme Then come conadag a
3ene and sesyd all þe lond in to hys hond and holded^d and
Reynyð aftyr xxxiij 3er and þen deyð and lyth at new troy
how Raynold þat was Condag sone Reynyð aftyr hys fadyr and
in his tyme Reynyð blod iij dayis in tokenyth of dethe

howe reynold þat was conagis sone regned aftir his fadir

And aftyr this /Conag reygñid Raynold his sone A wysse
knyzth and ahardy and cortes þat well and wordely gouernyd þe
lond and mad hyme welbebelouyd^{11e} among his pepyll and in his
tyme Reyned blod þat last iij dayis as god woold And sone
aftyr come grett deth of pepyll for hostys/out of nombyr of
peple fowthe to þey wer ded wher nomañ myzt hyme lett tell all
myzty god þer of toke mersy and pyte And þane gan yt sesse And

⁴M- from m- by corr. ⁵-e they by corr. over erasure.

⁶Stroked out in red. ⁷be gañ by corr. in right margin at
end of line. ⁸Inserted above; caret in text. ⁹Second -o-
inserted above. ¹⁰-ke inserted above; caret in text.

¹¹Double hyphen betw. -be- and -be-.

Reynold regned xij 3ere and after dyed and lithe atte 3orke.

How Gorbodryan whas kynge and regned in pees and after he deyed and was beried at 3orke. Capitulo.Sexto Decimo.

And after þis Regned Gorbodian[̄] his sone and whas kynge xv.3ere.and after he died.and lithe at 3orke.

¶ Gorbodryan hadde ij sones and þat on[̄] kyllled þat other for þe Eritage and Ideyne her moder killed þat othir wer for þe lande whas distroyede. Capitulo.xvij^o

And whan Gorbodryan whas dede.his.ij.sones weren wondere proude and werred to gedere for þe lande. And þat on men called ferres and þat other porres. And ferres wold haue hadde alle þe lande.but porres wold not suffre it. And ferres hadde a felouns herte and þoght þorgh tresoun.to kille his brother but a none he fleghe in to fraunce & dwelled with þe kyng of fraunce.þat men called Syward tyl at þe laste he come wip an huge oost and faught wip his brother ferres and sped ful evell for he was killed first in þat Batayle. And wan ydeyn[̄].her moder hit wiste þat porres whas dede she made muchel sorowe.for encheson þat sche loued hym.more þan sche dede þat oper and þer for sche þoght.to sle hym and pryuely.come vn to hir sone (fol. 8^ab) vp on a nyght wip to knyues in her hande and kytte here sones throte and hew his body al to peces. who^{1b} herde euere so wickyd a moder.þat kyllled her sone wip her owne handes.for cause of hir opere sone

¶ How foure kynges helde curteysly.alle Bretaigne and of here names. Capitulo xviiij^o

þis Reynold reyne xxij 3er and lyeth at yorke Aftyr þis
Reynold reygnyd Corbodyan hys sone xv 3er and deyð and
 lyeth at yorke

How Carbodian had ij Sonnez and þat one slow tother to haue
þe holle Erytag 7 how Ievn þer modyr kyllyd þe tother

Whene Corbodyan was ded his sone3 þat he is waxin^f stowt
 and proud 7¹² euyr werryd¹³ to gyddyr for þe lond þat one
 men cally /ferre3 7 oþyr /porrys and this forrys wold haue
 all þe londe put /porrys wold nott Suffer hyme (fol. 15^a)
fferrys had a Spetus harte and thouth to Rout¹ to sle hys
 broþer bot porrys went preuely in to fraunce and A bood
 ther wyt þo kyngys steward all vppon a tyme he come a3ene
 and fau3t wyt his Broþir fforrys but yt happyt so at þat
 tyme þat porrys was slayne at batayll And whene /Edene her
mobir wyst þat porrys was dedd Sche mad grett Sorrow by
 cause Sche louyd hyme bettyr þane ferres and þout anone
 preuely to Sle hyme And vppon atyme sche come preuely to
ferrys her sone by ny3t tyme wyt ij knyttys^a and Sodenly
 cott hys trott and hewe² all his body All in Smalle pecys
/who hard euyr of suche a corst modyr þat wyt her owne
 hondys slow her owne Sone And so long aftyr tyme a bod þe
 reprwe þe modyr 7 schame Also by cause sche morderd her
 Sone for louf of þat oþyr and so wer þey bothe sleyne

/How iiij kyngys had had¹ all bretayne and wych be þer
/names/³

¹²By corr. over erasure. ¹³-d inserted above by corr.
 Fol. 15 ¹Stroked out. ²Inserted above by scribe; caret
 in text. ³Chapter-heading by scribe.

And whan þees two Bretheryn̄ weren so dede. þei ne hadde neiper sone ne doghter ne none oþer of her kyn̄ þat myght haue þe erytage. And þerfor þe grettest maistres of þe londe broghten adowne þe poor and bynome hem her landes in euery cuntre þei had stronge werre. And amonges alle oþer þer were foure nobil knyghtes and myghty. þat ouercomen alle þe other þorogh her myght and strenght [.]² and toke alle þe lande euery man a boutte hym. And eche of hem foure lete cleyme hym kynge. and on þer of men callid Scater and he was kyng of Scotlond And a nothir men callid Dawallier and he was kyng of logers. and hadde alle þe lande þat was lotrinus þat was Brutus sones And þe.iiij. men callid Cloten and he whas kynge. of Cornwaile 7 þis Cloten. schuld haue had alle by reson. for men wist none so rightfull eire as he was but þoo þat had more strength þan he sette by hym ful lytyl prise. and þer for he hadde no more lande in alle bretaigne but onlich Cornwaill

¶ Of þe kynge Donebande. þat was Cloten ys sone and how he hadde wonne and gete alle þe lande. Capitulo. xix.^o

And þis Cloten had a sone þat men called Donebande þat after hys fadres deþ by come so fair and so (fol. 8^ba) noble so þat he passed alle þe kynges of Bretaigne and a none as he knygt^c he þoght þat his fader þe while þat he lyued whas þe moost ryghtfull eire of all þe lande^d and þat he schuld haue it bi reson. But þe other þat wer more strenger þan he wiþstode hym so at þe laste he ordeyned hym a strong power. and first conquered al þe land of logers. And after he conquered Scotland 7 wales. ¶ And Scater come with his men. and 3afe hym a grete bataill And Rudak wiþ his walischmen. come for to helpe hym. And

²Letter erased, prob. h.

/when þes ij bretheryne wer so ded þer was neþyr sonne ne doustyr ne none of her kynred left by hynd hym þat he myȝth lawfully haue þe Erytag and for as muche as the strengyst⁴ men droue⁵ and Scomfyt þe feild¹ febull and toke all her londys So þat in⁶ euyry country⁷ þay haddyn wer and astryf But among all oþyr thynys theyr /Edeyn a mong⁸ hyme in þe contrer⁹ þat ouyrcome all þat oþer And thorow þer strenth and myȝth þey tokyne all þe londys eschone of hym toke a Serten contre and euyry man in his (fol. 15^b) lond lett call hym kyng and hone of heme men callyd /Scatier and he was kyng of Schotlond and oþyr men callyd Dawaller And he was kyng of lygers And of þe londe þat was lotrayne þat was brut Sonne The iij men callyd Newdake and he was kyng of walys And þe iiij men callyd Cloton [and]¹⁰ he was kyng of Cornuall bot Cloton shuld haue all þe lond by reson for þer wist no mane þat þer was none so Rythfull a nayr as he was but þey þat wer strongyst sett lytill forsse by hyme þat wer of þe lest astatt And for þis /Cloton had no more land a mongys them but only Cornwayll

/of kyng Donbande þat was Clotyn and how he had wone þe lond³

This /Clotyn had a sone þat was callyd /Dubane þe wyche aftyr deth of his fadyr by come an hardy man and afayr and A Curtes so þat he passyd all þe kyngys of bewte and of fayrnes and of worthynes and a none as he was knyȝte he wist well he¹ þat he was ~~///-///-///~~¹¹ most Rythfull heyr of all þis lond⁶ and shuld haue had ytt and by reson wat¹² oþyr kyngis þat wer more of strenthe then he be nome hyme hys lond and aftyre thys /Donband¹³ ordynynd hym pour and fyrst conqueryd all þe lond of legers And aftyr he wold haue conqurd¹⁴ all /Scotlond and walys but /Scatyr com wyt his men and ȝaff hyme batayll And /Ruduke come wyt his walsmene. for to help hyme But

⁴-g- inserted above by corr.; caret in text. ⁵-o- inserted above; caret in text. ⁶Inserted above; caret in text. ⁷-r- inserted above in red. ⁸-n- inserted above. ⁹-r- inserted above. ¹⁰Erased, poss. not deliberately but by water stain. ¹¹Erasure. ¹²Vertical line separates reson from wat. ¹³Superscript -o- by scribe. ¹⁴-r- over -e- by scribe.

so it fyll þorgh quentyse^e. Donedab^f. hadde þe victory. and killed Scater and Rudak in playn̄. Bataile. And in þis manere he conquered alle þe lande 7 menteined afterwardes þe lande in good pees. and quyete þat whas neuere by fore

How Donebande was þe first kyng þat euere wered a crowne of gold in Bretaine. Capitulo Vicesimo.

And þis Donebande lete make hym a crowne of gold whan he whas kyng and werid hit vpon his hede. Than made þis donebande a constitucion^g and an ordinaunce. þat þogh a man. had neuere so muche misdoon. if he myght take and come to holy temple þat þer schuld no man mysdone hym. And if men dede. þei schuld be put vn to þe deth. And after he schuld goon̄ sauelich in to what cuntre. þat he wolde. wip out any harme doyng. And if any man set hande vpon hym. he schuld be done to þe dethe. And þis Donebande made þe toune of Malmesbury. and þe toune þat is called vise also and wan he had be kyng. xl. 3ere (fol. 8^b) he dyed and lythe at newe Troye.

¶ How Brenne and Belyn departed þe lande by twene hem þat were Bonebandes^h sones whan he whas dede. and of the werre by twene hem. Capitulo. xxj.

And whan bonebande was dede, his to sones Brenne and belyn departed þe lande by twene hem. as bonebande her fader hadde ordeined So þat Belyn. þe Eldest sone had all þe lande. of Bretayne. a þis halfeⁱ humbre ¶ And þis brother Brenne had al þe lande. from humbre vnto Scotlond for encheson þat belyn hadde the beter parte. Brenne bicome wonder wrote. and wold haue had more and belyn his brother wold graunte hym no more. And þer fore grete werre aroos by twene hem to. But Brenne þe 3onger broþer had no power ne strenght Belyn^j. And þer for þorgh counsell. of his folke. he went

yt be fyll Soo þat Rudake was slayne 7 Scatyr also in plane
 batayll and so Duband had þe wictory and conquer all þe lond
 and well mayntyne and peesse¹⁵ and in Equite þat in many
 3erys a for yt was nott So mayntened /how Dubvan was þe
fyrrst (fol. 16^a) kyng þat euyr bar croune in Bretayne of gold
of donband first kyng of Bretayn

This Donband let make hyme a croune of gold 7 weryd þe
 crowne vppon his hed as euyr^a kyng ded be for and he
 hordynyd a statute þat had a mane done so muche harme 3eff
 he myth come in to þe tempyll þer shall no man say awth to
 hyme ne done hym none harme but goo þerin in Saff plas and
 after goo in wat contre þat he wyll wyt owth anny harme /
 3ef ony man sett hond vppon hym in violens he shuld þane
 lesse hys lyff saue in þe kyngys gras And þis /Donband made
 þe toun of Malmesbery and þe tone wysse and when he had
 Reynyd xl 3er well¹ and worthely he dyde and lyith at newe
 Troy

Howe Brenne 7 Belynere^b departid be twene hem the londe
 after the deth of dowbande here ffadir

And after þis /donband was ded hys sonnes þat he had departyd
 þe lond by twex heme as her fadyr had hordynyd so þat /belyner/
 hys heldest sonne had hall hys lond of Bretayne on þis halfe
 humbur and hys broþyr wold had /Brenne had all þe lond frome
 be hynd humbur vnto Scotlond for as muche as belynere had þe
 bettyr parte /Brenne was full wrothe 7 wold haue had mor of
 þe lande And /belynere hys brother wold graunte hyme no mor
 wherfor conteke and wer AROSse by twene hem bothe But /Brenne²
 þe 3onger broþer had no myte³ nor strenthe a3en hys broþyr
 /Belyner and þer for Brene thorow councell of hys folke went

¹⁵First -e- by corr. over erasure. Fol. 16 ¹Badly formed
 -e- like -o-. ²-e added by corr. ³-e by corr. over
 erasure of (?) two letters.

þo in to Norway. to þe kyng þat was þo þat^k men callid
 Elfynges and preide hym of help and of socour to conquere
 þe lande vppon Belyne his Brother and vpon þat couenaunt
 he wold haue his doghter to wife And þe kyng Elfynges
 graunted hym And Belyn a none as his brother was gon in
 to Norway sesed þo al þe londe in to his hande. of
 Northumbre londe and toke all þe Castelles and dide hem
 vitaille. and araye and lete kepe þe Castelles of þe coostes
 of þe see so þat brenne schuld not come. to lande. by no no
 manere way. but yf he were take ¶ The kynge Elfynges þo
 lete aray an huge oost and toke his doghter to brenne and
 all his³ (fol. 9^a) oost þat he hadde ordeyned ¶ And the
 Damysell had longe tyme loued the kynge Cutlagh and she
 sent hym word how Brenne schuld haue here and how he
 schuld neuere more here se. But yf þat she hym forsoke
 // And whan Cutlagh herd þis tydyng he wayted to mete with
 Brenne. wip as many schippes as he myght haue so þat þoo
 fletes two^a mettyn to gederes and sore foughten to gederes
 longe tyme / But Bren and his peple. 7 hys shippes weren
 discomfited And kyng Cutlagh toke þe Damysell þat men
 callid Samye and put her in to his shippes^b and Bren fled
 þennes yn al þat he myght ¶ kyng Cutlagh wold haue turned
 þo a zeine in to hys owne lande but vpon hym þer come a
 tempest þat last. v dayes. and. v. nyght so þat he was dryve
 in to Bretayne and ther aryued with. iiij. shippes and no
 mo. And þo men þat kepten þe se Costes token kynge
 Cutlagh and Samye þe Damysell. 7 all kynge Cutlagh folke
 and come and presented hem vn to Belyn and he toke and
 put hem yn to prison.

How Belyne deliuered out of þis lande kynge Catlagh of
 Denmarke and Samy þe Damysele. Capitulo. xxij.^o

³Catchword below, enclosed in red, oost þat he had
ordeyned

fro þens in to norway to þe kyng /Elsyng and hym⁴ pray of
 help and of socur (fol. 16^b) for to conquer all þe lond
 vppon /belynere his brother / vppon þat couinand þat he
 wold wed hys douȝtyr and mak here hys quene / And þe kyng
/Elsyng hyme grauntyd /Belynere ~~⁄~~⁵ hys brother was gone in
 to norway he sesyd all þe lond in to his hond of Northumbrelond
 and toke all þe castellys and lett A Ray hem and stouf heme
 well And also ordynynd good kepyng of þe ostys^c of the See
 thatt⁶ Brenne hys Brothyr schuld nott A Ryvid ~~⁄~~⁷ vp in no
 seyð but yf he wer take þe kyng /Elsyng lett Assemyll a
 grett ost And ~~⁄~~⁸ delyuer his douȝter to /Brenne And all þe
 pepyll þat he had hordynynd and this Damesell /sane had long
 tyme louyd a kyng þat men callyd /Guthlagh and to hym Sche
 told all her counsell how þat /brene⁹ shuld haue her to his
 wyfe and ledyne her a way wyt hym for euyrmor and so he
 shuld her lesse but yf sche mythe forsake /Brenne And when
/Guthlagh hard thys tydyngis he lay for A spy on¹⁰ /Brenne
 wyt as meny schippys as he mythe haue So that ij fletyne
 metyn to gyddyr And long tyme foughten So þat /Brenne and
 hys Chipys turnyd aȝene and weryn dyscomfetyd And kyng
/Guthlagh toke /Sanne and put her in to Sipe¹¹ and /Brenne
 Schamfully turnyd aȝene and fled thens as a man dyscomfyt
 And Guthlagh wold a wende¹² in to his owne contre but þer
 come vppon hyme a grett tempest þat last v. dayis so þat
 thorw tempest he was drywyne in to breteyne wyt iij schippys
 7 no. (fol. 17^a) moo / And þey þat¹ keptyne þe cost on þe
 See tokyn /Guthlath 7 sanne and all hys folke 7 presente heme
 to /belynere and /belyner pot þem in to pressoun

/how belyner drowe out of his lond kyng Guthlagh of denmarke
and sanne^{1bis}

⁴Inserted above; caret in text. ⁵-nere by corr. over erasure. ⁶-tt by corr. from i; MS. orig. thai. ⁷By corr. over erasure. ⁸Erasure. ⁹-e inserted above by corr. ¹⁰Inserted above by corr. ¹¹-e very faint. ¹²-nde by corr. over orig. letters. Fol. 17 ¹þey þat by scribe above; caret in text. ^{1bis}Chapter-heading by scribe.

Brenne hadde not longe tyme dwelled oute of his lande þat
 he ne come a 3en wip a stronge navy and sente vn to hys
 brother Belyn þat he schulde 3elde a3eyne hys lande vnto
 hys wyfe. and to hys peple. and hys castellys or elles he
 wold dystroy hys lande ¶ Belyn wolde do no þynge after
 hys worde. ne no þynge drad hys manace. and þer for Brenne
 come wip hys folke. and faughte. a3enste hys broþer Belyn.
 But Brenne a none. was scomfyted and hys men slayn. 7 hym
 sylfe flegh (fol. 9^ab) þennes 7 wip hym xij felawes. and
 no mo and wente in to fraunce ¶ And Belyn hys broþer þo
 turned a3en. vn to 3orke and toke counseill wate he schuld
 done wip kynge Cutlaghe for he profered hym to by come
 his man 7 to halde of hym alle his lande 3eldynge vn to
 hym euery 3ere a thousand pownde. of siluere. ¶ And to halde
 hys couenaunt ferme and stable. schuld take hym good
 hostages and done to hym homage and alle hys men. and more
 ouere he schulde swere vpon a boke^c. þat he schuld neuere
 breke. ne fals þe Couenauntes. ¶ Belyn þo þorgh counseill
 of his peple graunted as muche as kyng Catlagh hym
 profered and in þis manere Cutlagh by come Belynus man
 and he vndyrfenge his homage and his ooth. and lete write.
 and a ferme þe Couenaunt3 by twene hem and in þis manere
 þe kynge Cutlagh nome Samye þe Damsell and his folke. 7
 went þennes wip muchel Ioy and turned a 3en. vn to Denmarke.
 And euere more after. þe Couenaunt3 were halden and þe
 truage. 3olden. vn to þe tyme þat hauelocke þat^d was kynge
 of Denmarke. and also of his lande þorogh a Damysel. þat
 men callid Gildburgh þat he had spoused for sche whas
 right eyre of his lande ¶ And þo dwelled þis Belyn in
 pees and whas welbeloued a monges his barons and alle his
 men. and he made rialle wayes on fro þe Este. vn to þe west
 and þat whas Callid watlyngstrete. And a nother he made
 from þe northe vn to þe south and þat men called
 Ikelinestrete. And two opere wayes he made. in bossynge^e
 þorgh out þe lande And þat on is callyd ffosse and þat

Hyt was nott long aftyr bot þat /Brenne come A 3ene wyt a gret meyne and send to hys brothyr /Belyner þat he shuld yeld a3ene to hym his lond and hys folke to hys castellys Also or elles he wold dystroy hys londe /Belyner/dred nothyng of his males ne nott wyll doo aftyr hys desyr wherfor /Brenne/came wyth² hys folke and fawthe wyt /Belyner and /Brene³ was dyscomfett and hys foke slayne And hym self fled wyt xij men in to fraunce And this /belynere/ went thene to yorke and toke hys counsell watt he mythe doo wyt /Guthlagh kyng for kyng /Guthlagh profer to be come his mane and to hold his lond to hym 3eldyng 3erly⁴ M³ ði of syluyr for euyr mor And for sewrte of þis couinand trewly to be hold on /+++++⁵ kyng Guthlagh proferd to be com hys mane and to hold hys lond of hyme /Gutlach tooke Sanne/ s^a of his folke and went thens and tornyd in to Denmark⁶ and euyr mor aftyr the couenante wher trewly holdene and þe kept⁷ to þe tyme þat /hauloke/was⁸ kyng of Denmarke wych wyddet /Gylborth þat was Ryte⁹ heyr of Breteyne þis /belynere/þane dwellyng¹⁰ in good Eqite 7 rest and worthely gouyrnyd hym and well was be lowyd of all pepyll and mad iij Ryally¹¹ wayis in Breteyne oon¹² was frome þe est to þe west and þat (fol. 17^b) was callyd /watlyngstret/and a nothir frome¹³ þe north in to þe Sowthe /Ikentstret/and opyr to wayis he mad in bessyng throrgh out þe lond þat one ys callyd /ffosse and þat

²-h added by corr. ³-e- over -u- by corr.; superscript -e. ⁴Badly formed -e-. ⁵Erasure of three words, prob.: Guthlagh kyng .fer ⁶-rk by corr., presumably over erasure. ⁷þe kept / by corr. over erasure. ⁸-s by corr. over erasure. ⁹-e by corr. over erasure of two letters. ¹⁰-g inserted above by corr.; caret in text. ¹¹-y stroked out. ¹²o- by corr. over erased s-. ¹³MS. has 2 minims for -m-.

other fossedike. And thus Belyn̄ menteyned wel þe good
(fol. 9^ba) lawes þat doneband his fader made and ordeyned
in his tyme.as bi fore is said

How þe acorde was made bytwene belyn̄ and Brenne þorgh
Cornewenne her moder. Capitulo xxiiij^o

And Bren þat whas Belynes broþer had longe tyme þo dwelled
in fraunce and had gete hym þo a grete lordschip þorgh a
mariage.for he whas duke of Burgoyne þorgh þe dukes
doghter ffewyn̄ þat he had spoused þat whas right eyre of
þat lande ¶ And he assembled an huge power of hys owne
folke of fraunce and come in to þis lande for to fyȝt wip
Belyn̄.his broþer and his brother come aȝenst hym wip a
stronge power of Bretaignes.and wold han went in to
Batayle.but her moder Cornwenn̄ þat þo loued^f herde telle.
þat oon broþer wold dystroy þat other.^v and anone sche
wente by twene her sones and made hem acorded.and had
muche trauayle to brynge hem.þer too and so þo ij.
brethryn̄.wenton̄ to geders wip muche^l Ioy in to þe Cite
of newe Troy and þer þei dwelled xij monthes // And after
þei toke counseill and ordeyned hem for to go in to
ffraunce to conquere þat land and so þei deden̄ and brent
townes.and dystroyd þat lande.in length and in brede.
And þe kynge of fraunce come wip his folke.¶ ȝaf hem
batayle but he was scomfited ¶ ouercome.¶ dede Truage vn
to Belyn̄ and vn to his brother and after þei wenton̄ forth
to Rome and conquered Rome ¶ lumbardy and Germayne.and
token̄ homages.and feautes of Erles ¶ barons and of alle
othir lordes and after þei comyn̄ in to þis lande of
Bretayne wip her Briton̄s and dwelled to (fol. 9^bb) geder
wip muchel Ioye. And þo made the briton̄s þe towne of
.Bristowe.¶ after þei went ouere þe see in to his owne

Fol. 9 ^lNo space in MS. betw. wip and mu (at end of line).

opyr /fordyke and he mayntyn well þe lawys þat /donbañ/hys
fader mad and hordynyð in hys tyme as ys aforsayd

Howe acorde was made be twene Belinere and brenne þurh
corenewen here modir

B/rene¹⁴ þat was /Belynere brother ~~///~~¹⁵ had
dwellyd long tyme in fraunce and ther[.]¹⁶ he conquer a
grett lordschip þorow mariage for he was duke of Burgoune
by /fowen¹⁷/þat he spousyd wyche was þe duke of Borgonēnys¹⁸
dou3tyr and rythe heyr of þ land And this /Brenne hordynyð
agret pour of his folke And also of fraunce and come in to
þis lond for to fyte¹⁹ wyt /belyner²⁰/ ~~///~~²¹ hys broþyr
/and bellyne²² com A3ene wyt a grett pour of Breton3 and
wold 3ef hym bateyll but /corwyne/her mothyr þat þen leuyd
hard tell þat one brothyr wold dystroy²³ þe tothyr And sche
went be twene her Sonne3 and mad heme acordyd wyt muche
payne so At þe last þey ij brether at-last²⁴ wyt gret merthe
and Ioy went to gyddyr to þe gret troy þat now ys callyd
london and ther dwellyd all þe 3er and Aftyr þey toke her
consell and ~~///~~²¹ conquerd²⁵ all fraunce And so þey dedyne
and brent townys and dystroy þe lond of lenthe and in bred
and þe kyng of fraunce 3af heme²⁰ batayll wyth his pour but
he was ouyrcome and gaffe truag to /belyner and to hys
brothyr and aftyr went forthe to /Rome/and Conqueryd rome
and all lombardy 7 Garmayne 7 (fol. 18^a) and tokyne [.]¹
homag3 7 feyaltees of Erls and barunus and of all opir and
aftyr þey come a3ene in to Breteyne and dwellyd wyt har
bretons in Ioy and in Reste And þen mad /Brenne þe towne
of Brestowe and aftyr he went ouyr See in to hys ownne

¹⁴Superscript -e by scribe. ¹⁵Erasure of 4 words: had long
tyme in ¹⁶Letter erased. ¹⁷-wē by corr., prob. over
erasure. ¹⁸-n- stroked out. ¹⁹-te by corr. over erasure.
²⁰-e- by corr. over erasure. ²¹Erasure. ²²First -l- added
by corr.; macron over -n- erased. ²³-o- over erasure.
²⁴Stroked out. ²⁵-d added by corr. Fol. 18 ¹Letter erased.

lordschip̄. and þere dwellid alle his lyfes tyme. And Belyn̄ dwellid þo at newe troye. And þere he made a fayre gate þat is called Belynggesgate after his name. And whan Belyn̄ had be kynge xj 3ere. and foure monþes. he deide and lith at newe troye.

How þe kynge Corinbatrus kyllid þe kynge of Denmarke for encheson̄ þat he wold nouzt pay hys truage. Capitulo xxiiij^o.

And whan þe kynge Belyne whas dede his sone Corinbatrus was made kynge a goodman and a noble and þe kynge of Denmarke wold nouzt pay his truage. þat is a M^l xi by 3ere so as he had made his. othe. and sworn̄ and by charter confermed to Belyn̄ his faders tyme^g. And þerfor Corinbatrus whas wrothe. and assembled an huge ooste of Bretaynes. and wente in to Denmarke and þere dwelled þe kynge. Cutlagh and putte þo al the lande in subieccyon̄ and thraldom and toke of men feautes and homages. and sithen come a3eine in to his owne lande. ¶ And as he come be orkeney he fand. xxx. shippes ful of men & wymmen by a cooste of þe see. and þe kynge axed what þei were. And an Erle þat whas maister and souereyne of hem alle fayre answerid vn to þe kynge. and saiden̄ þat þei were of spayn̄. and seiden þei wer exiled out of þe lande and so þei hadde trauayled half a 3ere. and more in þe see for to espye. and sech 3if þei myght fynde any kynge in any lande þat wold haue of hem pite and mercy and þat wold 3eue hem any londe that þei myght abide and dwelle vpon̄ (fol. 10^a) and þei wolde by come his liege men and wolden doon̄ to hym feaute and omage for euermore. þei and þeire Eires and holden the land of hym. /// And wan the kynge herde this word. he hadde of hem grete pite and 3afe hem an yland alle wyldernes þat no man yn dwelled but wild beestes. And þe Erle þanked the kynge muchell and by come his man and dede to hym. omage. and a none toke his folke. and wenton̄ in to þe same

lordschipe and dwellyd þer all hys lyve and /belyner/dweld²
att new troy and þer he mad a fayr gatt þat ys callyd
byllyngysgatt aftyr hys owne name and when þis /belynere/
had reynyð xj 3er iiij monethys he dyde and lyit at newe
troy

¶ Howe kyng Corinbatus killid þe kyng of Denmark for he
wold nat pay his trewage to hym

And aftyr this /Bellyner Reygnyd hys sone /Corinba /trus a
good mane and awordy And þe kyng of denmarke wold not pay
hyme hys truage that ys to say M³ ði as he had Swore by
othe for to pay hyme 7 all so by wrytyng recordyd to
/Belynere³ his fadyr ~~wherfor~~⁴ wher for he was sor A greuyd
and a Semlyd a grett host of Bryton3 and went in to Denmarke
and soute⁵ the kyng /Guthlagh and browth þei lond in
Subieccioun all newe and toke of folke homagh and fellte3
and aftyr wente A way in to hys londe And as he come forthe
by orkenet/he founde xxx schippes full of men 7 women by
Syd þe costys of þe See and þe kyng axed wat þey wer And þe
Erle þat was mastyr of hem all answerd trewly to þe kyng and
sayd þay wer exylid owt of þe lond of spayne And so þey had
travelyd a half a 3er and mor in þe See to wyt weder þey
mygh feynd onny kyng in any lond þat of hem wold haue pytte
or mercy to 3eff hyme anny lond in anny contre wher (fol. 18^b)
in þey my3th haue rest And by come his lege mene and to hym
þey⁶ wold doo homage and fealte3 wyll þat thay lyuyd And to
his heys aftyr hyme and of hyme and hys heys hold þat
londe //⁷ And whene þe kyng þis hard he had pyte of heme And
3af hyme anyll þat was all weldernes and nomañ dwell þer in
saff honly wyld bestys⁸ and wormys and fowlys and the Erle
þankyð þe kyng muche and by come hys mane and did hym
homage 7 feyalte3 and toke all his folke and wente to þat

²-d from -t by corr. ³-e added by corr. ⁴Stroked out.
⁵-e by corr. over erasure. ⁶-y added by corr. ⁷In red.
⁸Superscript -s by scribe.

yle. And men called þe kynge. Irelanial and þer for he called þe lande. Ireland after hys owne name. And kynge Coinbatus come a 3eine in to hys owne lande and regned xxv. 3ere. and died and lith at newe Troye.

How kynge Guentolen was made kynge and lyued in pees al hys lyues tyme and wel gouerned the lande. Capitulo xxv.^o

And whan kynge Corinbatus whas dede his sone þat men callid Guentolen. whas made kynge and was a good man of condiciouns and welbeloued and he whas kynge xxvj 3ere and after de^a died and lith at newe Troye.

How Seysyll whas made kynge þat whas Guentolennes sone after hys faderes dethe and wel gouerned þe lande. Capitulo xxvj.^o

And whan kynge Guentolen whas dede Seisil his sone was made kynge and gouerned þe lande wel and wyselych as hys fader hadde done by fore hym and he whas kynge xv 3ere 7 after he deyde and lythe at newe Troye.

How kymor whas made kynge wan Seisel hys fader was dede and how he þat was kymorus sone whas made kynge. Capitulo. xxvij.^o

And whan kynge Seisel. was dede hys sone kymor whas (fol. 10^ab) made kynge and regned xix 3ere and after he deyde^b and lyth at herbaldoun.

How Morwith þat whas howmanus sone whas myscheuously kylled for his wickydnes. þorgh a wild beest þat deuoured hym alyve. ¶ Capitulo xxviij.^o

Ile and þe Erleys men were⁹ callid Irnamall and þer for he
han lett call þe lond Irlande aftyr his owne name And þane
þe kyng Corunbatrus come a3ene vn to his lond and regnyd xxv
3er and aftyr he dyde and lyeth att new Troye

Howe that Guentoleñ regnyd aftis his ffadir Corunbatrus 7
gouerned his londe well 7 worthly

And when /Corunbatrus was ded /Gwentolyn hys sone a mane of
good gouernauns reygnyd and was welbelouyd and gouernyd his
lond well and worthely and when he had Reygnyd xxvj 3er and
deyd and lyeth at new Troy

/how kyng Seyfyll¹⁰ reygnid and well and wordely gouend^a hyme
and þe lond all his lywe tyme aftyr Gwentolyn his fadyr /¹¹

And aftyr this /Gwentelyne regnyd his sone /Seysyll and
wysly and wordly gouernyd þe land as his fadyr ded afor hyme
and he regnyd xv 3er and deyde and leyt at new Troy -

/how kymour regnyd aftyr Seyffyll¹² his fadyr and he be gatt
howañ bat regnyd aftyr hyme¹¹

(fol. 19^a) Bot aftyr hyme /seyssyll reygnyd /kymour his son
well and worthely xix 3er in pesse and Equite and deid and
lithe att new Troye

/how houañ Reignyd aftyr kymour his fadyr x 3er 7 lyeth at
new troye herbaldoun/¹

And aftyr this /kymour reygnyd his sone /hawan x 3er and deyde
and lyeth at herbaldoun And aftyr hyme Reygnyd dauyda^a 3er^{1bis}
and lyth at new troy

⁹Inserted above by corr.; caret in text. ¹⁰Crossbar on long
s. ¹¹Chapter-heading by scribe. ¹²Crossbars on long ss.
Fol. 19 ¹Chapter-heading by scribe. ^{1bis}Small space betw.
dauyd and 3er.

And whan Owan was dede regned Morwip his sone and he by come so wickid and so stourne þat god sente vpon Veniaunce. ffor as he went by a coost of þe see. he mette an huge and an horrible beest as hym þoȝt þat whas wonder blacke and hidous. And Morwip went hyt hadde bene a whale of þe see & shet to hym with an arblast^c a quarell but he myȝt nat smyte ne touch it // And so longe he shette to þat he had shet alle hys quarels and had no moo. And þo come þe beest vn to hym and deuoured hym al qwyke. and so deyde myscheuously for hys wickidnesse. þorgh veniaunce of god whan he had regned ix. 3ere.

How Grandobodyan[̄] whas made kynge whan Moranth^d his fader whas dede and he made þe Towne of Grauntburgh^e ¶ Capitulo xxix.^o

And after þat Morwith was dede the Brytones toke and crowned Grandobodyan. and made hym kynge And þis Grandobodyan regned longe tyme in Goodnesse. and made temples and townes & he made the towne of Cambrigge & of Grantham and whas mucche byloued of Rich & of poor for he honoured þe riche men & halpe þe poormen and hem þat hadde nede. And þis kynge Grandobodyane had iiij sones. Artogaile / hesidur / lygamis & petitur. And whan he had regned xj 3ere he died and lith at newe Troye.

How Artogayll þat whas Grandobodyan[̄] sone whas made kynge and afterward (fol. 10^ba) des for hys steernes whas put adowne of his dignite. ¶ Capitulo xx^{mol}.

And whan Grandobodyane was dede Artogaile his sone was made kynge. and he regned. v. 3er and he by come so sturne & so wicked were for þe britones wolden nouȝt suffre hym

/how Morwythe regnyd aftyr dauyd 7 deyð myschewossly/¹

And aftyr þis /Dauyd reignyth /Morwyth and he be come So
wekkyd and so sterne And all at þe last came wengauns ~~em~~²
to hyme for as he went be a tyme by þe see seyð he mett a
grett best þat was blake and horrybyll and heddows And he
went hit had be A wall of þe See and went and tok
analblastyr⁴ and wold haue slayne þat best wyt a qwarell⁵
but he myth nott hitt ytt And when he had schot all hys
quarellys þe best come to hyme in A grett hast and dewouryd
hyme all holle sodenly And so he ~~7~~⁶ deyð for hys wekydnes
pouh þe⁷ wenyawns⁸ of gaid aftyr þat he had Regnyd ij 3er

/of Granbodvañ that was marwyth sone þat made þe towne of
Cambrvge/¹

Whene þis /morwyth was ded þane Brytone3 crownyd /Gorbedvañ
his sone wych long tyme regnyd in godnes and mad temple3 and
townys And this /Cranbodiañ/mad þe towne of /Cambrvg and þe
town of /Grenhame þat was welbelouyd of ryche 7 powr for he
honouryd⁹ þe Ryche and rewlyd þe powur (fol. 19^b) this
/Granbodvan/had iiij sonn3 /Artogavll/ hesvdur/ hvgamus and
/petytur/And whene he had Reignid xj 3er he deid and lyth at
new Troy

/of Artogavlle þat was granbodvan sonne how he was mad kyng
And put Adowne/¹

Aftyr /Granbodvañ reygnyd his sone /artogavll.v.3er and he
be come acorsyd and so sterne þat þe breton3¹⁰ wold not
souffer hyme

²Stroked out. ³Inserted above by corr.; caret in text.
⁴Altered from orig. anlbastyr by corr. by inserting a and
l above with carets in text. ⁵q- inserted above; caret in
text. ⁶Eraseure of 2 or 3 letters. ⁷-rh þe by corr. over
erasure. ⁸-e- from -q- by corr.; n abbreviation-mark
added by corr. ⁹-d inserted above; caret in text. ¹⁰-e-
over -u- by corr.

to be kynge. but putte hym down̄ and made hesidur his brother kynge and he by come so good and so meke. pat men called hym kynge of mercy ⁊ of pite. And whan he hadde be kynge. v. 3ere. he had so grete reuthe. ⁊ pite of his brother Artogail. pat whas kynge by fore hym. and whas put adowne for his cruelte. and a none for soke his dignite. and lete crown̄ hym kynge azeine a 3einste þe Bretones wille ¶ And þo by come Artogaile so meke and debonour^f. pat he was welbeloued a monges þe peple. of his lande and by come both curteys and fre and dede right to alle men. And he regned. v. 3ere. and after he diede ⁊ lith atte Graunham.

How Esidur whas made kynge whan Artogail. his brother was dede. Capitulo. xxxj^o.

And whan Artogaile whas dede þe britones toke and crowned ⁊ made hesidur her kynge. azeyn̄. and his two bretheryn higanus^g and petitur had of hym scorne and despite. and ordeyned hem helpe. ⁊ by gonne to werre vpon þe kynge her broþer. and token hym and put hym in prisoun. þe secunde 3ere of his regne. And þo departed þei al bretaigne. by twene hem to. but hyganus ne lyued but. vij. 3ere. and þo had petur^h al þe land and he made þe towne of pykeryng and after he diede. þe secunde 3ere of his regne. and lyth (fol. 10^b) at pykeryng

How þe Breteyns token þeⁱ out of prisoun. and made hym kynge þe þridde tyme. Capitulo. xxxij^o.

And a none whan petitur whas dede. þe Britaynes token a none. hesidur out of prisoun. ⁊ made hym kynge þe þrid tyme. and þo whas he kynge. and lyued in pees. xiiij 3ere and after he diede and lith at Carlile.

kyng bot put hyme and made /hesyður¹¹ his broþyr kyng kyng²
 And he be come so good and so merssyfull þat men callyd hyme
 kyng of pyte // And whene he Reygnyd v.3er he had so muche
 pite of his broþir /Artogayll/þat was kyng afore þat he anone
 forsoke hys dyngnyte and toke his broþir þe Croune and mad
 hym kyng aʒens all þe bretons wyll And aftyrward this
/Artogall/by come ef-A² good of condycioun þat he was
 welbelouyd of all þe land for he be come So bonore^b and soo
 fre and ded Ryth and Reson to all maner of meñ and he
 Reynyd.vj 3er and lyth at /Grantame

Of h[.....is]¹²

Aftyr the dethe of /Artogall the Brutons crownyd on othyr
 tyme /hesidur¹³/ hys Broþer 7 þene¹⁴ his ij 3ongyr brothyr
/higamus/ and /petitur/had of hym grett dyspyte and schorne
 and hordynyd heme help And werryde¹⁵ aʒens þe kyng heyr
 broþyr And so þey toke hyme and put hym to pressoun þe
 second 3er of his³ reigne And þen þey departyth all
 Bryteyne¹⁶ by twene hyme too but /higamus leuyd¹⁷ but vij 3er
 And þane had /petytur¹⁸/all þe lond and he mad the towne of
pekeryng and aftyr deyde þe second 3ere of his Reigne and
 leyth at pekrynge -

(fol. 20^a) /how the Bretowns toke hesyður¹ out of presone
and mad hym kyng the iij tyme/^{1bis}

And when þis /Petytur was ded thys Bretouns Anon ryth
 tokyne /hesyður² and mad hym kyng the iij tyme and thene
 reygnyd in pesse xiiij 3er and aftyr deid and³ leyde and
 Carrylhell

Ilmade /hesyður: by corr. over erasure. ¹²Erased. ¹³Caret
 below -e-, inserted letter erased; -r by corr. over erasure.
¹⁴p- by corr. over erasure. ¹⁵-d- from -n- by corr.
¹⁶-eyne by corr. over erasure. ¹⁷-d inserted above in red;
 caret in text in corr.'s black ink. ¹⁸p- by corr. over
 erasure. Fol. 20 ¹Caret below -e-, inserted letter erased;
 -r by corr. over erasure. ^{1bis}Chapter-heading by scribe.
²Erasure above -syd-; -r by corr. over erasure. ³MS. has one
 minim for -n-.

How xxxiij kyngges after regned in pees.eche after other.
Capitulo xxxiij^o

And whan Esidur was dede þer regned xxxiij kynges in pees
 eche after other. And 3e schul here þe names of hem.and
 how longe eueryche.of hem regned as þe story witnesseth
 and tellith ¶ The first kynges men called Gorbodia.and he
 regned xij 3ere.¶ And after hym regned Morgan.ij.3ere.
 ¶ And after hym regned Eighus vj 3ere ¶ And after hym regned
 Idwalan viij 3ere.¶ And after hym Rohugo.xj 3ere.¶ And
 Vogen xij 3ere ¶ And kynges catell xv 3ere.¶ And porrex
 ij 3ere ¶ And Cheryn̄ xvij 3ere.¶ And koyl xij 3ere.¶ And
 Sulgeyns xij 3ere ¶ And kynges Estdad xx^{ti} 3ere ¶ And
 kynges Andragie.xvij 3ere ¶ And kynges vryan.v.3ere.¶ And
 kynges Elind ij 3ere ¶ And kynges Eldegan̄ xv 3ere ¶ And
 kynges Claten xij 3ere ¶ And kynges Qurgund viij 3ere.¶ And
 kynges Meryan.vj 3ere ¶ And kynges Beldaghe iij 3ere ¶ And
 kynges Caph oo 3ere ¶ And kynges Gen ij 3ere ¶ And kynges Seisill
 vij 3ere ¶ And kynges.Bled xxj 3ere.¶ And kynges Trabreth.
 xj 3ere.¶ Archinayl.whas kynges.xiiij 3ere.¶ And Eroll whas
 kynges.xxx^{ti} 3ere ¶ And Rodyngu regned xxxij.3ere ¶ And
 hertyr whas kynges.v.3ere. (fol. 11^a) ¶ And harpire was
 kynges vj 3ere.¶ And Carpoir whas kynges vij 3ere ¶ And
 Digneyle.whas kynges.iij 3er.¶ And Samuel whas kynges.
 xxiiij 3er ¶ And kynges rede.regned.ij.3er ¶ Ely whas
 kynges.vij monthes. And þis kynges had.iij sones.þat oon
 men called lud. And þat other Cassibelañ. And þe thryd.
 Enemyon̄.

How lud whas made kynges.whan hys fader was dede þat men
 Called Ely Capitulo.xxxiiij^o

And whan Ely was dede.~ lud hys sone was made kynges.and
 wel gouerned þe lande.~ muche he loued good folke.and sore
 hated and punysched wickid folke ¶ And þis lud loued more

Howe xxx kygnes^a in Breteyne

Aftr the deth of hesydr¹ .xxxiiij kyngys regnyd in bretayne
 Echone aftr oþyr in pesse and I schall tell 3ou þer names in
 rewe and how long Eeche of þeme Reynyd at þe story tellyd the
 fyrst kyng of xxxiiij was callyd /Gorbodva and he Reignyd xij
 3er And aftr hym Reignyd /Morgan ij 3er And aftr hyme
 Reygnyd /Eyghnaus vj.3er aftr hym regnyd /Idwayler viij 3er
 aftr hyme reygnyd /Rohugo xj 3er aftr hym Reygnyd /woghañ
 xiiij 3er Aftr hyme Reynyd /Catvll xv 3er Aftr hyme
 Reignid /Covll xij 3er aftr Reignyd /Sulges xiiij 3er Aftr
 hym Reignyd /Esdad xx 3er aftr hyme Reygnyd /Andrage xvij
 3er aftr Reignyd /wryañ v.3er aftr hyme Reignid Elyne ij
 3er aftr hyme Reignyd /Caph I 3er And aftr hym Reygnyd
 /Geeñ ij 3er and aftr hyme Regnyd /Seysell þe kyng /Bleed
 xj 3er and aftr hym Reygnyd /Trabrath xj 3er aftr hym
 Reygnyd /Arthinall xij 3er aftr hym Reynyd /Corall xxx 3er
 aftr hyme /Robmeñ xxxij 3er Aftr hym Regnyd /Sunell xxxiiij
 3er And aftr hyme /Reed ij 3er And aftr hyme ij 3er And
 aftr hym Reynyth /Ely vij 3er Monthys of o 3er And thys Ely
 had [.]ad⁴ iij Sonnez /lud/ Cassibalañ⁵/ and /Enemyoñ

/haw lud was mad kyng aftr þe dethe of his fadyr^{1bis}

A--Aftr⁶ þe þethe^b of thys /Ely regnyd /lud sone 7 gouernd
 in all þe lond as much honour his good people and A rytid
 and a mendyd his wekkyd and lyther folke þis /lud lowyd mor

⁴h- hidden by patch on vellum. ⁵Ca- by corr. over erasure.

⁶Large red initial A in left margin, joined by red line to black A-.

to dwelle at newe troy pan in any other place. of þe lande.
 And þer for men lefte þe name of newe Troye. and þo whas
 þe cite callid ludstane. And þat name ys newe changyd
 þorgh. variaunce of letters^a. 7 nowe is called london
 ¶ And þis kynge made in þe cite a fayr gate and called
 hyt ludgate. after his owñ name. And men of þe Cite lete
 calle þe Cite loundres. And whan he had bien kynge. xj
 3ere he deyde and lith at london. And he had ij 3onge
 sones þat oon men called Androgen. and þat other Tormace.
 and þei couthe neiþer go ne speke. for þei wer but 3onge.
 And þer for þe bretaynes crowned a nobyl knyzt. 7 a stronge
 þat whas Cassibilanus brother and made hym kynge. of
 Bretaigne

Howe þe Bretaynes graunted þe lande to Cassibilan þat whas
 þe broþer of lud and whiles þat he whas kynge Iulius
 Cesar come to tymes. to conquere þe lande Capitulo. xxxv^o

(fol. 11^ab) And whan kyng lud was dede his broþer
 Cassibilan. whas made kynge. and he by come a good man. And
 mucche þe brytaynes loued hym wher for þei graunted hym
 alle þe Reame for euermore to hym 7 to hys eyres. and
 Cassibilan þo of his goodnes lete norshe^b and kepe. wel
 þoo to 3onge children. þat wer his broþer sones. ¶ And
 afterward he made þe Eldest sone Erle of Cornwaile. And
 þat oper Erle of london. And whiles þis Cassibilan regned
 Iulius Cesar þat was Emperour of Rome come in to þis lande.
 wip an huge power of Romaines and wold haue had þe land
 þorogh strengthe and Cassibilan ouercome hym in batayl
 þorgh helpe and comferte. of þe Bretaignes and drofe Iulius
 Cesar out of þis lande. And þo wente he a 3en to Rome. and
 ordeyned a stronge oost of Romaines. and come a 3en a noþer
 tyme for to haue conquered. þe land And whas þer scomfited
 eftsones þorgh þe strenthe of þe Bretaynes 7 þorgh helpe
 of þe Erle of Cornwaill and þe Erle of london. and

to dwell at Troy þan at ony oþyr plasse of þe lond wherfor
 he comanide þat Cite no lenger be callyd newe troy but
 /london⁷ towne ludstone and sum bokys say after his name /lud
 for in þat Cytte he mad most beyldyng and þer he mad a gatt
 all out of þe grownd⁷ and callyd yt /loudgatte all after his
 name And he mad wall þe towne and dych yt london⁸ and
 clarkys callyd /cuntas london^c And when he had Reignyd xj
 3er he deid and leith at london in þe sam gatte þat he lett
 make And he had ij 3ong Sonnez /Andiagon⁹ and /Thormace but
 þey wer so 3ong þey cowth not⁹ speke ner goo And þer for the
 Bretons crond A /storyne^d kny3te her kyng þat was callyd
 /Cassibalan^e And he was kyngys /lud brother ¹⁰ Reignyd in
 þ¹¹ Bretayne

Howe Cassibilañ regned aftir kyng lud-

Aftyr þe dethe of kyng /lud/Reignid his broþer /Cassi/bilañ/
 and by com A good mañ and welbelouyd of his Bretons So þat for
 his goodnes and curtessey they graunt hym þe Royal lyne¹² to
 his heys for euyr Mor And þe¹³ kyng of¹³ his good nes lett
 noreche wordely they ij chyl drene of his Broder /ludys sone3
 And aftyr mad þe eldest¹⁴ broþer Erle of /Cornuall And þat
 oþyr Erle of london And whille this kyng /cassibalane
 reignyd come Iulius (fol. 21^a) /Cecer þat was Emperour¹ of
 Rome in þis lond wyt a grett pour of Romans And wold haue
 had þis lond þorough strenthe but /Cassibalane² regnyd-some
 Iulus³ manly fouthe wyt hym and scomfeyt hym þorw help of
 his bretons and druf hyme owt of his lond /And þane went
 Iulius A 3ene to Rome and assemlyd A grett pour eft sonys⁴
 and com a3en vn to þis lond for to fyte But /Iulius Cecer⁴
 was dyscomfeyt by strenthe of Breton3 And ⁵ þorw help of þe
 Erle of Corwayll and þe Erle of london and his brother And

⁷-d from -e by corr. ⁸Stroked out; superscript u above -u-.
⁹Vertical line separates couth from not. ¹⁰By corr. over 2
 letter erasure. ¹¹Stroked out. ¹²MS. orig. Royalyne;
 second l inserted by corr. above with caret in text.
¹³Inserted above by corr.; caret in text. ¹⁴Patch on vellum
 betw. m and p. ²C- in red over s-. ³Stroked out in red
 with 8 superior expuncting dots. ⁴Iulius Cecer by corr.
 over erasure. ⁵Stroked out.

borgh helpe of Gudyan.kynge of Scotlande 7 of Gorbande.
 kynge of North wales And borgh helpe of þe kynge of South
 wales þat men called bretaille. And in þis batayll whas
 Nomy killed þat whas Cassibilanus broþer.and þer for he
 made muche sorowe.¶ And so went Iulius Cesar a 3eine wip
 muche schame.as ouercome.for his men were slayñ.almost
 euerychone And þo went kynge.Cassibilañ to lande and made
 a riall feste.to al hys peple.þat had be wip hym. And
 whan the feste whas done.eueryman wente (fol. 11^ba) to
 hys owne cuntre.

Of þe debate þat by ganne.by twyne Cassibylanne.and þe
 Erle of london̄.and of þe truage zeldyng to Rome. Capitulo
 xxxvj^o

And so vp on a tyme it by fylle þat the gentylmenne of
 þe kyngges houshold.and þe Ientelmen of þe Erles of london̄.
 wente vpon a tyme.for to playe.whan þei had etyñ.and so
 þer aroos.by twene hem. Euelyn^c þat whas þe Erles Nevewe.
 of london̄.kyllede Irenglas.þat whas the kyngges Nevewe
 werfore þe kynge.was wonder wroth and swore in wrath þat
 Evelyn̄ schuld be hanged.¶ And þe Erle of london̄ þat whas
 his lorde.saide he wold not suffre it.and þer for þe kynge.
 by come wondre wroth toward þe Erle and seide þat he wold
 dystroye hym ¶ And þe Erle, of london̄.sente þo priuelich
 vn to Iulius Cesar.Emperour.of Rome þat he schuld come.in
 to þis lande for to helpe hym azeinst þe kynge and helpe
 to avenge hym.vpon þe kynge and he wold help hym.wip al
 his power ¶ And wan the Emperour herd þis tydyng.he was
 wonder glad and assembled an huge power.and come a 3eine
 þe prid tyme in to þis lande. And þe Erle of london̄ held
 with hym and halp.hym.with.vij.M^l men of armes. And at
 þis.iiij.tyme kynge Cassibelañ.whas ouercome and discomfited.
 and made pees wip þe Emperour for iiijM^l pownde of syluer to
 bien payde.euery 3ere.for þis lande for euermore.¶ And whan

thorw help of Gudian kyng of Scotlond and Corbane kyng of
northwalys And in batayll was slayne Enemovn that was
/cassibalvns⁶ brodyr for hom he mad grett Inwarly sory 7
 so went /Iulius Cesar/ of his lond wyt a fewe of Romans pat
 wer on ly⁵ lyue And pane went A 3en to london and Mad a
 grett fest to all his folke pat holpeñ heme and wene⁷ þe
 fest was done euyry man went home in to his owne contre

/of the debatte pat was by twene Cassibalan and þe Erle of
 london and þe truag pat was to Rome/^{7bis}

A⁸ And aftyr yt be fyll þus oppoñ A day þat gentyllmen of þe
 kyngys howshowd and of the Erles houshold of london went
 affter mett in ffer for to play And þoru3e de batt þat roos
 a mongys heme Euelvñ þat was þe Erles cosyne of london slow
/Irenglas/ þat was þe kyngys cossyne (fol. 21^b) werfor he
 swore þat Euelvñ shuld be hanged /Bot the Erle of london
 þat was Euelvñ lord wold nott suffre yt /wherfor þe kyng was
 wrothe wyt þe Erle and porposyd fully for to stroy⁹ hym //
 And whene þe Erle of london wist¹⁰ þat he send lettres
 preuely in grett hast to Iulius Cesare þat he shull come in
 to þis lond to help hyme to weng vppoñ þe kyng and help
 hym wyt all his mythe /And wene þe Emperour hard þis thyng
 he was glad and anone send hyme hyme¹¹ word þat he wold com
 in all all⁵ þe hast and help hyme wyt all his my3th and
 hordynyð gret pour and come A3ene þe iiij tyme into þis lond
 And þen þe Erle of london hellpyd hyme wyt vij[±] 11⁵ Mene and
 at þe þerd tyme keng Cassibalan was ouyr come and dyscomfyte
 and mad pesse wyt hyme⁵ þe Emperour for iiijM[±] 11 of Syluyr
 3eldyng be 3er for truag for his land for euyr mor And aftyr

⁶n abbreviation-mark wrongly placed over second -a-.
⁷-e- badly formed like o. ^{7bis}Chapter-heading by scribe.
⁸Three-line ornamental initial A in blue. ⁹-r- inserted
 above; caret in text. ¹⁰Inserted above by corr.; caret
 in text. ¹¹Stroked out in red.

þe Emperour had dwelled in þis lande half a 3ere. he went a3eyne to Rome and þe Erle of london. wip hym for he ne durst nouzt abyde in þis Reame for drede of þe kynge. and Cassibelañ after ward regned xvij 3ere. in pees wip out werre. and whan he had bien kynge (fol. 11^b) xxvij 3ere. he deyde and lithe at 3orke.

How alle þe lordes whan Cassebelane was dede. for enchesoun þat he had none eyre of his body. by getyn. þei toke and crowned Androgen þat was Erle of Cornwaile. and made hym kynge. Capitulo. xxxvij^o

And whan Cassibelan was dede for encheson þat he had none eyre. of his body. bygetyn alle þe lordes of þe lande by her comen assent made Androgen Erle of Cornwaile kynge. and he gouerned þe lande wel and noblich and was a good man and welbyloued. and whan he had bien kynge. viij 3ere he deyed and lyth at london.

How kymbalyñ þat was androgen ys sone. was made kynge. a good man and a profytable. for þe lande. Capitulo xxxvij^o

And whan Androgen. was dede. kymbalym^d hys sone whas made. kynge a good man and wel gouerned þe lande in goodnesse and in pees al his lyues tyme. And in hys tyme was ihesus Criste oure saueour. borne of þe mayde marie. And þis kynge. kymbalyñ had. ij. sones þat oon men callid. Guyder^e 7 þat oper Armoger. þat were nobyl knyghttes and worpi in dede^f. And whan he had bien kynge. xxiij 3ere he deide and lyggeþ at london.

Of kynge Quydere þat was kymbales sone. þat was a good knyghte and a worthy þat wold nouzt pay þe Truage of þe lande to Rome þat Casseban^g had graunted. and how he was falsly slayne thorough a Romaine. Capitulo

A halfe A3er passyd þe Emperour went to Rome and þe Erle of london wyt hym for he dorst nott Abyd in þe lond aftyr And aftyr þat Cassibalan regnyd xviij 3er in pece and deyð and lyeth-atþ-the-xviij-3er-of-Reyne⁵ and lyith at Iorke

h⁵/how þe lordys of þe lond aftyr þe dethe of Cassibalan for þat he had none heyr Mad handragen kyng^{7bis}

A--Aftyr¹² þe deth of /Cassybalañ for as muche as he had none heyr of his body fryly begetyne þe lordys of þe lond be comeñ asente Crounyd /Androgen/ kyng well a wordly and was A good mane and well gouernyd þis lond And whene he had Reygnyd viij 3er he deyð and lyith at london /of kymbalyne¹³ þat was androgens¹³ sone (fol. 22^a) a good man and well Rewlyd þe lond

Of kymbalyn

Sone aftyr þe deth of /Androgyne reygnyd kymbalyne/ his sone þat was A good mane and well gouernyd þe lond in myche prosperite all his lyue tyme and in his tyme was Ihesus Cryst our Sauyours blessyd mott he be born¹ of þe Swet wyrgyne Mary This kymbalen had ij Sonnez Genger and Armoger good knyghthis and wordy 7 wheñ kembelyñ had Reyngnyd xxiij 3er he deid and lyith at london

Howe Gengere reyned aftir kynbalyn his ffadire / And howe he wold pay no truage² to Iulius cesare

¹²Large red initial A in left margin, joined by red line to black A-. ¹³Underlined in red and black. Fol. 22
¹Inserted above in red. ²Superscript -u-.

¹And aftyr the deth of kyng kymbalyn Guyder his soñe a good mañ and a worthy was made kyng and he was of so gret corage that he wolde not paie the Turnage^h of Rome that Cassibelan his fadir graunttyd and affer (fol. 12^aa) med to Iulius Cesar Emperour of Rome wherfore the Emperour that men called Claudius Cesar was ther fore sore a noyed And ordeynede a howge pouere of Romanys and comen in to this land to gette and haue the Turnage thorgh strength But lyuyng^a kyng Guider and armoger his brether ordeyned 7 gaderede an howge hoste of Brettones and come 7 3afe the Emperour battaille 7 kyllede of the Romanes an howge noumbre ¶ The Emperour hade afterward pañ a mañ pat men callede hamon 7 he saw that the kyng Guider and hijs puple slee faste to grounde the Romanes and anone caste awhay his awne armes and toke the armes of a dede Bretton 7 armed hyme with pat armure and come in to the bataile vn to kyng Guider Sire^b for the loue of god bethe glade 7 of good conforte for the Romanes that beth 3oure ennemies soone schullen be disconfited and slayne euerich one Ande kyng Guider sette littil by his tale and by his speche for encheson of the armes that the treitor hade vp on hyme And wende ful wel that he hade beñ one of his owne mene a Brettone Butt euermore the treitour come priuilyche ner and ner^c þe kyng til at the laste he woundede sore the kyng and smotte hym in þe fundement depe so that the kyngge fille doune dede to the erthe And whane armoger that was kyng Grinderes^d brothir saw that his brothir was dede anone he caste a way his owne armes and rane 7 toke his brotheres armes and come and stode amonge the Brettaynes and badde (fol. 12^ab) heme manlich fight for the loue of god and faste ley the Romayns to grounde And for the armes that he hade vp on hym they wende hit hade ben. Gunder^e here kyng ffor they wiste no thing of his

Bott aftyr the dethe of kymbalyn regnyd Genger his sone A good mane and A worthy and he was of So high harte. pat he wold nott pay to Rome the Truag pat kyng Cassybalane had grauntyd to Iulius Cesar werfor pe Emperour pat was poo callyd /Glaudius Cesar was sor anggerd and hordynynd a grett pour of Romans and come in to pis lond for pe³ to conquer pe trewage poruth strenthe and haue hit of pe kyng But thene kyng Gynger⁴ and hormag his Brother stered a gret host of bretons and 3af pe Emperour batayll glaudius and kyllyd of pe Romans gret Multitude // The Emperour had aftyrward A⁵ mañ⁶ callyd hamon and he sawe pat her pepyll was fast slayne and preuely he cast A way his owne⁵ harmor and toke pe armour of⁵ a dede Bretoune and armid hym wyt his harmour in Brytons tong seyde to pere kyng⁷ Syre be a good herte for goddys louf for pe romans pat beñ 3our Enmysse anoñ shall be slayne and scomfyt eche chone And pe kyng 3aff none keppe (fol. 22^b) ne reward to his wordys be cawse of [.]⁸ pe harmes pat hadde vppon hyme And wend he he had bene a bretone But pe treytour held hyme nex pe kyng and preuely⁹ vndyre pe scholder of pe harnys he smott pe keyng speytfully to pe hert⁵ pat pe kyng fell sodenly dedde /he cast away his harmour saw his broþer and toke to hym his breþer armi3 and come in to batayll among pe bretons and fawthe hartely his owne handes 7 beed¹⁰ A doune fast pe Breton^{11a} and by cause of his harm3 pey went he had be A breton¹² /pe kyng /Gynder slayne afor pat pey wyst nott of

³Stroked out. ⁴-g- over -d- by corr. ⁵By corr. over erasure. ⁶-a- to -A- by corr. (not recorded in text). ⁷seyd ... kyng by scribe in right margin with '.'; caret and '.' in text. ⁸Letter erased. ⁹-l- inserted above by corr.; caret in text. ¹⁰beed by corr. over erasure. ¹¹be Breton³ by corr. over erasures. ¹²A breton by corr. in right margin at end of line.

deth. And thoo by gounes they manlich a 3ein for to fighte
 and so the Romayns were slayn and discounfited in a lityl
 whille and the Emperour hym selfe fledde and for soke the
 felde and fledde in haste in to the¹ Citte of Whinchestre
 7 there he abode. And the fals Treytour amon.that hade
 kelde the kynge falsly flede in as moche as he myghte.
 Ande armoger that was the kynges brothir euere pursewede
 egerly after hyme and drove him to a water that he myghte
 not scape.and ther toke hyme 7 smot of heed handes and
 feet 7 hew his body ale in smale pecis and cast hit in to
 a water and therefore the water was called hamones haven
 and after ther was made afair toune that 3it standip that
 es called and euer schal ben Southhamptoun And afterward
 Armoger went vn to Wynchester for to seche .Claudius Cesar
 that was Emperour of Rome 7 pere he fonde him and toke
 hym And so poru counsel.of his Romanes.that were lefte.
 on.lyue.counselde hym^f to be acordid wyth.Armyger in this
 maner as 3e schulle here. That there Claudioius^g scholde
 3eue his douhter Gonnogen^h afeire lady to ben Armogeres
 wyfe So that this londe evir more after scholde been in
 the Emperours pouer of Rome vp on Couenaunt that neuer
 afterward pat the mariage were done.non Emperour scholde
 haue non Turnage.of this lande but only feuete and so pei
 were accorded And vp on this condicioun Claudioius the
 Emperour sente in haste to (fol. 12^ba) Rome and lete
 brynge his douhter Gennogen a fair laydy And 3af here vn
 to Armoger to wyf and Armoger spoused here att londonⁿ wyth
 moche honoure. And poo was armoger crouned 7 made kynge
 of Brettayne.

Of kyng armoger in whose tyme Seynt peeter preched in
 antioche and al so preched the same tyme oþer appostoles
 many abowte in diuerse landes Capitulo xl^o

and þen be gane þe Brut3 to feythe frescly and kyllyd done
 þe Romans so at þe last þe Emperour for¹³ soke þe feld and
 fled fast as he myth in to þe Citte of wenchestyr¹⁴ And þat
 false treytur¹⁵ /hamon þat had kyllyd þe kyng fast Anone be
 gane to fle wyt all þe hast þat he mythe And Armager the
 kyngys brothyr poursewyd hyme freshly wyt a fersse hart and
 drow hyme // on¹⁶ to Awatyr and þer he toke hym and smote¹⁷
 of his hedd wyt his hown handys^b and fett and leggys 7 hew
 þe body in Small pecys And þane cast yt in to þe watyr
 wherfor Aftyrward þat watyr was callyd /hamonys hawyne and
 aftyrward þat³ þere¹⁸ was mad a fayr towne and þatt was
 made þere a¹⁹ castall Southamton And aftyr þat went he¹³ to
 wenchestyr to seche Glaudius the Emperour And þen Armoger
 toke hyme // And Claudius þe Emperour thorwe counsell of his
 Roman3 þat wer wyt hyme left onlyw mad pesse wyt Armoger in
 this maner þat ys to say how þat Glaudius þe Emperour (fol.
 23^a) schuld 3eff¹ Armager his du3ther to hys wyffe þe most
 fayr creatur And her name was Gennen so þat þis londe
 aftyrward fro þat tyme schuld be in þe Emperours power of
 Rome but þey² schuld take none othyr trewage of thys lond
 but only feiallitt3³ and so vppon þis couaunt3 they wer fully
 A cordyd And then Glaudius þe Emperour send for Gennen hys
 doughter to Rome And when sche was come Glaudius þe
 Emperuour 3aff her to Armager to hys wyff And /harmogor/
 Spowsyd her at london wyt mucche merthe and solempnite And
 then was /harmogor⁴ crownyd kyng of Bryteine And Gennen quene

o⁵ of kyng Armoger in [h]wos⁶ tyme sent petyr prechyd in
 antyoche wyt obyrr appostel3 in dyuers contreys

¹³Inserted above; caret in text. ¹⁴-h- by corr. above; caret in text. ¹⁵One letter erased below abbreviation-mark.
¹⁶By corr. over erasure of approx. 5 letters. ¹⁷-e by corr. over erasure. ¹⁸Inserted above by corr.; caret in text.
¹⁹-t was made þere a by corr. over erasure. Fol. 23 ¹By corr. over erasure. ²but þey by corr. in right margin at end of line. ³MS. orig. faiallt, with superscript i by scribe; -e- over first -a- by corr., -i added by corr.
⁴Corr. has prob. attempted to alter h- to A-. ⁵Two-line blue initial; chapter-heading by scribe. ⁶h- erased.

And this kyng Armoger gouerned the land wel and noblich and Claudius Cesar the Emperour in wittnesse 7 remembraunce of this corde. And al so for reuerence of his doughter he lett make a feire toune and a Castell and called hit after his owne name Claucestre And whanne þis was done the Emperour toke his leue and wente a 3ene to Rome ¶ And amogerⁱ after regned and gouerned wel the land duryng his lyues tyme. And after he be gate vp on his wyfe Gennogen. a sonne that men called Westmer And in the tyme þat kyng Armoger regned Seint Peeter godes apostele preched in antioche. and there he made a noble Cherch and in the same Chirche he was first sett in a cheir^j and ther he dwelled 7 prechede. viij 3ere And afterwardes he wente to Rome 7 was pope to þat Nero the Emperour lette martire hym. and þo precheden openlich alle the Apostelles in diuerse landes. and Contres. that right feith and be leue and holi cherch. And whanne Armoger hade regned xxiiij. 3ere. he dide ande lieþ att london

¶ How kyng Westmer 3af to Beryng^k a prince an Ile land that was wildernesse and there he made the toune of Berwike Capitulo xlj^o

And whanne Armoger was ded his sone þat men called Westmer was made kynge a noble man 7 a worthi of bod^l and wondir wel y² gouerned the land ¶ And soo vpon atyme. hym come tydinge that þe (fol. 12^b) kynge of Gasquen that men called Rodrik was comen. and aryued in this land wiþ mochel folke and was dwellynge in Steynesmore. The kyng Westmer þo lett assemble a gret Oste of Brittons. and come to hime and 3af him Battaile and Westmer kylde Rodrike in bataile with his owne handes. And whann Rodrikes men saw her lorde slayn. thei come 7 3olden hem alle to kyng Westmer and

this kyng Armoger reigned well and worddely and well gouernyd the lond And /Glaudius be Emperour in Remembrans of this accord and for Reuerens and honour of his doustyr mad in þis lond afayr towne 7 afayr castell and he Callyd after his owne name Glaudyus Gloucestyr^{7a} and wane þis was all redy the Emperour toke hys leue And went A 3en to Rome⁸ And /Armoger/ then was kyng 7 gouernyd þe lond well and worthely all his lyff tyme and as⁹ /Armoger/ gatt a sone vppon his wyff that was callyd /westyner^b 7 whylls þis Armoger regnyd sent Petyr prechyd in antyoche and þer he mad afayr chyrche in the wych he set ferst¹⁰ in his cheer and þer he dwellyd vij 3er And after ward went to Rome and þer was madd pope tell þat /nero¹¹ be Emperour lett Martyr hyme for þe feeth (fol. 23^b) Also þat tyme prechyd all þe Appostolys in dyvers¹² londos¹³ oponly þe fayth of our lord Ihesus Cryst And whene Armogor had regnyd xxiiij 3er he deyed and leyth at london

Howe Westmere regned after Armogere

And after this /Armoger regnyd his soñ /westyner and A good man And A worthy of body and well gouernyd hyme þe lond all yt be fyll þat vppon atyme⁹ þat tyme come to hyme þat þe kyng Rodrek of gascoigne was come in to þis lond wyt an howg newmbyr of pepyll and was A bydyng in Stenesmor And whene /westyner/ wyst of this thydyngys he lett sembyll A hewge coste^c of Breton3 and come to kyng Rodreke and 3af hyme bateyll And kyng westyner¹⁴ kyllyd Rodryke wyt his hone hondys in playne batayll and wen kyng /Rodryke/ men sawe þat þeyr lord was dede þey zeldyne all to kyng /wystiner/ and

⁷-o- from -a- by corr. ⁸R- over I- by corr.; -e added by corr. ⁹Stroked out. ¹⁰-e- from -o- by corr. ¹¹-o added by corr. ¹²-ve- by corr. over erasure. ¹³So MS.; second -o- poss. very badly formed -e-. ¹⁴-y- by corr. over orig. letter.

toured to him to be his men for euermore And he gaf heme
 a wast contre that thei myghte dwell Inne for euer more.
 And so thei wenten pether to dwelle þer Inne al her lyues
 tyme. And were lefte no mo at þat bateille on live but ix
 C men And the maister of heme and prince men called
 Borynger^m and anone he bygan a toune þat he and his men
 myght have dwellynge Inne And he called the Towne Berwike
 vp Twedeⁿ and ther thei dwellede and by come rich peple.
 But thei ne hade no wymmen amonges heme. And the Breteynes
 wolde nouht 3eue here doughtres to heme. for encheson that
 thei were straungeres 7 of anothir nacioun And And^o there
 fore they wenten ouer the see into Irland and broughten
 with heme wymmen of the same contre and weded heme But the
 men cowde not vnderstonde the langage of the women ne þe
 wommen of the menes speche And ther fore thei speken. as
 Scottes don And aftirward thorgh chaungyng of her langages.
 into ffraunce^p they weren called scottes. and so thei
 schullen bee called the peple of that contre ffor euermore

How kyng Westmer lette sette astoon in the cutre³ of
 Westmerland ther that he kelled his Enymy kyng Roderike.
 and in þat countre Westmer be gane ferst to make
 habitaciones (fol. 13^a) and men to dwelle ther Inne
 Capitulo xliij^o

And whann this battaile was done 7 Rodrike was slayn the
 kyng Westmer þoo inremembraunce¹. of his victorie lette
 sette astone on hy be sydes the wey ther þat kyng Roderik
 was sclayn that 3et stondeþ þere 7 schal euermore. And he
 lett graue in that stone. and wrytte letters that þus moche
 vas to vnderstande In this place kyng Westmer of Bryttayne.
 kylde Roderik his Enemy And kyng Westmer was the firste
 man that be gane to make howses and dwellynges in that

³-u- or -n-. Fol. 13 ¹One word in MS.

by come his swore¹ meñ for euyr mor And he 3af heme A contre
 þat was for lett wer þey mythe dwell and thedyr þey went and
 dwellyd þer all her leff tyme þat ys to say ix C meñ of hem
 þat wer on lywe at þat batell and no moo her gouernor and
 her prins was callyd /bervng And anof he be gane þer atouñ
 þat þey mythe þer in dwell and han refute And lett callyd
 /berwerk wppoñ twed but þey haddyñ no women¹⁵ amons hem and
 þe Brutons wold nott 3eff hem þer doughtyrys to them for
 they wer straungers werfor þey wente (fol. 24^a) ouyr þe See
 In to Irlond and broghton women wyt heme and wedded hem
 /but þe men coud not vndyrstond þe spech of þe women ne þe
 women of þe meñ and for they spake to gyddyr as schottys
 and aftyrward¹ by chaungyng of her langage³ and all frauns
 þey wer callyd schottys and so þey are 3ett to þis day

Howe kyng Westmere regned 7 frst made þe name of
 westmerlande for he made much of that contre-

Aftyr this batayll as ys abouesayd whene /rodryke was dedd
 kyng /westyner/in Remembraunce of his victory² lett arere
 þer be syd þe way a grett ston in þe³ hey wey^{3a} wych stond
 sterred^b and he lett graue in þe stone lettres þat þis sayd
 þe kyng westner of Bretoune kyllyd in this plasse /Rodryke
 hys Enmy and this westyner was þe fyrst mane þat mad þe
 toune⁴ and hous in

¹⁵Vertical line separates no from womeñ. Fol. 24 ¹Super-
 script first -r-. ²-c- from -t- by erasing top of upright.
³Inserted above by corr.; caret in text. ⁴Second minim of
 -n- inserted above.

countre And at þat stone. be gynnep Westmerland And kyng Westmer lett calle hit afftir his owne name. And whane he hade donso¹ hee dwelled in þat contre al his lyfes tyme ffore he louede that contre more thane eny other contre of the land And whane he hade regned xxv 3ere he dide and lieþ at karlill

Of kyng Coill þat was kynge Westmeres sone. þat helde the land al in pees. his lyves tyme. Capitulo xliij^o

And whan kyng Westmer was dede his sonne Coill was made kynge a good man and a noble of condicones and gouerned wel the lande and hadde of alle men pees 7 hade neuer in his tyme contak^a ne were in Bryttayne but regned in pees al his lyves tyme And whan he hade regnede. xj 3ere. he dide 7 lieþ at 3orke

How kynge lucy regned whan his fadir was dede and he was a goode man and be came cristene Capitulo xliiij^o

And whann Coyll was dede his sone lucy was made kyng þat was a goode man to god 7 to all the worlde. and he sente to Rome and seyde that he wolde be come a cristen man and beleue in god and wolde vndir fenge Baptisme in the name of god and wolde torne vn to the right beleue (fol. 13^ab) and fay And Elencherie that was apostell sent to two^b legates that men callede pagan and Elibayne cam^c in to this lande and Baptised the kyng and alle his meyne And so þo two legates wente þorgh all the lande and Baptised the peple til al the londe was Baptised and this was in the C. 7 lv 3ere. after the in carnacioun of oure lorde Ihesus Criste. And kynge lucy made þo in this londe ij Archbissopes^d that 3iet ben in the land And whane þes. ij. legates hade Baptised the land anon thei ordeyned preste3 for to baptisen children and for to make the sacrament

vestmor lande þat kyng westyner let call aftyr his owne name
And when /westyner had þus I doo he dwellyd Al⁵ his lyue
tyme in that Cuntre of westmorlonde for he louyd þat Cuntre
mor then ony opyr And when he had Reignyd xxv 3er he deyd
and leyth at Carlell

/Howe Coyll reyned aftir westmere 7 rewlið the londe wele
7 worthly

Aftyr þis kyng /westyner regnyd his sone /Coylle a good mañ
and A worthy and of good condycioun and well Rewlyd þe lond
of all meñ he had loue and pees and this tyme was neuyr ther
contake debat⁶ ne stryf ne wer in Bretagne and when (fol.
24^b) he had Reignyd xj 3er he deyd and lyth at yorke

Howe kyng luycy aftir his ffadir Coyll did reyne

Aftyr kyng /coylle reignyd /lucye his sone þat was A good
mañ to god And to all þe pepyll he sende to Rome for þe Pope
/Elenthery þat þan was and sayd þat he wold be com A Crystyn
mane and Ressayve baptyme⁷ and in þe name of god and torne to
þe rythe be leue /Glenthori þe pope was full glad þer of and
a none sent ij legates þat þat meñ callyd /pagan⁸ And
/Elybayn⁸ in to þe lond t⁹ baptizid¹⁰ the kyng 7 all his
mayne and aftyr went fro toune to toune and baptysyd the
pepyll to all þe pepyll wer baptysyd and thys was in þe C 7
liij 3er aftyr þe incarnacioun of Cryst¹¹ and þe kyng /luce
thene lett makyne^c this lond ij Ersbesschoppe3 of Cantyrbury
7 on opyr at yorke and opir byschoppys þat wer in this lond /
And when the ij legatys had baptysyd all þe lond þey
Crownyd prestys for to baptysse chyldren and make þe
sacrement¹²

⁵From at by corr. ⁶-ba- from -lu- by corr. ⁷-ssayve ba-
by corr., prob. over erasure. ⁸Insertion carets below;
traces of illegible marginal notes opp. ⁹Inserted above
by corr. with caret in text; poss. -q is obscured by fol-
lowing letter. ¹⁰ba- poss. by corr. ¹¹Small tear in
vellum obscures -s-. ¹²s- prob. by corr. over erasure.

And after pei wente a 3en to Rome 7 ther dwelled and the kynge dwelled stille in his londe 7 regnede with mehil honoure xiiij 3er And after he deide.and lith at glowcestr

Hou this lond was longe with owten akyng and how the Bretteyns chosen a kyng amonges heme. Capitulo xlv^o

And this kyng lucy hade none Eyre of his body bi gette. and that was moche harme to alle the lande ffor whane he was dede.none of the grette lordes wolde not suffre heny other to be kyng amonges heme but euermore leued in debate and werre and pat dured.1.3ere wyth owten eny kynge. And soo hit be fyl that aprince come from Rome a man of gret stat pat men callede Sabery no thing for to werr ne make debate.but to save the right of Rome. And natheles he hade nouht dwelled half 3ere in this land that the Bryttouns kylde hyme. And whane they Roome^e wiste that Saberi the prince was soo dede pei sente anopir grett lorde in to this land that men called Allec that was astrong man 7 amyghty of body and he dwelled in this land longe tyme and dede moche sorwe vn to pe Brittones. Soo att the laste they chosen heme a kyng amonges heme for Anger and for (fol. 13^ba) malis that men called astlapades. and ordeynede an houe oste of Brittones 7 wenten to london to seche Allec And there thei fonde hym and anon kylde hyme and alle his company And on amonges heme manliche defende hym pat was a grett lorde that men called wallon and longe tyme he fawhte a 3eins the Brettons.but at the laste he was discounfitted.and the Brettouns toke ande bounden hyme fette 7 handes.and casten hym in a water And ther fore the water was euermore y called walbrok And poo regned this.Astlipades in pees tyl pat on of his Erllles.pat men called Cool made afair toun a3enste the kynges wille. and lette calle the toun Colchestre.after his name and ther fore the kynge was thoo wondir wroth and thouth to distroye

And aftyr þat day þey wenten̄ Aʒene to Rome and þe kyng
dwellyd styll in þis lond and Reignyð aftyr wyt muche honour
xiiij 3er and aftyr deyð and leyð at Gloucester

Howe grete stryfe was in þis londe aftyr þe deth of kyng
lucy for he had no eyre

This kyng /lucy had none heyr of his body treuly by gotten¹³
and hit was aftyr grett Sorw and harme to þe land for aftyr
thys kyng /lucys deth none of þe gret of the lond wolde¹⁴
(fol. 25^a) suffer noon¹ othir to be kyng of þe londe but
leuyd in wer and gret debat a mongys heme v. 3er wyt out any
kyng But thene yt be fyll aftyrward A grett pryns come fro²
Rome in to þis lond þat³ men callyd Seuevre nott for þe wer
bott for to See de ryte⁴ of Rome but neuyr þe lesse he had
nott dwellyd in this lond bot þat þe bretons kyld hyme
/when they of Rome harden̄ þat Seuevr was sso dedd and slayn̄
they send ouyr opyr grett lordys into þis londe þat was
callyd /Allec wyche was astrong mañ and a my3thi of body and
he dwellyd in this lond long tyme and ded meche sorrow to þe
Bretons so þat aftyrward for pur malles they chesyð⁵ hem a
kyng amongys heme /Aschepedys and⁶ and assemlyd a grett ost
of þe breton3 and went to london̄ to seche /Allec/ and þer
þey fonde hyme 7 slowene hyme and all his meñ and felowys
þat wer wyt hym bott one of this fellowys þat was callyd
/waloñ defendyth hyme fresly and fau3t long tyme wyt the
Breton3 but at þe last he was he was dyscomfyt And the
Bretons hyme bonde hyme bothe hand and fotte and cast hyme
in awatyr þat ys callyd walbroke and so yt was þat tyme
aftyr hys name

Of Aschepedes

¹³Badly formed -e- like o. ¹⁴Catchword by scribe below:
suffy othyr Fol. 25 ¹Inserted above in red. ²By corr.
over erasure. ³-at by corr. over erasure. ⁴-te by corr.
over erased -che. ⁵-s- over -c- by corr. ⁶Stroked out.

the Erlee and ordayned a hounge pouer and by gan to werre vp on hym. And 3af battaile to þes Erele and the Erele manlych defended hyme wyth his pouer and manlich in bataile kylled the kyng hyme selfe 7 þoo was. Cool. crouned and mad kynge of this lande. And this Cool regned and gouerned the londe wel 7 wisly for hee was a good man 7 meche the. Brettones loued hyme. And whann þoo s^{2f} of Rome herde telle þat Astlipades was dede 7 kylde they were wondir sore anoyed 7 sente þoo a nothir grett prince. of Rome þat men callen Costante^g and he come to kyng Cool to challenge^h þe tⁱ Truage þat was wont to be payd to Rome. And the kyng Cool andswered hyme wislych and seyde that he wolde paie vnto Roome. and do al maner þing þat reson wolde 7 right And soo they accorded wyth owten any debate or werre and they dwelled longe tyme in goode loue Soo at þe laste þe kynge 3af his doughter Elyn vn to Costance. þe noble prynce to haue (fol. 13^b) her to his wyfe þat was afeir woman and moch y loved 7 a gret Clerke. And þis Costance spoused here with honoure And hit be fille anon affterward þat kyng Cool deyde in the xiiij. 3ere of his regne 7 was entered at Gloucestre wyth moch honoure.

How Costante þat was a Roman was made 7 chose kynge for as miche as þat he hade spoused kyng Colles douhter.

¶ Capitulo xlvj.³

And whann kyng Cool was dede Costance was crouned kyng for encheson þat he hade spoused Elyne þat was kyng Cooles douhter. þat was heir of the lande And this costance was kyng and gouernede wel the lande. and he be gate vp on his wyf a sone that men called Costantyn. And þis kyng Costance dede vn to Rome al thinge þat reson wolde al his lyves tyme. And whane he hade ben kyng xv. 3ere. he dide 7

²Space betw. þoo and long s. chapter-number occurs below.

³Underlined in red since

Then Reignyd thys Aschepedes in quiette tyll one of this
 Erls þat was callyd Coylle mad² a fayr toune A 3ens þe
 kyngys wyll and lett Call þe toune Colchester aftyr his
 name wher for þe kyng was full of theth^a to dystroy þe ~~Erle~~⁷
 Erle And by gane to wer vppon hym and brought wyt hym a
 grett pour and 3aff batayll to þe Erle And þe Erle defend
 hym freschly wyt his pour (fol. 25^b) and slowe þe kyng hyme
 self in batayll And w^b þen was this /Coylle mad kyng and
 crounyd in this lond This /Coylle reygnyd and gouernyd this
 lond well and wysly for he was a nobyll mane and welbelouyd
 amongys bretons euyrychone whene þey of Rome hard this werely
 þat Aschepedes was slayne they wer wondyr Sorry⁸ and send
 ouyr opyr prencys of Romance þat was callyd /constance and
 he come to þe kyng for to callenge þe trybute þat was wont
 to be payd to Rome And þe kyng Answerd well and wyssly þat
 he wold pay to Rome all þat ys ryth and resoun I wold wyt a
 good wyll and they Accordyd so wyt a good well wyt out ony
 debatte and dwellyd bothe to gyddyr ~~wyt-out-any-land~~⁶ þis
 kyng /Coylle Gaff hys dougther Elyne to þat /Constaunce to
 his wyffe þat fayr was wysse and good and well lettred and
 þis Constan weddyd þis /Eleyne wyt muche honour And hit be
 fell Sone aftyr ward þat þis kyng /Coylle dyed in þe xiiij
 Reyne and lythe at /Colchester enteryd of kyng Costaunce þat
 was A Romanus and was schosyn kynge aftyr the dethe of Coylle
 for asmuche as he had weddyd /Elyene/ Coylle3 dou3ther⁹
/Aftyr this kyng /Coylle Constaunce was made kyng and
 Crownyd as much as he had speusyd¹⁰ Eleyne /Collee3 douster
 þat was heyr of þe lond to^c wyche Constance reygnyd well and
 worthely the lond and he be gatt off Elyne his wyff A Sonne
 þat was callyd constans And this kyng Constance bare trew
 fayth and ded to hym of Rome all his lyff tyme and whene he
 had Reignyd xv 3er he deid and lyith at yorke

⁷ Erasure. ⁸ -y over -e by corr. ⁹ Gallows-mark in left
 margin opp. ¹⁰ -e- poss. very badly formed -q-.

lyth at 3orke

How Costantyne. pat was kyng Costance sone gouernde þe land and afterward was Emperour of Rome. Capitulo xlvij^o

And whane kyng Costance was dede Costantyne his sone was made kyng pat was Seynt Elenes sone pat fonde the Crosse in the holy lande^j 7 he gouernede the londe wel 7 wisly and afterward he was Emperour of Rome And so hit fylle in þat tyme þat þer was an Emperour in Rome þat was a tiraunt a Sarezeine^k pat men called Maxence pat putte vn to þe deth alle þat leuedene vp on god And kyllede and distroyede all þat he myghte take be his pouer alle Cristen men that he myhte fynde And among alle othere he lette Seynt Kateryn be do to þe deth and many other cristen puple And al so many other fledde for encheson of deth and come in to this londe (fol. 14^a) vn to kyng Costantyn 7 tolde hym of the sorwe that Maxence dede to þe cristen peple þat he myghte fynde or take. And therfore Costantyn. hade moch sorwe and pitte in herte 7 assembled an howge hooste and astronge pouer 7 wente ovir the see 7 come to Rome 7 toke þe Citte and nome al þat were of Mysbeleue. and broughte hem vn to deth And thoo was he made Emperour of Rome 7 was a good man and wel gouernede him 7 alle þat were abowte him so that alle landis to him were entendaunt 7 glade to be vndir his lordeschip And þo was devil maxence the tyraunt in the lande of Greke and an none as he herde this tyding he be came wode for sorwe and dyde asodein deth. And so ended maxence his lyfe. And whann kyng Costantyne went owt of this land vn to Rome he toke wyth hym. Elyn his modir for the gret knowyng 7 wit þat sche hade 7 thre grete lordes. And othire al so that he moche lovede. And oon men called hoel. And a nobir Taberne and a nd a nobir^a Marchyn. and toke al þis land to þe Erel of Cornuayle to kepe 7 gouerne þat men called Octovian. And a non as Octovian wiste þat

Of Costans þat was kyng Costaun soñ þe sone of seynte Eleyñ
þat gouerned wele the londe and was Emperoure aftyrward

(fol. 26^a) And¹ ftyr kyng /Constaunce dethe Constantyne his
sone 7 þe sone of Sent Elyne þat fond þe holy crosse in þe
holy lond was Crownyd kyng in this lond and gouernyd this
lond well and worthely And aftyrwas^a was mad Emperour of
Rome as þou shalt her /lit be fell so in his tyme þat þer
was Anemperreour of Rome A² saresyne and A Cursyd³ Tyraunt
þat was callyd maxence þat put to dethe all þat be leuyd
vppoñ good And dystroyd⁴ holy chyrche and all his powr and
slow Cyrsten^b meñ all þat he mythe fynd A mong all opyr
pepyll he lett marter Sent /keteryne and many opyr pepyll
þat hadden dred of dethe fledyn away þens and com⁵ to þis
lond to kyng Constantyne and told hyme all þe [þe]⁶ Sorrowe
þat /Maxene þe Emperour did all þe Crystyne pepyll wher of
Constatyne had grett pepyll⁷ pete and gret sorow mad and A
semblyd a gret Oste and a grett powr and went vnto Rome and
toke the Cyte and kyllyd all þat wer þer ine ony mysbeleuys
þat he myth fynd And thene was he mad Emperour of Rome and
was a good mañ and goueryd^c hym selfe so þat all þe londys
a bowt hym weryn intendante⁸ to be ondur his gouernans And
this Deuyll tyraunte Maxence 3et þan was in þe lond of grett
spyth when he hard this thyng he wexid mad wod and deid
sodenly and so he Endyth hys lyff When Constaunce went fro
þis lond to Rome he toke wyt hyme his modyr Elyn for þe
grett wysdome þat sche coud and iij hodyr þat he most louyd
the one was callyd /Hoell þe secunde /Taberne þe iij was
callyd /Morhyñ and he toke all his londe to þe Erle of
conrwall^d þat men callyd Octouyañ And a noñ⁹ as /Octouyañ
wyst þat

Fol. 26 ¹-nd stroked out. ²From a by corr. ³-s- over -c-
by corr. ⁴-d inserted above. ⁵Inserted above by corr.;
caret in text. ⁶Erased. ⁷Stroked out. ⁸First -t- by
corr. over erasure. ⁹a noñ by corr. over erasure.

his lorde Costantyn was dwellyng at Rome went^b 7 sesede
 al the lande in to his hande 7 dede perwith al thing pat
 he wolde. bop among heyh and lowh and helde him self for
 kynge. And whanne this tyding come to be Emperour
 Costantyn. he was wondir wroþ wyth the Erele. Octovian and
 sent Taberne vn to this land to distroye Octovian for his
 falsnesse 7 come 7 aryved at portsmouth. And whann
 Octovian herde of this thing he assembled a gret hooste
 of Brettons and 3af battaylle (fol. 14^ab) vn to Taberne
 7 scomfited hym and Taberne fley thens in to scotland and
 ordeyned there astrong pouer and come a 3ein in to this
 lond for to 3eue bataylle 7 fyghte with. Octovian. And
 whann Octovian herde this tyding he ordeined ale the
 pouere. pat he myghte to mete Taberne And so þes ij. hostes
 metten to gyder vp on Steynesmore and harde 7 soore
 smotten to gydere. And atte last of þe bataile was Octovian
 discounfited and fley thens in to Norway And Taber^c þoo
 sessede al the land in to his hand Tounes 7 Castelles and
 as miche as they^d in the Reame. And sires^e Octovian come
 a 3en from Norway with a gret pouer in to this lond and
 kyllde Taberne and assesed^f a 3ein al the land in to his
 hand and drofe owt alle the Romanes and was made kyng 7
 regnede

How Maximian that was þe Emperoures Cosyn of Rome spoused
 the doughter of Octovian. and was made kyng of þis land
Capitulo xlvij^o

And this kyng [C]ottovian¹. gouerned the land wel 7 nobly
 and he hade non heir but only adouhter a 3ong chylde that
 he loved as moch as hym selfe And for encheson pat on a
 tyme hit fille pat he lay seke in point of deth and sawe
 he myghte no lenger ben kyng ther fore he wolde haue made

his lord was dwellyng at Rome (fol. 26^b) and mad Emperour he
 sesyd all þe lond in to his hond and therwyt did¹⁰ all his
 wyll among hye¹¹ and lowe and present hyme self as he¹² wer
 kyng¹³ /And when this tydyng come to /Constatyne the
 Emperour he was wonder wroth to þe Erle¹⁴ octouyan and send
 /tabernd/ wyt xij M¹ meñ for to destroy¹⁵ þe Erle ~~for~~⁷ all
 hys felleschep^e and þey⁵ arreued¹⁶ att portysmothe and when
 Octouyañ wist þat he Ascemlyd a grett powr /And come toward
 /Tabarne/ wyt all þe hast þat he mythe /of bretons and
 dyscomfeth /Taberne and /Taberne¹⁴ fled to scotlond and
 hordynyð þer a gret power and come aþene vnto thys lond for
 to 3ef batayll on othyr tyme to Octouyañ when Octouyañ wist
 þat he Assemblyd a gret pour and come toward /Tabarne wyt
 all þe hast þat he myth so that bothe þe ostys mettyñ to
 gyddyr vppon Stenmor and strongly mettyn to gyddyr And ther
 /taberne discomfyt /Octouyañ wych fled in to norway and
 then this /Tabarn sesyd into his hond all þe londys tourys
 castellys and all þat þer was And aftyr þat come /Octouyan
 aþene from norway wyt a gret pour well A Rayd and slow
 /Taberne and sesyd all þe lond in to his hond aþen and drofe
 out of all þe Romanys¹⁷ 7 thene was mad fully kyng and
 Reignyd

howe Maximiam þat was þe Emperours cosyn of Rome spowsid þe
 Emperurs dou3tyr

This kyng /Octouiañ gouernyd the land well and manly but he
 had none heysr saue A dou3ther þat was a 3ong chyld þat he
 louyd as muche as his owne lyff And for as muche as he
 waxid seke and vppon þe pont of dethe and mythe no lenger
 Reigne he wold haue mad

¹⁰By corr. in left margin at beginning of line. ¹¹-ye by
 corr. over erasure. ¹²Inserted above by scribe; caret in
 text. ¹³Vertical line separates wer from kyng. ¹⁴Super-
 script -r-. ¹⁵-r- inserted above; caret in text. ¹⁶Second
 -e- from -t- by corr.; -d by corr. above with caret in
 text. ¹⁷-an- inserted above by scribe.

on of his nevewes to have beñ kyng þat was a noble knyght
 and astrong man þat men called Conan Meredoke and he
 scholde have kepte þe kynges douhter and haue maried her
 whan tyme hade ben but the lordes of thee lande wolde
 nouht² suffre hit but counseyle hed her^g to be spoused
 to some worthy man of kynde and thann sche myghte have
 alle þe will and counceill of Costantyn. þe Emperour her
 lorde (fol. 14^ba) and to this councel alle þe lordes
 graunted welle. And so toke þei Cador. þat was Eele^g bis
 of Cornuaile and sente hym to þee Emperour to do this
 message. And he toke his way 7 come to Rome to þe Emperour
 and tolde hyme wel 7 wisly his erande. Ande þe Emperour
 þoo sente in to þis lond oon of his cosynes. his vncle sone
 a noble knyght and a worthi þat man clalled^h. Maximian.
 and he spousede this damisele þat was the douhter of
 Octovian and he was crouned kynge of this lande.

How maximane þat was the Emperours Cosyn. of Rome. conquered
 the lande of Amorianⁱ 7 3afe hit to Conan. Meredoke
Capitulo xlix^o

And this kyng maximian bi cam so grete a lord of retynewe
 and pouhte to go conquer the land of Amorian. for the
 grette riches þat was in the londe as hit was to hyme
 tolde. And toke with hyme knyghtes. and squires and ale
 maner men. þat wer of any walwe and sette no man in þis
 londe to gouerne 7 kepe. and þat was moche harme and losse
 to all þe lande ffor he lefte in this lande no men to
 keppe the lande ffor he toke with hyme owt of this londe.
 xxx^{ti} M^z of worthye knyghtes. and wente ouer the see in
 to the londe of Amorian. and kyllled þe kyng of the lande
 þat men called Imbalde and conquered all þe lande and
 whane he hade don he calledde Conan. to him and seyde loo

²Badly formed o like e.

on of his (fol. 27^a) neuwe3 to han ben kyng þat wych was a nobyll knythe and a strong mañ callyd /Conoñ /Meryedoke/ and he shuld haue kepte þe kyngys dou3tyr and han marryd wen tym had bene Bot the lordys of þe lond wold nott souffyr yt bot 3even¹ her concell to be marryd to sum mane of honour and of degre And then myth sche haue hall her wyll and concell her to be gouernyd by þe consell of her lord Constantyne the Emperour and to his counsell þey Accordyth euyry chone and chesyd oone cordell Erle of cornuall for to goo to þe Emperour to this message And þey toke þe wey to Rome and told þe Emperour well and wysly And þen þe Emperour anon Sent wyt hyme ~~///~~² to this lond his owne Cosyne þat was his honkyll Sonne a nobyll knygh and a strong mañ þat men callyd Maximiañ And he spousyd Octouyañ doughther and was crownyd kyng of þe lond

Howe maximiañ þat was þe Emperours cosyñ conquerid the lond of Armorican

This kyng /Maximiañ by come so Ryall a mane þat he porposyd to conquer the lond of Armorycañ³ for the gret Ryches þat he hard⁴ tell was þer in so that he left no man þer in off worthynes knyth ne Squier ne noñ othyr mañ bot þat he toke heme wyt hym to ~~///~~⁵ grett domag and harmez of all þe lond3 bot toke wyt hym owt of thys lond xxx^{ti} M^l meñ þat weryne doughty men3 body3 and went ouyr þe See in to Armorycañ 7 slou her kyng þat was⁶ callyd /Imball and conq3ryd all þe lond And when he had so þer I do he callid /Conañ and sayd

Fol. 27 ¹By corr. over erasure. ²Erasure. ³Second -r- inserted above. ⁴-r- inserted above. ⁵Erasure; to poss. by corr. ⁶Hole in vellum, approx. 5.5 x 4 mm.; writing round it.

Conan for enchesoun. pat kyng Octoviane wolde have made
 3ou kyng of Brutayne and [.]for³ encheson of me 3e were
 distrowbled and lett pat 3e were non kyng perfore I 3eue
 the pis lande of Amoricane. vn to 3ou and per of y mak
 (fol. 14^b) 3ou kyng And also for encheson. pat 3e bee a
 Britton and al 3our men. al so I wille pa^j this londe be
 called Brettayn ande schal no more be called Amorecan.
 but schal be called littel Brettayne And pe land pat 3e
 be comen froo schal be called mehil Brittane and than
 schal men⁴ knowe pe tone from the toper Conan po meredoke
 thonkede^k hyme moche for pis thing and soo he was kyng
 of litil Brettayne. And whann al pis was don maxiniane¹
 wente pens to Rome and was made Emperour per after
 Costantyn. And Coan^m merdoke dwellede in litel Brittayne
 with mochil honour ande ordeyned ij M[±] plowmen to erylle pe
 lande and sowe and harwe hit ande a vauncede⁵ pem richely
 in landes after pe state pat bei were And afterwarde for
 as moch as kyng Conan no none of his knyghtes. ne nothir of
 his lande wolde haue no wyfes of pe nacioun of fraunce
 ther for he sente in to mykel brittayne to pe Erele of
 Cornwaille pat men called Dionotho pat he scholde chese
 poo poruh alle his land xj. M[±] maydens. that es to
 vndirstande viij M[±] for the comune peple and iij M[±] for
 pe grettest lordes pat bei myghte haue spoused And whane
 pe Erele of Cornuaile hade spousedⁿ vndirfonged this
 comaundement a none he lett sech poruh al moche
 Brettayne. as many of maydens as cam to pe noumber of xj
 M[±] ffor ne man poo dourste with stonde his heste ffor al
 pe lande was in his kepyng to do pere with al thing pat
 hym luste. Ande whane al poo maydens wer y comen in fere.
 he lette hem come be for hyme (fol. 15^a) vn to london. and
 lett apparaile aschipes^a for him and wittail as many^b as
 heme neded to that viage And tok al so his owne douhter

³Mark before for, poss. false start of an o. ⁴Badly
 formed e like o. ⁵de by scribe above.

for as much as the kyng /Octouyañ wold (fol. 27^b) haue had
 3ou kyng of Bretayne and to hym weddyd his doughter and his
 heyr wyche ys my wyf and þorwe me ye wer lettyd and
 dystrobyld þat 3e ne wer kyng ther I yef 3ou all this lond
 of /Armorycañ ~~for-the-gret-ryches-he-hard-tell-was-there-in~~
~~so-þat-he-left-nomañ-of-worschyp-knyzt-ne-Squier-ne-none~~
~~othyr-mañ-but-þat-he-tok-hyme-wyt-hyme-wyt-grett-damage-7~~
~~harmys-of-all-be-lond-but-toke-wyt-hyme-out-of-his-lond-xxx~~^{ti}
~~thowsand-men-þat-wer-dousty-menys-bodyis-and-went-ouyr-the~~
~~See-in-harmoryeañ-and-ther-slow-his-kyng-þat-was-callyd-~~
~~Imball-and-conqueryd-all-the-lond-And-when-he-had-so-I-doe~~
~~he-callyd-Conañ-and-sayd-to-hyme-for-as-muche-as-the-kyng~~
~~/Octauyañ-wold-haue-had-3ou-kyng-of-Bryttugne-and-to-hym~~
~~weddyth-his-dou3ther-and-his-heir-wych-ys-my-wyff-and-therow~~
~~me-they-lettyd-and-dystrobelyd-þat-3e-ne-wer-kyng-ther-of~~
~~and-3yf-3ou-all-pis-lond~~^{7a} of /Armorycan and mak 3ou kyng
 fully þer of And for as much as 3e be a Bretoun and 3our meñ
 also and be come fro bretayne I wyll þat þis same lond haue
 þe same name and no mor by callyd Armorycan but callyd
 lityll Bretagñ And þe lond from hens 3e be come shall be
 cally mykyll Bretene and so þat þe mor be knowyne for^b lesse
/Conan merdoke þankyð hym hartely and so he was mad kyng of
 lytyll Bretaigñ And when þis was all I doo /Maximiam went
 þens A none to Rome and ther was mad Emperour And aftyr þe
 dethe of Constantyne Conañ meredok dwellyd in lityll
 Bretyñ wyt gret honour⁸ and þer he lett hordene ij Myll
 plou3 men in þat lond to saw yt 7 to erre yt and harowyt and
 feffyd hym rychly (fol. 28^a) aftyr þat þey wer And for as
 muche as kyng /Conañ ne nonne of hys kny3thys ne none of his
 oþyr pepyll wold take none wyvys of þe nacyoun of fraunce he
 send hym¹ vnto gret breteyn to þe Erle of Cornuall þat was
 callyd /Danatho þat he wold chese² þorow owt þe lond xj M¹

⁷Stroked out in red. ⁸-ur abbreviation-mark used. Fol. 28
¹Stroked out. ²By corr. over erasure.

maydens þat ys to say viij þowsand for þe comen pepyll and
 iij² thowsand for þe grettys lordys þat shul heme spuse
 /And when Dianotho had gadryd þurh gret bretayn þe nombyr³
 of² þe sayd maydons wyt gret labur not wytstondyng no mañ
 þorst þer wyt stond his commandement for as mucche all þe
 lond was take hym to kep 7 to doo all thyng⁴ þat to hym
 lyst and lykyd /And whene all þe maydens wer assemlyd he
 lett sende⁵ hem afor hym to london to lett hordyne Schippis
 for heme in hast as meny as hem nedyth to þat wyage And tok
 hys owne dou3tyr

³Badly formed -o- like e. ⁴-h- inserted above; caret in text. ⁵Inserted above by corr.; caret in text.

that men clepede vrsula. þat vas þe feirest criature þat eny man wiste and wolde haue senttere^c to kyng Conan for he scholde haue spowed here and made here quene of the lande but priuiliche sche hade y made here avow^d to almyghty god of here maydenhed so þat her fadir wiste hit nouht no noman þat was lyvyng.

Hou. Vrsula and the xj M[±] maydens þat were in her companye comyng towardes littel brettayne were mart^uered atte Colleygne in þat Citte Capitulo xl^o.

This mayde Vrsula chees and hade in here companye xj. M[±] maydens and of heme alle sche was Maistresse 7 souerayne and alle thei venten in to a schip at one tyme in to the watere þat men called temyse and bi tok alle here frendis to almyghti god and sailleden forth towardes litil Brettayne ande whane thei were y comen in to the hey see þere come an howge tempest as god wolde and the schip þat the maide Vrsula was Inne. And alle the othir schippes wyth xj. M[±] of maydens were dreuen in þat tempest towardes hundlande^e and comen 7 rivede^f in the haven of Colelgne. The kyng of the lande þat men called Gowan was þat tyme in the citte and anone as he hadde tydinges ande wiste þat sweche afare^l company of maidens were comen to that londe anon he toke his brothir and many men of his housholde with hym and wente to þe schippes to see þat feir companye. And anone whan he saw heme so fair he and his companye wolde heme haue ouerlayn^g. and by nome heme heren (fol. 15^ab) maydenhed And vrsula the nobil maide preched 7 councelde her felawes þat þei scholden with stonde hem with alle here myght and strength and raper suffre deth for god almyghtis sake þann þerre suffre here bodies be defowled and lesse^h here maydenhed. So alle

Fol. 15 ^lLong -r with flourish.

þat was callyd /Vrsula/ that was þe fayrse creatur þat ony
 mañ wist in þo dayis and wold haue sent her kyng /Conan þat
 he shull have spousyd and make her quene of lytyll Bretangn⁶
 but sche had mad preuyly A wowe to god of [.]chastyte⁷ þat
 his fadyr wist it nouzte ne noman ellis þat was lyuyng in
 erth and sche comand her to her kyng and to all her frendys
 and herself to god almyȝty and her felesepe and saylyd
 forthe toward lytill Bretayne but when þey wer come in to
 þe hy See A strong tempest A Rosse as yt was goddys wyll
 And /Vrsula/ wyt her schippys and wyt her company of A xj
 M¹ mydens wher dryvyne toward hombrelond þoru tempest and
 aryved in þe hauyn of Colyne The kyng of þat lond was
 callyd /Gowan/ 7⁸ whas thane in þe Citte And wen he wist
 So meny maydens wer þer Aryvyd he⁸ tok his brother /Elga/
 and meny opir of his howshold hi¹ wyt hym (fol. 28^b) And
 went to þis schippys to se þat fayr company And when he
 saw heme so-faw^{1a} he and hys company wold haue for leyn
 hem and be nome hem her maydynhed But /hursula þat good
 mayd consellyd hem and thouȝt þat wer¹ her fellows þat day
 suld defend [.] heme self womanly^b wyt all her myȝte and
 Rather Suffur dethe þan suffyr hame¹ her bodyis to be
 defowlyd so þat all

⁶Superscript -r-. ⁷Letter erased, prob. S-. ⁸Inserted
 above by corr. ⁹Erasure.

maydens þorh her conforte and councel by comen stedefast
 in god to save heme fro synne þoruh his myght so þat the
 kyng no non of his men hade pouer to don heme nothir
 schame no vilany. And þerfore kyng Gowan was wondir sore
 anoyede and anone for wrathe lette heme alle be done to
 the deth and martired And so tho maydens were alle don̄
 to þe deth. at Coleyne for the loue of almyȝty god.

How kyng Gowan com to distroie þis land and how aman of
 gret power þat men called gracian. kepte hit and manliche
 defended the land Capitulo 1jº

And whann this was done kyng Gowan. that was a sarsymⁱ
 called to hym his brothir Egla^j and seyde to hyme þat he
 wolde go to conquere alle the lande þat alle the maydens
 were come fro and ordeyned an howge Ostee Pehites of
 donmarkes^k of Orkeneye and of Norweye and alle thei comen
 in to this lande 7 brent Townes ankylde^l moch folke and
 caste a doune chirchis. and many houses of Religioun and
 Robbede the lond in lengthe 7 brede and brouhte ale heme
 to the deth þat nolde nouht forsake þe righte feith of
 cristendome. And þat tyme þer was no man of name ne of
 armes knyght nor squier in thee land þat myghte hem
 wyþstonde 7 defende no mayntene ffor the kynge maximian
 toke heme alle with hym whane he wente to conquere litile
 Bryttayne. and in the same tyme þat (fol. 15^ba) I telle
 3ou of Seynt Albon was don to dep þoruh þe wode tyraunt
 Deoclician in þe same place þat now es ordeyned 7 sett
 a fair abbay of Seynt albonys that longe tyme was apaynym
 but at the laste he was conuerted þoruh a good clerke and
 a wis þat he was herberwed in his hows^m a nyght And this
 was after the Incarnacioun of our lord ihesus crist ij C
 iiij^{xx} 7 vj. 3ere. and Seynt alboun was don̄ to þe deth be
 fore þat seynt Edmond suffred dep and therfore seynt
 albon es called þe ferst marter of Engilond And this

þe maydens be come so Stedfast to god þat Soo þay defendit¹⁰
 hem þorw hys grasse þat non of heme had pour to do hem
 schame wherfor thys kyng /Gowañ wax So sore aschamyd and
 hangry for wrothe he lett Sle hym echone Anon¹¹ ryth So
 /And So wer¹² all þe maydens martyrd for the lovf of god
 and lyith at Coleyne

Howe kynge Gowañ þat was a Sarsyn distroyd much of þis
 londe

When all þis was donne kyng /Gowañ þat was A Sarsun callyd
 his broþyr /Elga 7 said to hyme that he shuld goo And
 Conquer þat londe þat all þes fayr maydens wer borne in
 And ther vppoñ he hordynyd a grett powr of peyteis of
 denneiñs of Orkeiney and of norway and so þey come all in
 to þis lond and brent townys and slow folke an kest done
 chyrchys and howsys of Relygione and Robbyd þe lond þat
 my3t hem help or þe fend // ffor maximian¹³ þat was kyng⁵
 had all þe worthy meñ wyt hem when he went to conquer
 lytill breteyng¹⁴ And in þat same tyme was sent /Albon/
 Martird þurth¹⁵ þe wood diodiciane in the same plasse wher
 ys now a nabbay madd¹⁶ of Sent Albon whils he was a (fol.
 29^a) paynym But he wowid hym to god þurh þe predicacioun^a
 of A good clerke and a wyss þat was callyd /Assabyll þat
 was harburyd a nyth in his howsse and this was aftyr þe
 carnacioune¹ of our lord Ihesus Cryst C̄C̄ iiijxx and vj
 3er and 3e schall vnderstond þat sent /Albon was martyrd
 be for Sent Edmond was martird and þer for ys sent Albon
 callyd þe fyrst martyr in Englund This Alga

¹⁰Superscript -t. ¹¹MS. has 3 minims for -ñ. ¹²Vertical
 line separates So from wer. ¹³MS. has 6 minims for -imi-.
¹⁴-g stroked out. ¹⁵-t- from -c- by corr. ¹⁶First -d-
 over -u- by corr. Fol. 29 1car- by corr. over erasure.

sareshyn Gowan and Egla his brothir and her peple went
 poruh al the londe and distroiede al thing that bei myght
 fynde and spared no thing And whan this tyding come to
 Rome how þat kyng Gowan hade be goune for to distroie þis
 land the Emperour þat was of Rome sente astrong man and
 amyghti and a man. of gret pouer that men called Gracian.
 with iiij^{xx} M⁺ of stronge men 7 wel fightyng to dryven
 owte þe sareshynes of this lande. And soo hit be fille
 þat. gracian. and his company comen 7 rivede portesmouthⁿ
 And maximian myghte not come in to þis londe hyme selfe.
 for encheson þat he was made Emperour of Rome whan
 Constantyn. þat was. seynt Elens sone was ded. And whann
 this Gracian þat come fro Rome was come to londe with
 his Oste anon priuely he lette espie where kyng Cowan
 the sareshyn myth be fownde. And so at þe laste he come
 vp on hym sodenly 7 founde hem in her beddes. And þere
 Gracian and his company sconfited hem 7 kelde heme
 everichon that non of hem ascapede but the Saresyne
 (fol. 15^b) Gowan. And he flede with moch sorwe in to
 his contre. And sone after hit be fille þat maximian the
 Emperour was kelde at Rome þoru treson. And whan Gracian.
 herde this tyding he lette croune hyme kyng of this land
 of Brettayne.

Howe Gracian lette croune hym kyng of Brettayne whann
 maximian the Emperour of Rome. was slayn and how the
 Brettouns afterwarde killede Gracian. her kyng for his
 wikkednesse. Capitulo liij^o

And this Gracian wanne he was made kyng he be came so
 sterne and so wikked and so much sorw dede to the
 Brettones þat atte þe laste bei killed hym amonges heme
 Ande whanne kynge Gowan herde telle þat Gracian. was dede
 he assembled an howg hoost and come a 3ein in to his lond
 7 if he hade don moche sorw be for þoo he dede moch more

gowans brother and his folk þat wer sarssons went þorch out
 þe lond to dystroy all þat þey myth fynd / When this tyding
 come to Rome how þat kyng Gowañ and his broþyr be gan to
 dystroy þis lond / Maximañ þe Emperour of Rome sent a gret
 mañ of grett pour þat was callyd / gracian wyth xxiiij M¹
 well fey3tyng men for to dystroy de sarasons and dryve hem
 owt of thys lond And all þey Rywyd at portysmothe / Maximian
 myth nott come hym selfe for as much as he was Emperour of
 Rome aftyr de deth of Constanten þat was seynt² / Elyn Sone
 when this gracian³ was aryvid⁴ wyt his ost he lett A Spy
 preuely wher kyng / Gowañ 7 his⁵ Brothyr / Elga myth be fond
 And he com sodenly vpponeñ hym as þey lay in ther beddys and
 slow3e hem⁶ echone so þat none of þeme schapyd saw / Gowan
 þat fled wyt much sorowe A3ene vn to his one contre And
 sone aftyr yt be fyll þat / Maximian the Emperour was
 slayne at Rome purch tresoun And when / Gracian wylt þat
 verrely he lett croune hym kyng of this londe

Howe Gracian made hym kyng when maximian was ded and aftir
 þat killid hym þe bretons

(fol. 29^b) This / Gracian whene he be come to Reygne in this
 lond he be come A wykyd and so sterne and so muche sorowe
 wrowth to þe bretons þat on A day þey slow hym amongys hem
 / And when Gowañ wylt veryly þat Gracian was ded he a semlyd
 a gret powr and eft Sonys he come A3en the iij tyme to this
 lond and 3if þe fyrst had do muche harm aftyrward he ded
 muche sorrow mor

²sey- by corr. over erasure. ³gra- by corr. over erasure.
⁴By corr. over erasure. ⁵7 his by corr. above; caret in
 text. ⁶and slow3e hem by corr. above; caret in text.

ffor þo distroied he al this lond and alle Cristen of grette Brettayne so þat no man was so hardi for to nempne ne speke of god. And he þat dede anon he was putt to orible 7 spettous^o deth. And the Bisschop of london þat was þat tyme Gosselyn priuiliche ascappede and went to Rome for to² haue helpe 7 socour to distroie þe saresines that hade distroied this land And the Romans seide þat þei hade many tymes ben greued for sendeyng of her folke in to Brittainye to helpe þe Brittones and seiden that þei wolde no more. And so went thens the Bisschop and made moch sorwe and had þer no socour no helpe. And þo went he to the kyng of lital Brettayne þat men called Aldroye. þat was þe iij. kyng after Gowan Meredok^p þat wee spoken off³ by fore 7 the Bisschop̄ praide (fol. 16^a) The kyng Aldroie of socour and of helpe þe kyng a^a hadde of hym grett pitte and reupe in herte whann he herde al how the Bischof ffley 7 how the cristen men wer kylde in grette Brittainye þoruh paynyms ande saresymes he graunted hym help 7 socour And seyde how his brothir Costantyn scholde wende with hyme with an howge pouer of folke and faste lette array hors and harneys^b and schippes and alle þing þat hym nedede was att þat viage. And whane alle thinges were redy he calde þe Bisschop to hym and sayde loo I take 3ou to helpe and socour constantyn my broþer vp on this couenaunt þat if god 3ef him grace to ouercome 7 distroie þe saresynes and the paynymes that 3e make hyme kynge of the land and the Bisschop graunted with good wille. Constantyn and þee Bischof toke leue of the kyng Aldroie 7 comaunded hym to god and nomen here leue and toke with heme xij M^z men and wentten in to schipes and faste sayllede towards grette Brittainye and hadde wind an wedir atte wille as god wolde and comen in to Brettayne and arivedde atte Tottnesse And whann the

²-r of for over erasure; to inserted above. ³Inserted above.

for then he dystroyd þe lond of all Crystyne pepyll þat was
 in mekyll bretayne So þat nomañ was so hardy to nam goddys
 name Ihesus and all þat so dedd knowyngly^b wher put to
 vylent dethe But þe bysshop of london þat tyme was callyd
/Gosselyne escapyd⁷ and went frome thens to Rome and to⁸
 haue help and socur to dyscomfite al þe Sarsyns þat had
 dystroyd þe lond of bretayne And þe Romainys sayd þat þay
 had be so aft Anoyd to send her meñ to bretayne þat þey
 shuld no mor do soo And þe bysschop /Gosselyn wyt his Answer
 went forth his way wyt out help or Socour of hem and sped
 hym fast toward þe kyng of lytill Bretayne þat was /Aldroy
callyd and he was þe iij kyng aftyr Conan Meredok be for
 sayd The bysshop prayd⁹ to kyng /Aldroy of sum Soukkyr and
 help þe kyng had gret rewth in harte when he hard how þe
 bysshopp[ys]¹⁰ had feyd^{11c} and how þe Crystyne meñ wer
 slayne in grett Bretayn þorw paynymys and sarsons And he
 grauntyd hym Constantyns brother for to help hym wyt Ryall
 pour of meñ 7 hordynynd hym all maner of Rayment hors harnes
 and schippys and all þat hyme nedythe to suche A wyage And
 when all thyng was Redy he callyd þe bysschop vn to hym and
 sayd I take 3ou her to help Costantyn and-the-bysshep-toke¹²
~~her-leue-of-þe-kyng~~^{13d} myn owne brother vppon þat (fol. 30^a)
 couenaunte þat god 3eff hyme grasse so for to scomfyt hem
 and ouyr come þe paynems and the[e]¹ sarsons² as I hoppe to
 god he shall mak hyme kyng of þe lond and þe byschop
 grantyd wyt good wyll /Than Constantyn and þe bysshop toke
 her leue of þe kyng /Aldroy and be tauzt hym to god and
 toke wyt hyme xij þowsand of fy3tyng meñ and went in to her
 schippis And went toward grett Bretayne and a Ryuyd³ at
 Tottenes And whene

⁷Superscript -d. ⁸and stroked out; to inserted above by
 corr. with caret in text. ⁹-r- inserted above; caret in
 text. ¹⁰Erased. ¹¹-ey- by corr. over erasure. ¹²-ke
 inserted above by corr.; caret in text. ¹³Stroked out.
 Fol. 30 ¹-e by corr. over erasure. ²-s inserted above.
³-d inserted above; caret in text.

Bretteyns herde telle þat ther was comen to hem socour 7 helpe a non̄ thei gaderede pepule with owten noumb̄re and went to hym and vndirfonged hym with mekel Ioye. And Gowan.anon as he herde this tydyng he lette assemble alle the sarsynes and paynemes. And come a 3enst heme and 3afe heme bataile. And Constantyn kelled Gowan.the saresyn with his owne handes. And alle þ^c saresynes wer y sconfitted and sclayn to grounde so þat non of heme aschaped but þo þat conuertede heme^d 7 tornede hem to good^e.

Hou Constantyn.that was the kynges broopere (fol. 16^ab) of litel Brettayne was crouned kyng of mechel Brettayne for his douhtynes. Capitulo liij^o

And whane the battaile was done þei wentten alle to london̄ and crouned ther kyng Constantyn and made him kyng of the land And þe Bischoþ Goslyn.sette þe croune vp on his hede and annoynted hym as a kyng scholde beñ.and þo be gan cristendom And þis kyng Constantyn.sone after þat he was crounede spoused a wife þorgh councel of his Brittones¹. and after he be gat iij.sones vp on here.the firste son̄ men called constance. And a nothir aurilambos and the iij.men called vter And constance þe eldest brothir whan he was of age wente 7 made hyme a monk at vinchestre and Costantyn.her fader was kylde þoruh treson. And hit fill so that a pette come on a day as a messenger and seide þat he wolde speke with the kyng a priue councel. The kyng þoo lett voide the Chamber of hem.þat wer with Inne And þan ther wer no mo with Inn.but þe kyng and the pihte and he made semblaunt to speke with hym and lowted to þe kynges eere and priuilich kilde him with a long knyfe And affterwardes wente priuilich from the Chamber so atte laste

Fol. 16 ¹Superscript r by scribe.

þe bretons⁴ her tell þat þey come to socur hym þey wer
 strongly reioysid⁵ and hordynyð heme a grett powr of pepyll
 and come to heme and amittyð hym wyt a grett honor /Gowañ A
 none as he hard of this tydyns he Assemlyð his hoste of
 paynems and 3aresynes² come a3enst hym and 3affe hym
 batayll And Constantyne Slow hyme his head^{6a} hondys And all
 oþyr Sara3ens wher dyscomfyt and slayne þat non of hem A
 schapyð þo þat wer conuertyd to god

Howe Costantyne þe kyngis Brothir of litill Breteyn was
 crownyð kyng of much breten

H⁷ how aftyr þat batayl all þey wente to london 7 crownyð
 the kyng /Constatyne and mad hyme kyng of Bretayne the mor
 and the bysschopp sett þe crowne vppoñ hys hed and Anoyntyð⁸
 hym wyt all obseruancys⁹ þat ou3te to be do to such¹⁰ a
 kyng and þan be gan our serten faythe fast to be gyne
 Agayne This kyng /Constantyn when he was crownyð a none he
 weddyð A wyff þoru consell of þe bretons and be gatt vppoñ
 her iij fayr sonne3 þe fyrst was callyd /Constance (fol.
 30^b) þe second /Aurilambrus¹¹ þe thyrd /Vter/ Constance the
 Elder brother when he com to age he mad hym a monk at
 wenschestyr /Constantyn/ hir fadyr was slayne for hit be
 fyll vppoñ atyme a knygh com to hyme vppoñ A day as hit wer
 in message and sayð h⁶ þat he wold spoke wyt þe kyng
 preuely in Councell The kyng lede woyd his chambor of his
 meñ þat wer wyt in but þe kyng and þe kny3t mad a contenaunce
 as he wold spek wyt þe kyng in his erre and þer he slow þe
 kyng wyt a long knyff /And aftyr þat A none preuely he went
 [h]out¹² of þe chambur ~~sen-te-Anethyr~~⁶ so þat

⁴-e- over -u- by corr.; -ōs by corr. over erasure. ⁵-ys-
 by corr. over erasure. ⁶Stroked out. ⁷Three-line high
 blue initial. ⁸Second minim of second -n- inserted above;
 caret in text. ⁹MS. has 3 minims for -un-; badly formed
 -c- like t. ¹⁰-ch by corr. over erasure. ¹¹-ru- inserted
 above; caret in text. ¹²h- erased.

no man wiste wher þat he was be come. And whann the kynges men say that her lord was ded they maden sorgh y nouh and wiste not to don^f for enchesoun þat Aurilambros and vter veren so 3onge of Age þat non of heme myghte be kyng And þe iij. brothir was a monk at Wynchestre as be fore es saide But vrtiger þat was Erel of West Sex thouht priuyli in his herte to ben kyng if he myghte be som qveyntise. And went vn to Wyn (fol. 16^ba) cestre ther þat Constance was monke and to him seyde loo constance quod he 3oure fadir es ded and 3our brepren too þat ben with Goselin Bischof of london to kepe 7 to norich beep ful 3onge so þat none of heme may been kyng And þere fore y counceil 3ou that 3e forsake 3our habite 7 comeþ with me and y schal speke 7 do so vn to the Brittainys þat 3e schulle bee kyng

How Constance þat was kyng Constantyns sone þat was made monk at wincestre was mad kyng whann his fadir was ded þorugh counceil of Vrtiger þat was Cerle^g of West sex for encheson þat Aurilambros 7 vter his brother veren nought of age And hou this vrtiger quelled hyme þorgh tresoun to be kyng hym selfe. Capitulo liiiij^o

And so moche vrtiger þat was Erle of Westsex ande so longe tyme counselde and spak to constance til þat he lefte his habite Ande wente with hyme. An anon after he was crouned and made kyng þoruh assent of Brittones. And thus Constance whann he was made kyng and Crouned for as moch as he kowde not fare nor medele^h with the worlde he madee vrtiger his maister and his counceler and 3af him al his pouer to ordeyne and don al thing as towching the reame so that hym self antermetedeⁱ no thing þer ofe. but onlich bar the name of kynghod whan vrtiger saw þat hee hade al the land in his hand at his owne wille he thowth vpon fals treson and thowgh to do quelle

nomañ wȳst he¹³ wer he¹⁴ be come And whene þe kyngis meñ
 west þat her lord was dedd þey mad mucche sorrowe þat þe ne
 wȳst wat for to doo for asmuche as his ij Sonnes
/Aurilimbors¹⁵ and /Vter veryn so 3ong þat neythyr of them
 myth be kyng and þe iij broþer was a monk at wenschestyr as
 ys be¹³ for sayd³ But /wortigere[s]¹⁶ þat was Erle of wessex
 þouȳt preuely¹⁷ þor a quente sleyth to be kyng and went to
 wenschestyr þer as Constance was monke and sayd to hyme
/Constance yeur¹⁸ fadir¹⁹ ys ded and 3our ij bretheryn þat
 bene wyth Gosselyn þe byschop of london to norych þey ben
 So 3ong þat neyþer of theme myth be kyng wherfor I Concell
 3ou þat 3e forsake 3our habit And come wyt me and I schall
say to be Britons þat 3e shall be mad kyng

Of Costance þat was kyng Constantyns sone þat (fol. 31^a) was
monk of wenchestyr And how he was mad kyng aftyr his fadyr
dethe by concell þat was Erle of wessex þe wych latt Sle
hym aftyrward to be¹ kyng hymSelf²

This /wortiger councellyd this Constaunce so mucche³ tyll he
 for soke his habyt And went wyt hym and anone he was mad
 kyng and Crownyd but he couthe but lytill skylle of þe worlde
 ne no powynte of knyth hode werfor he haxid þat /wortyger
 mythe be his mastyr and his scheff councelour⁴ and 3aff all
 þe pour for to govern⁵ hym⁶ and to do Asmuche as to þe Reme
 pertynyth so that hym Self nothyng [h]entermett⁷ hem but
 ber þe name of kyng When wortiger saw þat he had all þe
 lond to hys pour he gouernyd att his his⁸ owne wyll he
 porposyd a preuy tresoun and þouȳt to slle

¹³Inserted above by corr. ¹⁴Inserted above by corr.; caret
 in text. ¹⁵m abbreviation-mark added by corr. ¹⁶-e by
 corr.; -s erased. ¹⁷Vertical line separates preuely from
þouȳt. ¹⁸By corr. over erasure. ¹⁹By corr. in left margin
 at beginning of line. Fol. 31 ¹Inserted above by scribe;
 caret in text. ²Chapter-heading by scribe. ³MS. has 6
 minims for mu-. ⁴-ur abbreviation-mark used for -r. ⁵By
 corr. over erasure. ⁶Inserted above by corr.; caret in
 text. ⁷h- erased. ⁸Stroked out.

Constance² the kyng and thouhte to ben crouned kyng hym
 selfe and lette sende þoo after a houndred knyghte pohetes
 (fol. 16^b) þat were the worthiest of the land and heme
 he hade next hym as hit were keppers of his bodi As he
 went þorgh þe land for to ordeyn thinges that p~~er~~teynde
 to the kyng And this vrtiger louede 7 moch onoured þo C
 knyghtes and 3afe heme als so moch plente of golde and of
 silvir Ivelles horsse and harneys and mayny othir þiges^j
 grett plente And therfor thei held hym more worthi to be
 kyng þann constaunce. And Vrtiger ofte tymes seyde to
 heme as hit were after þorgh tresoun Nay I wer not
 worthi þer to and priuilich seide amonges heme If that I
 wer kyng I scholde make 3ou the most richest lord^k of þis
 reaume. And 3af hem many grette 7 large 3eftes amonges
 hem þorgh þe kynges Court and alle cried and seide on hye
 þat vrtiger were better worthi be kyng þan Constance 7
 þat worde¹ Vrtiger made semlant as þat he hade ben worthi^m
 and wente þens from the kynges Court and saide þat he
 wolde in to anothir countre for nedis that he hade to
 done And the treitor sayd so for he wolde the kyng hade
 been ded And thee pehtes scholde him quelle whane he were
 owt of her company and goo thens And þus hit be fil sone
 aftir this kyng Constance was a nyght in his Chamber the
 knyghtes pehites brake vp the dore of thee kynges Chamber
 and treitorly quelde hyme there and so smot of his heed
 and bare hit to vrtiger þer þat he was dwellyng And whan
 vrtiger saw that hed he wepte full (fol. 17^a) ful
 tenderly with his eigen And netheles he was glad of his
 deth and anon lett take th C knyghtes and bynde her
 handes be hynden heme and lette heme be lad to london
 and there they were y dampnyd vn to the deth as fals
 treytours And anon after alle the Brittons of þe land be
 comune assent crowned þoo vrtiger and made hym kyng

²n like u.

/Costance the kyng þat he myth hym Self be crownyd and mad kyng 7⁵ regne And lett Send aftyr ane C knyztys and gaff hem of gold and syluyr and so rych Iewellys robys and horssys and obyrr gooddys grett plente⁹ werfor þey held hym mor lord þan þe kyng And /wortiger told hym 3ef he must be kyng he wold mak hym þe Rychest¹⁰ knyztis¹¹ of þe londe So at þe last þorw gret 3eftys¹² that þay had gretly they cryd þure þe contre þat wortiger wer worthyer to be kyng þan

/Constance werfor wortiger mad by his contenans as he had be wroth and departyd frome þe contre And sayd þat he had gret nessesseteis to do And so the treytur (fol. 31^b) sayd by cause þey shuld sle þe kyng /Constance when this /wortiger was goo so ytt be fyll þat þes C knyztys brokyn þe kyngys chambur doorrys on A ny3th And ther þey slow¹³ hym and smyth of his hed and beryd to⁶ wortiger ther as he was And whane þat wortyge saw þat hed he wep wyt his I3ene foll tendyrly but neþerles he was sumdell glad of his deth And a none he lett take his hundyrd kni3tys¹⁴ 7 bynd her hondys by hynd and led hem to london And ther þey wer dampnyd to dethe as false trayturs And A none all þe bretons of þe lond Crwnyd this wortiger and mad hyme kyng

⁹-e inserted above; caret in text. ¹⁰-st by corr. over erased -s. ¹¹By corr. in right margin with caret; caret and 3 superior dots in text. ¹²3- poss. by corr. ¹³-3 added by corr. ¹⁴-i- added above.

How Goslyn that was Byssop of london that kepte þoo too breperen that were constance bretheren weren lad^a in to litel Brettayne ffor drede of vrtiger þat lete sle Constance þoruh tresoun. Capitulo. 1 quinto.

This Vrtiger whan he was made kyng the wardeynes that hade aurilambros and vter Constances brotheren. þorou3 counsel of Gosselyn þat was Bissop of london that hade heme in kepyng neme the childeren ande lade heme in to litil Brittain vn to þe kyng for he wiste þat þoruh tresoun Constance her brother was I slayn of Vrtiger And the Bissop was drad lest they scholde so for the pehites quelled Constance for cause to make vrtiger kyng of the lande. And þer fore alle þ C knyghtes weren don vn to dep at london And they bere the blame ffor enchesoun of vrtigers. and þer fore he scholde nouht putte heme to þe deth he lade hem in to litil Brittain and þe kyng vndirfonged heme with mochil honour and was of heme ful glad and lette heme noriche and there thei dwellede vn to the tyme þat thei were be come 7 wexe ffeir knyghtes and bolde and stronge in dede And evermore þei (fol. 17^ab) þouth to benne avenged vp on her broþeris dep Constance whan thei sawe her tyme and so they avenged heme as 3e schulle here afterward And hit was not longe tyme ther after that tydinges come ovir the see to the kynrede of the knyghtes that wer y do vn to deth att london þoruh the treitour Vrtiger And þer fore the kynne folke^b of the knyghtes were wondir wroth and sorwed among heme that thei wolde be venged of here kynnes deth And come in to þe land with an howge company and robbed in many places and quelled al so and dede as moch sorwe as thei myghte And whan Vrtiger wiste hit he was ful angery 7 wroth And tydinges cam to hym al so from anothir countre how þat aurilambros 7 Vter his broþer ordeynede and appareilde an howg hoste in litil Brittain for to come

Howe þe wardens þat had þe to childryn in keping þat were
costantynes sones led hem in to lital breten for dred of
wortiger

This /kyng wortiger when he was crounyd þey þat had þoo ij
Chyldryne in kepyng /Aurilambros and /Vter þurch ordynaunce¹⁵
of Gosselyñ bysshop of london durst nat dwell in þat londe
wyt þe chyldryne but had hyme to þe kyng of /lityll breteyne
And for as muche as they knewe¹⁶ well þe tresoun of
wortiger þat þer was mad kyng þurch whom /Constance her
brether was slayne wher for þe hundrird knyztys wer pott to
deth and bar all þe blame as þouze /wortiger had nott wost
þer of ne þer to consent And he was cause of all And so the
keper of they ij chyldryne dredyn lest /wortiger¹⁷ wold put
hym to dethe and bar all þe blame And þe Reseyuyd hym wyt
muche honour and Ressayuyd hym worthely and þer þey
dwelllyne tell þey be come Rych¹⁸ knyztys and strong and
fersse And thouth euyr to be Awengyd of þe deth of (fol.
32^a) constance his broþyr wen þey see her tyme And so þey
dyd and 3e shull her aftyrward /It was not long aftyr ward
þat tydyngis come to þe¹ kynred of þe C knyztys [of]² þayt³
þat wer dampnyd and put to dethe þourh /wortiger in þis
lond and þer wer they wondyrly wroth and swor þey wyll be
Aweng for theyr kynnys dethe and come in to þis lond wyt A
grett poure and Robbyd many plasys and slovyne⁴ and dedene
all þe harme þat þey⁵ mythe /when wortiger wist he mad much
Sorrow and sorr was trobelyd And in a nothyr parte also
tydyng come to hyme þat /Arylambors⁶ 7 /Vtyr his brothyr
was come⁷

¹⁵Vertical line separates þurch from ordynaunce. ¹⁶-n-
inserted above; caret in text. ¹⁷Superscript -r- over tear
in vellum extending to foot of page. ¹⁸Altered by corr.
from such. Fol. 32 ¹Inserted above by (?) corr.; caret
in text. ²Erased. ³Stroked out. ⁴-y- from -u- by corr.
⁵-y by corr. above; caret in text. ⁶Third minim of -m-
inserted above, ⁷was come inserted above by corr.; caret
in text.

in to this lande to avenge the deth of Constance hir
brothir so that in oon half and in othir he was sore
annoyed and wiste nouht what to done ne wheper for to
wende.

How Engist come in to this londe to kyng vrtiger and with
hyme xj Mⁱ sodenlich and how vrtiger sente after heme 7
3af heme aplace that es called Towncastel^c Capitulo lvj^o

And in al the sorwe 7 angwyssh that vrtiger was in there
come an howge company be watre in chippes of straunge
folke 7 arrived in the countre of kent And whann vrtiger
wiste nouht what bei were ne whens thei comen no wheder
bei scholde the kyng sente to hime amessenger 7 preide
that the messenger of heme scholde come and speke with
hyme for hee (fol. 17^ba) wolde witte what folke bei were
and what they wolde and in to what contrey bei thouthte
to wende And al so ther were of heme twoo brepen^d
maistres and princes that oon me called Engist and that
other horn but Engist wente to the kyng and seide to hym
the cause wherfor they comen 7 ariveden in his lande Sire
quop he we ben of a countre that es called Saxsoun pat es
the lande of Germyne and in pat land es so moche sorwe 7
woo if thee peple wexe and encrese so that thee londe may
nouht susteyne heme and mayntene thane schulle the princes
pat haven the lordchip and the lorde to mayntene and
gouverne schal do come be fore heme both of men and women
the boldest 7 the hardiest pat mowe best fighte 7
travaille for to wende in to diuerse contrees and than
men schulle fynde heme hoors and harneys And ale maner
thing that heme nedith 7 pann the lordes schullen saye
vn to heme in this maner wisse Now frendes go 3e and gette
3ou land in othir countre that 3e mow live vp on as 3oure
auncestres haue don be for 3ou And ther fore Sir kyng if
3e have eny thing to do with oure cumpanye that bene come

and one euyry syd he was full of werr and of sorrow þat he
west neuyr for to doo

Howe Engist wyt xj Mll men come in to þis londe 7 wortiger
gafe hym a plase þat was callid twongcastell

And sone aftyr þis Sorow tydyng come to /wortiger/ þat a
gret pepyll of strengers wer A reuyd in þe contre of kent
but he wyst not of whens þey wer ne fro wens they come ne
wer for they come The kyng A none sent dedyr a messanger
þat sum of hem shuld com And speke wyt hyme to wyte whatt⁸
folke þey wer and wat þey wold haue and in to wat Cuntre
þey wold goo Ther wer ij prync3 bretheryñ and mastrys of
þe strong company the tonne was callyd /Engest and þe topir
/Horne /Engyst went to þe kyng and told hym what was þe
cawsse þat þey wer Arywyd in his lond And sayd syr we har
of A cotre^a (fol. 32^b) þat ys callyd /Saxsone þat ys in
lond of /Germayñ wher yn ys so much sorrow for ther be So
muche pepyll þer in that lond may not suffyce hem ne
suffeyr princes and þe lordys þat hath þe lond in gouernance
be lave-~~And-eesteñ-of-the-same-lond-in-gouernaunce-be-law~~³
And costum of þe Same lond shuld mak come be for hyme þe
beggyst meñ and the bouldyst in fythe þat bene a mong hem
þat best may trawell and hym self defende in euyry plasse
And þey shall 3eff hym hors and harnes and armoyur and all
thyng that hym nedyth and aftyr ward þey mad A byd þer as
þer Elders dyd be forne hym /And ther for syr kyng 3ef 3e
ou3t to doo wyth⁹ our company we be come

⁸wh- by corr., partly over erasure. ⁹-h added by corr.

in to 3oure lond and wee schulle helpe 3ou gladly and serve and kepe 3our lond fro enemyes. And whane vortiger herde these wordes he was glade and seide that he wolde heme with holde with good will 7 vp on this couenaunt If that theye myghte delivere and keppe his land (fol. 17^b) fro enemyes and thane he wolde 3efe hem resonable^e landes that thei might dwelle vp on. fro evir more And Engist thanked heme curteisly and in this manere he and his companye.xj M⁺ mene scholde dwelle with vortiger And soo manli Engist and his company dede pat bei deliuered the land clenlich of his enemyes. Tho preide Engist kyng vrtiger pat he wolde graunt hym as much as hee myghte make a fair town so that he 7 his folke myghte dwelle ther Ine. Thee kyng vrtiger answerde and seide pat he wolde nouht graunte hit with owten consell of Brittones. Engist praide hym a 3eine of as mich lande as he myght be clippe^f with a thong of askyn^g. that he myghte make a dwellyng for hym. and for his peple And so moche londe the kyng graunted hyme with a good wille tho nome Engist a bool skyn and kutte hit as smale as he myghte in to a lange thwang allabowte and ther with he compassedde as moche lande as he made ther vpon a fair town and a Castel And whane he hade y made the Castel he lett hit be called Towncastel ffor enchesson pat pe Castel was compassed with a thwonge.

Of Ronewenne that was Engistes douhter And how kyng vortiger spoused here for here ffeyrnesse. Capitulo lvij.^o

And whann this Castel was al made and well apparaylde. Engist sente previli be letter in to the Citte and Contre from whens he come after an C schippes wel appairedlde^h ful of men of Armes pat were bolde men and douhty that durste abide in every bataille And pat thei scholde

to 3our lond And wyt good wyll wee wyll 3ou Serve¹⁰ and
 help to kepe 7 defend 3our lond from 3our Aduerserry 3if
 yt nethid Whene wortiger hard this tydyngys he sayd he
 wold gladly wyt hold hem wyt hym vndyr such counant pat
 pey my3t delyuer[d]² pis lond of his Enmeys he wold 3eff
 hym sertyn londis wer pey shull delle^b for euyr mor
/Engest thangyd hym goodly and in pis maner he and his
 company A xj thowsand men shuld dwell wyt hyme and so much
 pey ded poru her boldnes and manhad pat pey delyuer be
 lond clene of his enmys Thene sayd¹¹ /Engest askyd¹² be
 kyng of So much lond pat mythe make a Cyte to hyme and to
 his company The kyng Answerd yt was (fol. 33^a) nott for
 to done wyt out concell of his bretons /Engest¹ prayd hym
 pane eft sonys wyt as much lond as he my3th compase² with
 a³ thong of A skyne wher vppon he mythe make hym a maner
 for hym and for hys [...] ⁴ men to dwell vppon /be kyng
 grauntyd hym fryly Then tok Engest¹ a bolles Skyne and
 cut⁵ ytt as small [...] ⁶ As he coud all in to A Rondell^{5a}
 // and ther vppon he compassyd as much lond as he mad a
 fayr Castell And when his castell was made he lett callyd
 twongcastell for as mucche as the plasse was markyd wyt a
 Thong

//Of Twongcastell and of Roneven pat bade be kyng drink
 wasshaill

When this Castyll was made and full well a Reyd /Engyst
 preuely sent be lettyr in to be contre pat he come out⁷
 after an C Shippis fylyd wyt strong men pat wer bold and
 my3ty in all batayllys and they shull

¹⁰-rv- by corr. over orig. letters. ¹¹Stroked out. ¹²By
 corr. in right margin with caret; caret in text. Fol. 33
¹-st by corr. over -s. ²-e by corr. over erasure. ³-h a
 by corr. over erasure. ⁴Erasure. ⁵By corr. over erasure.
⁶Letter erased. ⁷Inserted above by corr.; caret in text.

brynge with heme Rodewyneⁱ his douhter the feirest
 criature þat (fol. 18^a) onyman wiste on lyve. And whane
 alle the peple was comen that he sente after he welcomed
 heme and browht hem to his Castel that he hade made with
 moch Ioye and blysse. And vp on a day he wente hyme selfe
 vn to kyng vrtiger and prayde hyme þat he wolde come see
 the new habitacioun þat he hade y made in the place þat
 hee hadde compased with the skyn of a boolle. The kyng
 vortiger graunted hym with goode will and wente þedir
 with hym. And he was glade and well apaide with the
 Castell and with the nobil werke that don was in the
 Castel and there thei etten and dranken with moch ioy and
 merthe And whann hit was nyght that the kyng scholde goo
 to his Chamber to take his reste Rodewynne Engistes
 douhter come with a kuppe of golde ful of goode wyne
 bryngyng in here hande and knellyng vp on her knees
 saide vn to the kyng wassayll^a Ande the kyng wiste not
 what hit es to mene no what answere he scholde 3eue for
 encheson that hym selfe no non of his Brittones cowde
 that tyme vnderstond non Englyssh no speke but spake that
 tyme the same langage that Brittones doon in to this tyme.
 And natheles a well langaged man^b sayde vn to the kynge al
 what hit was to mene ? to vndir stonde. And that was the
 firste tyme þat wassaylle and drynke haille come in to
 this lande and froo that tyme into this tyme hit hath beⁿ
 well vsed. Tho kyng vortiger saw the feirnesse of þe woman
 and a none he clipped herr in his armes. and thries kyste
 þe damyselle and anone he was anamered vp (fol. 18^b) on
 the damiselle and desired to have here^c and axede of
 Engist her fadir And engist grauntid hym here vp on this
 couenaunt þat the kyng scholde 3eue her all thee countre
 of kent. that hym self and his peple myghte dwelle vp on
 the kynge prīuilech grauntide with ful good wille And anon
 after he spoused her the damyselle that be come hyme moch
 sorw and disesse and therefore the brittouns were alle

bryng wyt hyme /Ronewyne his douȝtyr þat was þe fayrsyst
 creatur þat ony mañ myth See And wen þe pepyll was come
 þat he sent aftyr he toke hem in þe castell wyt mucche yoi
 And hym Self vppon A day went to þe kyng and prayd hym þat
 he woold come A Reme^b and see his castell þat he had mad in
 the plasse wher he had compasyd wyt þe thong of þe Skyne
 The kyng Anon grawntyd hym frely and went wyt hym tethyr and
 was plesyd wyt þe castell and wyt þe fayr worke (fol. 33^b)
 and ther þey Etyne and drenkyne⁸ to gyddyr wyt mucche Ioy And
 hym self vppon A day/⁹ And wene nyȝthe come þat þe kyng
 shuld goo in to his Chamber for to take his rest /Ronewyn/
 þat was Engystys douȝtyr cam wyt A copp A gold in her hond
 and knelyd by for the kyng and sayd to hym /wasseyll/ þat
 þe kyng west nott watt yt menythe ne wat how he shuld
 Answer for as much¹⁰ as hym self ne none of bretons ȝit þat
 tyme coud men¹¹ noon Englisshe neþyr to speke yt ne to
 vndyr stondyt yt but spekyñ þe same langgage þat Brutus ȝit
 spekyñ But nedyrles a latener^c told þe kyng a full vndyrstondyng
 ther of¹² washail And þe toþer shuld Answer /Drynke hayl and
 þat was þe fyrst tyme to þis tyme þat wasshell and drynke
 heyll com vp in to þis lond And from þat tyme to þis tyme
 hit hathe ben wel hewsyd And þe kyng /wortyger when he saw
 þe grett feyr beaute of /Rone-wenne¹³ a none he kyst his
 harmes a bout her neke and iij tymys he kest her swetly and
 sodenly he was so Anambyrd vppon her þat he desyrd to haue
 her to his wyff and axith of Engest her fadyr wedyr þat he
 wold consent þer to And Engyst graunt hym A none oppon þis
 counand þat þe kyng shuld ȝeld hyme all þe contre of kent þat
 he mythe dwell in and all his pepyll þe kyng grauntyd hym
 preuely wyt good wyll And A noone aftyr þe kyng weddyd de
 damesell and þat was mucche (fol. 34^a) confecioun^a to hym
 self for all þe bretons wexid

⁸-e- from -o- by corr. ⁹Six dots above And hym self vppon;
 stroke after day prob. indicates expunction of whole phrase.
¹⁰MS. has 6 minims for mu-. ¹¹Stroked out. ¹²Inserted
 above by corr. ¹³Curl of -e- extended to form stroke.

wondir wroth with the kyng for enchesoun that he hade spoused a woman of mysbeleve and therfor thei drewen alle fro hym and were no thing to hym entendaunt and wolde vnnethis helpe hym that he hade for to don

How Vortiger^d that was the sonne of vortiger was made kyng And Engist dreven owt of this land and how kyng vortiger was quelled thourgh Rodewynne Capitulo lviiij^o

And this Engist went poo in to kent and sessed al þe countre into his hand for hym and for his men and he be come in altil terme aman of so houghe pouere þat wondir hit was to witte And so men wistener^e in litil terme which wer the knyghtes men. ne which wer hys 7 þerfor al Brittainne hade drede of hym and seide amonges heme but thei ordeynede and toke amonges hem better counsel the land scholde bee distroied þorugh Engist and his folke And kyng vortiger hade gette of his ferst wyf iiij. sonnes the ferst men called vortiger the seconde Catagren. and th þridde passent thee Brettons poo euerichon be on assent (fol. 18^ba) nome 7 chosen vortiger to ben her kyng and her souereyn in alle batailles and crowned and made hym kyng and wolde soffre vortiger his fadir no lenger to be kyng for enchesoun of the aliaunce be twen hym and Engist the Brettons wente and assemblede an howge hooste to putte out of þe lande Engist and his companye and come and 3afe hym. iiij batailles the first was in kent ther that he was lorde the seconde was att Tetforth and the iiij was in a schir a this halfe Cool in a more and in this bataill mette to gyderes Catagren and horn that was Engistes brothir soo eyther of heme quelled other for enchesoun that the countre was longe tyme be forñ 3even to horne þoruh kyng vortiger whann he spousede his cosyn. And this horn hade made ther affeir Castell that was called horn. castell aftir his owne name.

wondyr wrothe toward hym be cause he had wedded A womaⁿ of
mysbeleue wher for pay went all way from hym and tok none kepe
of¹ hym ne nothir² help hem in thyngys pat he³ had to done

Howe wortimer pat was wortigers sone was made kyng 7 Engist
dryuen out of bis londe

This /Engest went in to kente and feffyd^b all þe lond in to
his hond for hym And for his mene and be com of So lytill wyll
of So grett pour and of So moche por pat men west nat in
litill tyme weche were⁴ þe kyngys meⁿ And wyche wer /Engystys
meⁿ wherfor all þe bretons wer of hym A dred and sayd a
mongys heme but 3eff þey toke counsell amongys hem and make
bettyr⁵ hordinauns pat all þe lond shuld be by trayd by
/Engyst and his pepyll /Wortyger þe kyng had be gotton vppon
vpp⁶ his fyrst wyff iij Sonn3 The fyrst was callyd /wortimer/
the second /Catagreⁿ/ and the bird /passant/ The Brut3 by one
Asente chose wortymer b^c to be her lord and⁷ har Souereyne
and her consellour in heuyry batayll and Croune hyme and mad
hym kyng And put downe /wortiger his fadyr and wold nott
souffyr hym no lenger to Regne be cause of þe lyaune⁸ by
twene hem and Engyst þe brutons hordynyde hyme A grett ost to
dryve /Engyst and his Company out of þe lond and 3eff hem iij
batayllys The fyrst was in kente þer as he was lord a bowte⁹
þe blake hethe as sum bokys sayne wher or many grett
buryellys 3ett in to bis day sayne⁶ ys shewe^d /The second
bateyll was at Tetford¹⁰ /þe bird was in the Schyr of Dyshalf^e
And in this bateyll þey mettyⁿ (fol. 34^b) frescly to gyddyr
/Catagroⁿ kyng wortimers brother and horne Engyst brothyr and
so eythyr of them slow othyr But for as much as that Cuntre
was long aforne 3ewyn to horn wortimers fadyr when he had
spousyd Ronewyn hornes brothrys dou3tyr þer he had mad a
fayr castell pat was hornecastell aftyr his owne name /

Fol. 34 1Inserted by corr.; caret in text. 2-ir by corr.
above; caret in text. 3Inserted above by corr. 4-re by
corr. (?) over erasure. 5-r by corr. above; caret in text.
6Stroked out. 7By corr. over erasure. 8-e by corr. over
two erased letters. 9a bowte by corr. over erasure.
10T- from Q- by corr.

Ande vortimer¹ was ther fore sorwfull and so wroth for
 catagren his brothers deth þat in swech a maner that he
 was quelled and an noñ he lette caste downe the grounde^f
 And afterwarde he ne lefte be nyghte nor day til that
 Engist and his pepple clenlich was dreven owt of þis lande
 And whann Engist was driven a wey owt of this londe Ronwyn.
 hys douhte was sorwfulle y nowgh and qweyntly and soteilly
 spake with heme þat were nexte the kyng vortiger 7 with
 hyme most priuee and sweche zeftes to heme. 3af til ate
 laste he was empoisonde and ded at london in the iiij 3er
 of his regne and þere he lieth.

How the Bryttones chosen a nother tyme vortiger to be her
 kyng and Engist come a 3ein in to his land and þo ffouhten
 thei in fere Capitulo lix^o

(fol. 18^b) And whane vortiger was thus enpoisonde and deed
 the Brittouns a3en by her councel and grauntyd 7 made
 vortiger eftsones kyng vp on this couenaunt that he scholde
 nevir suffre that tyme no non of his^g eftsonis to come in
 to this lond And whann al was doñ Ronvyn the quen priuyllich
 sent to Engist her fadir by letter that sche hade en
 poisonde vrtimer the kyng and how vrtiger her lorde was
 made kyng a 3ein and that he scholde come a 3en in to
 this londe wel arrayed with his peple to venge hym vp on
 the Brittons and manlich gette his lande a 3ene. And
 whann Engist herde this tyding he was glad and made ioie
 y nowh And a non ordeyned hym in al that he myghte to
 come in to this lande with xv M¹ men dowhti ande bolde
 to abide in everi battayle. And whan vrtiger wiste that
 Engist was comen a 3ene with astrong pouer he sembled alle
 his Brittones and manlich come to 3ife bataille to Engist
 and to his folke but Engist was sore adrad for to fighte
 with the Brittons for en chesoun that they hade disconfitede

And kyng wortimer when he wist he was so wood vroth for his
 broþers' deth Categrine wherfor anone in all angyr he lett
 brek done þe castellys to grond And aftyr he neuyr sessyd
 th^f tyll he had dryvyne out of þis lond Engest and All his
 peppyll And when Engust was thus dyscomfyd and fled Ronewyn
 his douȝtyr mad sorow I noȝe and queynly 7 slyly so spoke to
 hyme þat wer nyȝe þe kyng wortimer 7 most preuy wyt hyme And
 ȝaff hyme so grett medd þat he was powsynyd and dede 7 lyth⁷
 at london þe iiij yer¹ of his regn

Howe þe Britons chosen a nobir tyme þe Bretons to be here
 kyng 7 Engist come to þis londe

Aftyr wortimers deth de bretons by her comen A Sent schesyn
 þe ij tyme /wortiger her kyng vppoñ this couenaun[...]¹¹ þat
 he shuld neuyr haftyр suffer Engest ne none of his Eftsonys
 come in to þis lond And whene all þis was done¹ Ronewyn þe
 Quene sent preuyly be lettyr to Engest her fadyр þat sche
 had in powsenyd the kyng wortimer and that wertyger her lord
 was Crownyd kyng aȝene and Reignyd and þat he shuld come
 aȝen to þis lond well A Rayd wyt much pepyll for to weng hym
 vppoñ þe bretons and to wene his lond Aȝene¹² (fol. 35^a) Of
 this dydingys /Engest mad grett Ioy 7 apparlad hym hastely
 wyt xv þowsand men þat wer myȝty men in batayll When
 /wortiger hard tell þat Engest was come Aȝen wyt a grett
 pepyll in to this lond he Assemplyd his bretons And went a
 ȝene Engest for to ȝeff hyme batayll and his folke /But
Engest dred hym Sore of þe bretons for as much as they had
 scomffyt

¹¹Two letters blotted and illegible. ¹²Followed by
 flourish.

hym be fore and dreven heme owt of the lond with strength
 And tho prayde Engist kynge vrtiger of loueday and saide
 that he was nouht come in to this lande for to fighte but
 thei myghte accorde with the Brittones and have grace.
 And the kyng tho by councel of his Brittones graunted
 aloueday thus hit was ordeyned amonges heme that the
 loueday scholde be holden by sides Salesburi vp on an
 hille. And Engist scholde come with CCCC knyghtes with
 owt no mo And kyngee (fol. 19^a) vrtiger with as meny of
 the wiseste knyghtes of the land And at the same day that
 was sette and ordeyned the kyng come with his counsell
 But Engist hade warned 7 comaundid priuilych that eche
 of hem scholde putte a longe knyfe in his hose so that no
 man hit scholde perceyve but heme self And whann Engist
 seide feir sires nowe hit es tyme to speke of loue day
 And of acorde anon scholde eche of his mene draw owte his
 knyfe and quelle a britton and so thei deede an quelled
 pere iij.M⁺ and lx.kyghtes^a and with moche payne summe
 aschapide in her wey and kyng vortiger was taken there
 and lede to Thwong castel.and put in to prisone and somme
 of Engistes men wolde pat the kynge hade be brent And
 vortiger graunt hym so that muste^b have his lyf as moch
 as thei wolde axen.and 3af vp to hyme townes 7 Chastelles.
 Burghes and Cittes to Engist 7 made his men.and poo flehy^c
 alle the Brittones in to wales and pere helde heme And
 Engist wente po pourh the land and seised poo al the land
 in his hande and poo lett caste a downe cherchs and alle
 the howses of religioun and distroiede cristendome thourgh
 the land in al that he myghte. And lett chaunge the name
 of the lande So than no man after was soo hardy to calle
 hit brettaigne but Engistes londe and he departed alle
 the londe to his men and made knyghtes vij.for to mayntene
 7 kepe thee londe for en chesoun that the britaynes scholde
 nevir aftir come to dwelle in pis londe. The firste
 kyngdome pat was kent ther that Engist hyme selfe was

hym be for And drywyn̄ hym out wyt strenthe werfor /Engyst of
 A love day /And sykryly he was nott come in to þis lond for
 to fythe but 3e he myzt haue hys lond a 3eyne of kent yf he
 myth a cord wyt þe bretons and of hem hawe grace /The kyng
wortiger þour consell of þe bretons grauntyd A love day shuld
 be hold be seyð salysbery oppoñ an hyll and Engyst shuld come
 þethyr wyt iij C¹ knyths wyt out any moo And þe kyng wyt as
 mayne of þe wyssest of þe lond /And at þe day Asseynd þe
 kyng and his counsell come as hit was hordeynyd /But Engesse
 had warnyd all his meñ preuyly and Comandyd hem þat Eche of
 theme shuld put A long knyff in his hosse And when he sayd to
 heme fayrs syrrys now yt ys tyme to speke of love and pesse
 euyry mañ þer² wyt þat³ shuld draw hys knyff and sle þe
 bretons and so þay kyllyd all þe kyngys mene that wer ther
 And so forthe þey went tell þey com and þey kyllyd xxx M¹ lvj
 knyȝtys and her meñ in nombyr wyt oute [m]any⁴ þat schapyd a
 way wyt much sorrow And kyng /wortiger hym self was take And
 led to theng⁵ thong⁶ castell and put into presoun And sum of
Engystys meñ wold þat the kyng had be brente all quyke And
 thene /wortiger (fol. 35^b) to haue his lyffe grauntyd hyme
 as much as they wold axe and 3aff vp all þe londe Towns
 Citte castellys and borrowys to Engest⁷ and to his folke and
 all þe bretons fled thens in to camber þat now callyd walys
 and ther held hym styll And Engest went þourh⁸ þe lond and
 sesyd all þe lond wyt all þe fraunchesys⁹ in to hys hond¹⁰
 And euyry plasse þat he come by he cast done Chyrchys and
 howsys of Relygioun and dystroyd Crystendom purch out þe
 lond and to change þe name of this lond þat nomañ of hes
 wer so hardy to callyt bretayne but callyd Engest lond and
 he de part all his lond to his meñ and mad þer in vij
 kyngys for to strenth de lond þat þe bretons shull nevyr
 come ther þe fyrst kyngdom þer of was kente þer as Engys
 hym Self Rignyd and was

Fol. 35 ¹Inserted above; caret in text. ²MS. orig. p^t.
³Inserted above by corr. ⁴m- erased. ⁵Stroked out; -h-
 by corr. above with caret in text. ⁶By corr. in right
 margin with caret; stroke in text. ⁷n abbreviation-mark
 added by corr. ⁸-h added by corr. ⁹MS. has 3 minims for
 -un-. ¹⁰h- from l- by corr.

kyng and lorde a boue alle othir knyghtes (fol. 19^ab) The
seconde knyght he hade Southsex̄ per þat now es chestre
 the iiij knyght hadde westsex̄ the iiij. hade Estsex̄ the v
 est angylle that now es Called Northfolke Suthfolke Merc
 hemerich^d that es now þe Eerldom of Nicholl the vj kyng
 hade leycestre cheyre Northhamptoun hertforde and
 huntyndgtoun the vij hadde oxenforde Glowcester wynchester
 warwik and derbi schiere

Howe Vortiger wente in to Walles and bi gañ ther a Castel
 that myght nowth stonde with owtene mannys blood to temper
 þe mortar Capitulo lx^o

Whane Engist hade departed al thee londe in this maner
 vn to his wyse men he brouhte the vortiger^e out of prisoun̄
 and lette hym goon whther^f þat he wolde And þo nome he his
 wey and wente to ward walis ther that his Brittones
 dwelled for encheson þat þe lond was strong and wikked
 to wyne And Engist hadde nvir^{lg} ben there and knew nouhte
 the Ther dwellyng vortiger^h thoo among his Brittones and
 axed of heme councel what was best to done and thei
 councelled hym to mak astrong castell that myghte if hit
 were nedee to kepe hyme and his peple and masones werre
 fett and brouht vn to hym and bygonne to make the werke
 vp on the hille of Breigh And thus hit be fill of that
 werke for all the masons wrouhte a day it fill doune at
 nyght And hit fill iiij tymes or iiij. and there of they
 hade moch wondir how and what thing hit myghte be that
 hit fyll so a doune And the kyng hym selfe was ther ofe
 soor anoyed of that aventur and wiste nouht what was
 best to done wherfore he lete sende after þe (fol. 19^ba)
 wissest Clerkes tha were in all wallis 7 al so after the
 wissest men of alle the land where that thei myghte be

lord and mastyr of all þat opyr Anothyr kyng had souchhex
 wher now ys chester The þyrd had wessex The iiij had Essex
 The v had Estangle þat ys now callyd northfolke and
 Sowthfolke Marche þat now ys to say the Erldome of Nycolle
 The vj had lycestret scher Northamtoun hareford¹¹ schyr and
 huntytoun The vij had Oxinford Glowcester wencestre werweke
 and derby schyr

Howe wortiger went into walis 7 be gan there a castell þat
 wold nat stonde wyt out mannys blode

When /Engyst had part þis lond in this maner by twene his
 meñ he delyidd^a wortiger owt of presoun and sufferd hym
 fryly to go¹² wher he wold and he toke his way in to walys
 þer as hys bretons dwellyd for as much as þat lond was
 strong and wyccyd for to wyne And Engest come neuyr ther ne
 knew yt neuyr A for And wertyger held hyme þer wyt hys
 bretons and haxid hyme consell (fol. 36^a) what was best to
 doo And þey gaf hyme counsell to mak a strong castell þat
 he myth þer kep hem selfe and defend 3ef nedd wer Masons a
 none þan wer fett and be werke^a a none oppoñ an hill of
 Brithwet Certys so it be fyll þat all þe werke þat þe
 masons mad on þe day yt fyll done at nyte¹ And so þey wer
 serwyd iiij or iiiij tymys wherfor þey haddone gret wondyr and
 watt was þe cause Wher for þe kyng was sor anoyde and wyst
 nott for to doo wher for he lett send aftyr þe wyssyst mane
 þat wer namyd meñ of Clarge and wysse and wytty þorw out
 all walys bothe leryd and lewd and bad hym went be

¹¹-e- from -d- by corr. ¹²Inserted above by corr.; caret
 in text. Fol. 36 ¹-e by corr. over erased -h.

founden̄ ffor þei scholde telle hym wherfore the fundament
of that werke so hym faillede and þat þei scholde telle
hyme what was best to done. whane clerkes hade I stand 7
long tyme be thouthe heme they sayde that he scholde do
seche a childe boren of a woman̄ that nevir hade with man
to done ande þat childe he scholde quelle and tempere the
morter wthⁱ that childes blood and þane scholde that werke
stande and laste wiþ owten ende.

Howe the kyng comaundide to sech swech a schilde. if eny
myghte bee founden thoruh all walles. and brynge that
childe to speke with hym. Capitulo lxj^o

And whan the kyng herde al this comaunded^j his messenger
to wende þoruh al wales in length and in breede to seche
swech a clylde^k. yf enye myghte be founden and if they
myghte fynde any swech schild that they scholde brynge
hym with owten any lette and in wittenesse of this thing
he toke hym̄ his letter and enselled hit^l that no man
scholde lette hym of that nede thee messangeres wente 7
passed forthe til þat thei come til a[t]² towne. þat men
callede kermerdyn and as they wente in here way they
founden ij. children of xiiij 3er aage stande 7 chide^m
to gyder and soo on seide to the toper for soth 3e dooep
gret wrong to schide or stryve with me ffor 3e haue no
wit no konne no ressoun̄ a 3ens me to Chidee. Now certes
merlyn. quod that opir of þi witt and kunnyng y sete at
no forceⁿ ffor men telleþ comunly that þou haste no thing
of good seth þat þou hasted^o ne (fol. 19^b) ver man to
thi fadir but alle men know ful welle who es th modir
the messangeres whane they herde the stryfe bee twen thoo
ij. children thei axede of men that stode abowte heme wher
that child merlyn. was boren and Norisshe And þat puple

² t removed by scribe, prob. by blotting letter while ink
was wet, as no scraping is discernible.

all her wyttys wat was þe cawse þat þe fondment faylyd vndyr
 þe werke and ther tell hym wat wer best to doo þer to And
 when þes wysse men had long long^b stodyid þey concell þe
~~chylde~~² kyng þat shuld seke A chyld þat was³ borne of A
 womaⁿ þat neuyr had to doo wyt mane and þat schyld he
 shuld sle and tempyr þe morter wyt þe blod of þe chyld And
 so shull þe werke⁴ stond profitly^c and Endewr long I now3e

Howe þe kyng lete seke Merlynⁿ purh walis

When the kyng wist þat he comandyd his messenger to wend
 þour out all walys to seke such A chyld 3if þey my3t fynd
 hyme and þat þey shuld bryng hyme to hyme all thyng to lest
 3eff he my3th be fond and he to toke hym to wyttnes her
 lettyr and her Selle þat shuld be lett for no maⁿ And at þe
 last þes messenger com to A towne þat was callyd Carmardenⁿ
 and as þey passyd forthe þeir way fond ij Chyldrene of
 xiiij 3er of age chydyng to gyddyr wyt hasty wordys and
 tone of heme sayd to þe tothyr debatte 3ew nat no stryve
 3ew nat wyt me for I sett nott by thy chydyng and þou
 shull do me no wrong fer þu hast neþyr (fol. 36^b) vyt ne
 reson for all meⁿ sayne þat þu hart not A goddys half for
 þou hadys neuyr fadyr but all þe contre knowyt well who
 ys þi modyr The kyngis messenger when þey hard þis stryff
 by twene heme þay axed of meⁿ þat stond by syd ~~////~~ where⁵
~~/Merlyne~~ was ~~wer-he-was~~² borne and he^{6d} norysshe hyme and
 þe pepyll

²Stroked out. ³By corr. in margin with caret; caret in text. ⁴-r- inserted above. ⁵By corr. over erasure.
⁶-e from -o by corr.

that stood abowte hyme seide that a grette gentyl woman
 bar hym in kermerdyn. that me called Adhan. but men wiste
 neuer who myght be the childe's fadir And whenne the
 messangers herde this tyding a non thei wente to hym þat
 was wardeyn of the towne And schewed hym the kynges
letter and his seal for what thyng they wer come Merelyn
 and his modir a none were sent to come be fore the warden
 of the Towne And the wardeyn comaunded hem both to goo
 withe heme to the kyng as he hade comaunded by hys letter
 Merelyn and his modir wente forth vn to the kyng And were
 vndirfonged with mekel honour The kyng axede of the lady
 yf that schildee wer her sone and whoo be gate hym. The
 lady ful sore weppying answerde to the kyng and sayde
 that neuer sche hadde to do with wordly^p manus companye
 but Sire whan y was a 3ong damyselle a mayden.⁷ was my^q
 faderes Chaumbre and many othir grette ladies wer al so
 in my companye that ofte tymes wer wont to go pleye and
 solace heme ofte tymes. And I lefte allone in my Chamber
 and wolde nouhte go owt for brennyng of the sunne ther
 come vp on a tyme a fair bacheler in my Chamber as I was
 a lone y wiste nevir whene he comee no in what manere for
 the dore werr stronglich barred and he pleyde with me
 game of loue^r for I hadde no myght noo strengthe hyme to
 with stonde and ofte (fol. 20^a) tymes he come to me. and
 dede in the same manere. so that he be gate þis childe on
 me. and neuer y myghte witte of hyme. what he was ne whense
 hee come no what es name was y myght nevir witte

Of the answeere that Merlyn 3af the kyng that saide his
 werke myghte not stonde that he hade be gounne nor proue^a
Capitulo lxiij^o

Wwhane¹ merlyn hade herde what his modir hade spoken and

told hyme þat A gret Ientyll womaⁿ bar hyme in kermerdoⁿ þat
 men callyd /Adham but neu^yr maⁿ w^yst wat was þe fadyr Whene
 þe messenger herd thes tydyngys þey went A none to hyme þat
 was wardeⁿ of þe towne 7 told hyme the kyngys w^yll and
 shewd⁷ hyme þe kyngys lett^yr wher for he comeⁿ thydyr
 /Marlyⁿ and his mod^yr anoone wer sent for to com to þe⁸
 wardaⁿ of þe towne And he comandyd þat þey shull goo to þe
 kyng forth w^yt þe messenger /Merlyⁿ and hys mod^yr come to
 þe kyng and wher resayvid worthely And þe kyng Axid of þat
 lady wheþ^yr þat chyld wer her sone and ho be gatt hym The
 lady Answerd full tendyrly wepyng 7 swore⁹ þat she had neu^yr
 to do w^yt man bodely But syr quod sche as I was a 3ong mayd
 in my fadyrs schambre / and othyr of¹⁰ grett lynag wer þer
~~////////~~¹¹ went to play 7 to solase and thane I was lefte~~//~~
 in¹² my fadyrs Chambr^e and wold not go out for hett and
 brennyng of þe sone /And oppoⁿ Atyme þer come A fayr
 bacheler and Enteryd vnto my chamber þer as I was Alone but
 how he come to me I¹³ ne wist¹⁴ wyche way I ne w^yst¹⁵ neu^yr
 ne 3it ne wott for þe dorrys wer fast I barryd And w^yt me
 þer he ded gamys of love¹⁶ (fol. 37^a) for I had nethir pour
 ne myte¹ ~~//~~ to defend me fro hym And oft he come to me in þe
 same maner so that he² be gatt one me þis same child but
 neu^yr he y³ mythe Iwette⁴ of hym wat he was ne whens he
 come ne wa^{tt}⁵ what⁶ was his name

Of þe Answer of Merlyn to the kyng / askyng why the kyngis
 worke mythe nat stonde Capitulo

When /Merlyne had herd all þat his mothir had sayd

7-h- by corr. above; caret in text. 8 cō to þe by corr.
 over erasure. 9 By scribe above small erasure; caret in text.
 10 Inserted above. 11 Erasure. 12 I ... in by corr. over era-
 sure; vertical line separates in from my. 13 Inserted above
 by corr.; caret in text. 14 By corr. in left margin at begin-
 ning of line. 15 Vertical line separates ne from wyst.
 16 Catchword by scribe below; for I had neþ^yr Fol. 37 1-e
 by corr. over erased -h. 2 Inserted above by corr.; caret in
 text. 3 he stroked out; y inserted above by (?) scribe.
 4 w partially covers I-. 5 Stroked out. 6 -h- inserted above.

seide vn to the kyng he spake hym selfe vn to the kyng
 in this maner Sir hee saide who so me be gate axe 3e no
 more for hit perteynes nouht to 3ou no to no noper pat
 es lyvinge But tellep me enchesoun wherfore I am to 3ou
 comen and wher fore 3e sent aftir me. Ma foy my
 counseilleres have don me to vndirstonde pe mortar of a
 werke that y have don bygyne motte be tempered with thi
 blode or ellis the fundament schalle faille for euirmore.
 Sire quod Merlyn. wolde 3e quele me to haue my blod to
tempere with 3oure mortar 3ee quod the kyng or elles
 schal my Castel neuer stande as my counseilours han don
 me to vndirstande. Tho answerde merlyn to the kyng Sire
 doth come be fore me poo wisse counceillores and I wil
prove that thei seie nethir wel no treuthe The kyng a non
 comaunde^b hem to coome and whann thei were² I come Merlyn
 axede of heme If² his² blode scholde be cause for to make²
pe werke stande The maistres stooden al abasched and
 kouth not answerree. Merlyn said tho to the kyng Sire I
 schal telle 3ou encheson. whi this werk may nouhte stande
 Ther es vndir pe (fol. 20^ab) hille that 3e haue by gounne
 3our toure a grett water and in the bottem of pe ponde
 vndir the water ther bee ij dragones. that on his whitte
 and that other es reede and fighten to gyder a 3ens 3oure
 werke an doth myne til thei^c come to the ponde and thane
 doth caste owte all the water and thann 3e schull see
 that dragounes that fighte to gyderes a 3eyns 3our werke
 And this es enchesoun wherfore 3oure werk may nouht stande.
 The kyng lette myn the hill til thei come vn to the ponde
 7 ther thei fonden ij dragouns as merlyn seide that
 souhten³ Egerly to gyderre and the whitte dragoun sore
 assailedde the reed dragoun and sore drof hym fro place
 to place soo that he myght not endure. but hidde hym 7
 wente in to a cave and reste hyme And whann hee hade

²Extremely faint or faded. ³No cross-stroke through long s.

he spek to the kyng in this maner /Syr how I was be goot axe
 3e no mor for yt fallyd nott to 3ou ne to non othyr creatur
 to wytt but tell me þe cawse þat I ame brouthe to 3ou and
 why⁷ þat 3e haue send aftyr me to wytt /but tell me þe caws
 þat I ham brouzt to 3ou and why⁷ þat 3e haue send aftyr me
 /Certes quod the kyng my wysse consellours done me to
 vndyrstond þat þe mortar of a werke þat I haue be gone be
 houyd to be temperit wyt 3our blod or ells þe fownment woll
 neuyr stond /syr quod /merlyn wyll 3e sle me for my blod to
 tempyr wyt 3our mortar 3e seker quod þe kyng or ellis shall
 neuyr my castell stond as my conselours doone me to vndyr
 stond /Thane Answerd /Merlyn to þe kyng Syr lett þo concelers
 com Afor me and Iwoll preue þat þey say nott well þer of ne
 trewly⁸ And when thes wysse men com Afor hyme⁵ Merlyne /he
 axid 3if his blod wer cause to make þe kyngys werrke to
 stond 7 endur All þay wer Abassyd and cowd nott Answer
 Merlyn Than sayd Merlyn⁹ Syr I shall tell 3ou þe cause why⁷
 þat 3our werke þus faylith and may nott stond Sir ther vndyr
 þe mowntayne ther þat 3e had be gone 3our werke is² a gret
 ponde of watyr and in the botom¹⁰ of the pond vnther þe
 watyr ther beñ ij dragans the tonne ys Redd and the tothir
 ys wytt that¹¹ fithen to gyddyr Azens 3our werke lett mynd^a
 þe hyll depe tell 3e come to þe pound and lett doo Away the
 watyr all oute¹² And þene shall 3e se the dragons þat y¹³
 haue told 3ou þat fy3tyne to giddy azens your werke and þat
 ys þe cause sykyrly wherfor (fol. 37^b) the fondement faylyth
 The kyng Anone led dyg vnder þe hill tell þey com to þe pond
 and let done Away all þe watyr and ther þey fondythe ij
 dragones as /merlyn had told hyme þat egyrly fowthen to
 gyddyr þe wych wytt dragone egurly A Sayled þe Red dragoun
 and held hym So sore þat he my3t not Azens hem Endur but þr²
 wyt droff hyme in þe same Rau^b and restyd And whene þey had

7-h- by corr. above; caret in text. 8-ly by corr. above;
 caret in text. 9By corr. over erasure. 10MS. has 4 minims
 for -m. 11-t by corr. above; caret in text. 12-e added by
 corr. 13Inserted above by corr.

reste a while. he assailed thee whitt dragoun spetously
 And att the laste the whitt dragoun^d boot the reed
 dragoun wondir sorre so that he dourste nouht abidde but
 fley a whey 7 come a3ene no more.

Of the Significacioun of ij Dragonnes that to Gidder
 ffauhte in the botteme of the ponde Capitulo lxiiij^o

Whane kyng vortiger And his men sawe the battaille be
 twen poo twoo dragones. thei hade moch wondir what hit
 myghte be token Sire quod Merlyn. the redd dragoun be
 toknythe 3our selfe And the whitt dragoun bee tokneth the
 folke of Saxoun that fierst 3e vndirfonged and hadde in
 3our lond that now fithtes a 3ens 3ou. and droff 3ou owt
 of 3our lande But the britton (fol. 20^ba) nes. that benne
 of 3our lynage ouercome hem and drof hem owte of the
 lande a whille And afterwarde whan thei comen a 3ene thei
 gate this lond 7 helde hit for euer more. And dreven owt
 the brittounes owte of the lande and thede^e per with alle
 thing that heme likede And distroieden the cristen puple
 thoruh owte the londe. And firste 3e were glade of here
 comyng butt now 3e haue sorwe and harme ffor constances
 ij. bretheren that was kyng pat 3e lette quelle of an C
 knyghtes in his Chamber wrongfully schal come with Inne xv
 daies with an howge pouer from litel Brittainne and schulle
 avenge here brothires deth Constance that tretorsly ferste^f
 with mekel sorwe And after thei schulle slee an howge peple
 of Saxsounes and thane driven owt alle the remenant of
 the lande wherre they wille And I counseille 3ou that 3e
 dwelle here no lengere for to make this Castel nothir non
 othir werke. Butt goth to an othir contree to have 3our
 lyfe And to god I 3ou be take for I haue seide trewth of
 that pat schal be falle And al so y do 3ou to vndir stande
 that Aurilambros schal be kyng and schal be enpoisonde
 and schal bee kyng butt litel while

rested well he went A 3ene and oft A sayd þe Redd dragone
angyrly and bet¹⁴ hyme well and hym ouyr come and he fled
thens and com no mor Agayne

Of the significaciouns of þe to dragons þat fouzten to
gidir capitulo -

The kyng /wortiger and his men þat saw this batayll had
grett merwayll þer of and prayd /merlyne to tell hym wat It
my3th be tokenyd Syr quod merlyn I shall 3ou tell /The Red
dragan be tokenyd 3our self And þe wyte¹ dragons be tokenyd
þe folke of Saxane þat fyrst 3e toke and held hym in this
lond þat now fyztyn A 3ene 3ou and 3ou han dryuyne and
Chascyd in to þis Cuntre But the bretons þat ben in 3our
contre ovyrcom hem heme A wylle 7 sithen att þe last come
azen at Saxons 7 Recouere azen þe lond of brytayne and hold
yt 3it and woll for euyr mor and drywyn out þe bretons and
did wyt þat londe all her wyll and distoryd Crystyndom þour
þat lond 3e had forst Ioy of her comyng but now yt is tornyd
to 3ou to grett damage for tho ij bretheryn of Constans þat
wer kyng that 3e lett slee shull⁶ com wyt in xv dayis her
aftyr and wyt a gret powr fro lityl¹⁵ bretayne and they
shull a weng þem yet¹⁶ of her bredir And aftyr þey shull
brene 3ou fyrst wyt much sorrow aft⁵ and aftyr þay shall a
gret party of Saxons and þey shall dryue all þe remaunte¹⁷
out of the (fol. 38^a) lond And ther fore¹ A byd 3e her no
lengyr to mak non castell ne none opir werke but anone go
sum where els² to saue 3our selfe And god I 3ou be take ffor
I haue sayd 3ou þe treuthe of thingys a³ þat Shall fall in
hast And vndyrstond well þat Aurylambros shall be kyng / but
he shall be in powsonyd

¹⁴-e- by corr. from -a- or -u-; vertical line separates bet
from hyme. ¹⁵MS. has -y. ¹⁶y- from þ- by corr. ¹⁷MS. has
4 minims for -mn-. Fol. 38 ¹Inserted above by corr.; caret
in text. ²where by corr. over erasure; els by corr. above
with caret in text. ³By corr. in right margin at end of line.

Of kyng Aurilambros howe he pursewed vortiger for enchesoun
that he lette quelle Constance his Brothir Capitulo lxiiij^o

Merlyn and his modir⁴ þoo nome leve and wente froo the
kyng 7 tournede a 3ein to kermerdyn And tyding come sone
afterward vn to the Brittonnes that Aurilambros and vter
his brothir werr arived at Cottnesse^g with (fol. 20^b) an
howge hoste of the Brittones. And þe Brittons an none
assembled heme ande wente to vndirfonge heme with mekel
ioy and worchip and Brouhte heme to london with grett
reuerence and Crowned therre Aurilambros and made hym
kyng And to hym dede feawte 7 homage Tho Aurilambros^h
where vortiger the kyng myghte be founden for he wolde
be ferst avenged vp on his brothiris deth Constance þat
tretoirslyⁱ he lett quelle and aftirward he wolde werre
vp on the paynymes. And the Brittones tolde hyme þat
vortiger was in walles. And the Brettouns browhte heme
þedir The kyng vortiger wiste wel that þoo ij. bretheren
wer y comen to distroye hym and a none he fledde thens
and went in to a Castel that es called Geuerche^j that
stodd vp on anheygh mountaigne and þer helde hym
Aurilambros and vter his brothir and her peple be seged
the castel longe tyme But the Castel was wondir strong
and vitailled so that they myght nouht geten hit til at
the laste thei cast wilde fir^k 7 brente men 7 hous hors
and harneys and al thing that was in thee castel Soo they
lefte no thing on live 7 thus wortiger was brent And
merlyn tolde hyme be fore. And so he deide in mechel
sorwe. And that tyme Engist was in kente 7 was kyng ther
And whanne he herde this tyding he wolde have went in to
Scottlande to had^l help 7 socoure But Aurilambros 7 his
men mette with hyme in the North Cowntre And 3af hym
bataille and Engist 7 his mene defendded as longe as

⁴-ir faded.

Of the kyng Aurilambors how he porsewyd wortyger litvll
tyme and Engest and how bay deid /⁴

M /erlyn and his modyr departyd frome the kynge and tournyd
azene to kermerden And sone aftyr tydingys com to þe kyng
bretons þat Aurilambros ⁷ vter wer A Ryuyd att tottenes wyt
A gret oost And þe brutens went A non and assemlyd hem and
went to Reseve Aurilambros and Vter his brothyr wyt a gret
Solemnyte and leddeñ hem to london and crownyd Aurilambros
and mad hym kyng and ded to hyme homage And he axid wer
wortiger þat was kyng myȝt be fond for he wold be Awengyd
vppon his broþers dethe And aftyrward he wold be Awrokyd
and wer vppon paynems and þey told hyme þat /wortiger was
in walys and Soo þey led hym thedyrward wortiger wyst well
þat þo to ~~breþens~~⁵ bretheryñ come hym to conquer and fle⁶
thens to a castell þat was callyd Ernerth þat stod vppon A
moyntayne and ther kept hem in closse Aurilambors and vtyr⁷
his broþyr besegyð þe castell long tyme but þe castell was
so strong and so wel⁸ A Rayd þey myȝt do none harme and at
þe last þey cast vppon hem wyld feyr and brent vp house and
meñ and all her A Ray and as much as was in the Castell so
that wortiger was brent Amongys heme all and so deyð he wyt
much sorrowe as Merlyne sayd afor that he (fol. 38^b) shuld
/Then was Engyst in kent and had Reynyd but a ȝer and hard
this tydyng and fled and wold haue goo in to Scotlond for
to haue socur But Aurilambros and his men wentyn wyt hem
in the north Contre and gaff hym batayll But Engest and
his meñ defend hym as long as

⁴Chapter-heading in black by scribe. ⁵Stroked out. ⁶Cross-
bar added by corr. to long s-. ⁷v- from u- by corr. ⁸Hole
in vellum approx 4.5 x 3 mm.; writing round it.

they myghte butt hyme selfe 7 his folke was desconfyted and slayn̄ and Octa that was (fol. 21^a) Engistes sone fley to ward 3orke ande aurilambros egerly pursewed hyme 7 Octa the while that he myghte endure stood azens hyme but affterward he putte hym to his mercy Aurilambros and his mene nome hyme and graunted hym pees and to hys men and 3af hym the contrey of Galeweye in Scottlonde and and there thei dwellede The kyng Aurilambros wente poruh the lond and putt a downe the name of engistes londe þat Engist hade nempned after his owne name. And thoo comaundid Aurilambros to calle hit brittayne thee mochil And Aurilambros lett mak hitaciounes^a 7 cherchis 7 howses of Religioun and Castelles Cittes 7 bourghes and townes that the Saxsouns hade distoied and come to london̄ and lett make a3en̄ the walles of the Citte that Engist 7 his folke a hadde caste 7 lett adowne. The Brittounes nome 7 ladde hym to þe mounte aubrian^b and ther was sum tyme an hows of Religioun that was distroied thorgh paynnymes A knght^c was ffoundor of the hows that me called Aubri and therefore the hill es called aubrian that now es called ambresburi and schal be for euermore

Howe Aurilambros lette amende the lande of mechil Brittayn̄ that was loste and distroyede thourgh Saxsounes Capitulo lx^o quinto

The kyng a non thoo lett amende þe hows and putte ther Inne monkes and nowe ben ther Inne Nonnes thoo nome the brittones and browght kyng aurilambros a litel fro Salesbury þer ther that Engist 7 vortiger (fol. 21^ab) ben accorded and Engist þourgh tresoun quelled of the Brettounes xxx M^l And lxj. of goode knyghtes. And whann thee kyng herde this he hade a gret sorwe in his herte and thouth to make ther in remembraunce of heme that werre there slayne amonument of stoon þat myghte stonde and

thay mythe but þer þey wer slayne and so deyð Engest And
Octa his sone fled vn to yorke and Aurilambors followyd
 hym hym Egyrly Octa a litill wyll wyt stood hyme but
 aftyrward he submethym and to his grace And Aurilambors
 vndyrfong hym to mercy and to hym and to his grace And
Aurilambors men and 3af þe contre of Gallowey in Scotlond
 and ther þey dwellyd the kyng Aurilambros þane went þourh
 þe lond and put away þe name off Engyst [lond/g]⁹ that
 hyngyst aftyr his owne nam had mad call yt Afor tyme And
Aurilambros let call yt a 3ene gret Bretayne And lett make
 a3ene the templis and chyrchis 7 howsys castellys Cittees
 burhis 7 townys þat þe Saxons had dystroyd And so come to
 london and lett make a3ene the wall of þe Citte wich þat
 Engyst and his folk had rast downe The Bretons led hym
 thane th¹⁰ to þe mount Aubram¹¹ wher som tyme mad was¹²
 and howse of Relygioun þatt thene was dystroyd þorw
 paynyms wer of A knyth þat men callyd Aubrey some tym was
 fondyr off And ther of þe mont was callyd the moute of
 Bryans And aftyr yt was callyd Ambrisbury and is⁵ it is¹³
 to this day

Aurilambros redressing of grete breten þat was distroyd
 bi the Saxons

Howe the kyng Aurilambros lett Amende þe house of Amisbery
 and ther in put ~~iiij~~-en⁵ Monkes but now þer be Nonne3 And
 that plasse ys but A lytill from Salysbury Ther þat þe
 brutus kyld /wortyger when he 7 Engist (fol. 39^a) shuld
 haue mad a lowe day In wych ther wer slayne xxx M¹ kny3tys
 þurh tresoun Of Engest The kyng /Aurilambros had þer of
 grett pete and thouth to make hem in mynd a moute of stone
 þat my3t

⁹Erased; g and d written over one another. ¹⁰-h partly
 formed. ¹¹Superscript -r-. ¹²mad stroked out; was
 inserted above by scribe. ¹³Inserted above by scribe.

endure vn to thee worldes ende. And nome councel a mong
heme how this thing myght beste be doñe And I made Tho
seydee the kyng Aurilambros vn to the Bissoḡ of london
that men called Thernekyn pat he scholde aspye ande sende
after merlyn for he cowde beste telle in what maner hit
myghte be made to laste 7 endure for he couth best than
any oḡer manne Merlyn was sowght and founde and come to
the kyng. And the kyng tolde hym in what maner he wolde
haue made amonement that scholde laste with owten ende.
Sir quod merlyn poo ther bene grett Stones and howge in
Irlande vp on the hill of kilian that men calleth the
Carolle of Geauntes^d and if thei stode in this lande as
thei doñ there thei wolde laste and endure for euermore
in remembraunce that the knyghttes that were here slayn
pourgħ treson of Engist Ma fay quod kyng Aurilambros as
harde Stones beñ her in my lande as ben in that countre
Sir quod merlyn that es soth but in alle 3oure lande ther
ben none swech no of so moch vertu ffor Geauntes sette heme
there for mochel good and prophit of hem selfe for euer
(fol. 21^ba) more whane any of heme were hurt or soore
woundid thei wente and waisshe^e the stones with hoot
water and after thei wasshed heme with that water and an
one^f thei weren al hool and saf of her disese

How the Brittones wente for to seche the Stounes In to
Irlande that wer soo howgee and howe Merlyn wente with
hem Capitulo lxxvj^o

Thane^g the Brittones herde al this thing thei swore
amonges hem that thei wolde goon and feche the stones.
And nome with heme Vter the kynges brothir to bee her
cheveteyn and xv M^h men And merlyn wente with heme and
tolde heme bi which wey thei scholde goon And so thei
come in to Irland whenn Gillomer that was kyng of londe
herde telle that straungers were come and arrayued in
his londe he sembled an howge pouer and come and fouhte

Endur to þe worldys Ende And of thyng þey tok her counsell
 what¹ was best to done þane spake þe kyng to þe byschope of
 londyn þat men callyd Ternekyn þat he shuld enquer best how
 þe þyng myth best be mad /And Merlyne was Sente² after and
 founden and come to þe kyng And þe kyng told hym of þe
 monte þat he wold haue mad Then Answerd /Merlyn to þe kyng
 and sayd Ther bene grett stonys In Irland and ligyn oppon
 þe hyll of Ieantys carroll³ and 3if þey wer put and sett
 in this plasse as they be ther þey wold endur euyr mor in
 þe Remembrans of þe kny3this þat þer ben enteryd Parmafay
 quod þe kyng as hard stonys bene in my lond as bene in
 Irlond forsothe quod Merlyn in all 3our lond be no suche
 for geantys settyñ hem þer for gret goodnes and profite
 of hem self for at ony tym þat þey wer wondyt hor hourte
 in any othir maner þey wassyne þe stonys wyt hott watyr
 and wassheñ hem ther wyt and a none þey wer holle

Howe þe Bretons went to seke the stones that were in
 Erlande

When the brutons herd of this tydyngys þei went And Swore
 amonges hem þat þey wold See and serch the stonys 7 tok
 wyt hym /Vter þe kyngys brother to be her cheveteñ and xv
 M¹ meñ wyt hem And /Merlyn conceilyd hym to gone to Irlond
 and so þay did And when þe kyng of Irlond men callyd
Guyllioun hard tell þat strangerys wer A Rywyd vppon his
 lond and he assemlyd a gret pour and fauzt

Fol. 39 ¹-h- by corr. above; caret in text. ²By corr.
 over erasure. ³Second -r- badly formed like c.

with the Brittons but he and his men were disconfited
 Att the laste tho merlyn 7 the breetounes wente forth
 til that theye comen to the mounthe of kilian and pere
 thei clymed vp in to the heye hill vn to that thei comen
 andee sawh the stones. But thoo thei saw heme so grette
 7 so howge thei hade moche marvaille and seide among
 heme that no man scholde heme remeue for no maner
 qveyntise nor strengthe ffor thei wer so howge But merlyn
 be his crafte and qveyntise remeude hem and bro (fol.
 21^b) wghte heme in to hir schippes and come a 3en in to
 this lande And merlyn nome and sette the stounes ther
 that Aurilambros that was kyng wolde have hem stonnyng
 And Merlyn nome and made thee stounes stonde in the same
 wise as they stoden in Irlande. And whann the kyngee saw
 that merlyn hadde y done he thanked hym moche And
 rewarded hym for his travaille ful well and richelich
 And whann al was don the kynge lett calle be plase
 Ston.h yng and so hit schal be clepped with owten ende.

Howe passent that was Aurilamb¹ vortigers sone and kyng
 Collomer^h of Irland comen in to this land and howe
 attraitour that men called Coppas that was a Saxsoun en
 poisonde kyng Aurilambros. Capitulo lx^o Septimo

And 3ee schulle vndirstande that Passent pat was the sone
 of vortiger leuede 3it and come in to this land with an
 howge pouere and thoughtee to avenge his fadres dep that
 me called vortiger And arrayved in the North Contree and
 truste wondir moch vp on his companye that he hade brouht
 witht hym owt of the lond of Germaine and hadde conquerde
 alle the Northe Countre vn to 3orke. Whann kyng
 Aurilambros herde this tyding he sembled an howge pouer
 of Brittons ande come 7 mette with passent And
 discounfited hym 7 alle his folke But passent Schaped a
 wey with a litil peple and fledde thens in to Irland and
Fol. 21 ¹Stroked out.

wyt hym buhe and his pour was dyscomfyte Then þe bretons went forth tyll þay com to þe monte of kyu[...]⁴ And when þay com vppoñ þe topp of þe monte þay Sey þe stonys and þe maner how þat stonden (fol. 39^b) and merweyll grettly ther of and sayd by twene heme þat nomañ shull Remeve hym of þe place neythyr be strynth⁵ eiethir be Engyne so hug and so long But Merlyne þor his be⁶ grasse and his syans Remevyd⁷ And browthe heme to her schippys and so þey brouth heme in to this lond and Merlyne sett þe stonys ther as the kyng wold haue hem in þe same maner as þey stod in Irlond and whene þe kyng saw þat yt was mad he thankyd Merlyne hugely and Rychly hym Rewardyd at his owne wyll And þat plase he lett call⁸ stone hegg and so yt ys in to þis day

Howe passent þat was wortigers sone 7 þe kyng Guylliouñ com to þis londe 7 of coppa a traytour

And men shall vndyrstond þat passent þat⁹ was /wortiger sone leuyd in þe same tyme and come in to þis londe wyt A gret powr and inhabit in þe north contre and þouth to be Aweng on his fadyrs deth wortiger and strongly strustid^a oppoñ þe company þat he had brouthe wyt him out of þe lond of Germanyn And ther he conquerd all þe north Contre to 3ork And when þe kyng /Aurilambros herd þat he a semlyd A gret powr of bretayne and went to fyth wyt hym and dyscomfyt hyme and all his pepyll But Passent eschapyd thens wyt sum of his meñ and fled thens in to Irlond And

⁴Two letters illegible. ⁵Superscript -r- above -yn-.
⁶his stroked out; be added by corr. in right margin at end of line. ⁷-vyd by corr. over erasure. ⁸Inserted above by corr.; caret in text. ⁹passent þat inserted above by corr.; caret in text.

come to kyng Guillomer And praide him of helpe and of socour The kyng graunted hym with good wille vp on pat condicioun that he myghte wende wip hyme al so to venge hym vp on thee (fol. 22^a) brittons with al his pouere for they come in to my land 7 with strengthee laden a wey with hem the stounes that wer called the Carolle of Geauntes kyng Guillomer a non let aparalle his scheppes and nome with hym.xv M¹ men. And come to the see and sailled forth ande arived in walles and brent robbed ande quellede and dede as moch sorw as theip^a myghte. And so hit fille that kyng Aurilambros lay sike that tyme at Wynchestre and myght nouhte helpe hym selfe and so he sente in his stede.Vter his brothir with an howge peple for to helpe the walssh men. And Vter wente in to walles as faste as he myghte. And Guillomer that was kyng of Irlande herde tyding that Aurilambros was sike and myghte nouhte helpe hym selfe. And glad thei were of that tyding And priuulich ther come to hyme a Saxsoun that men called Coppa And sayde.Sirs abide 3e here stille with 3our peple And I be hotte 3ou that I wille quelle the kynge Aurilambros with sum queyntise that I can Sertes saide the othere if pou do so pou schalt be rewarded hougly for bi trawaille. This treitor Coppa wente forth and nome 7 caste vp on hyme a Abite as he hade ben a man of Religion and lette schere hym a rownd crowne and come to wynchestre to the kynges Court and saide that he was amichil fficessian and wolde vndirtake for to helle the kyng of his sikenesse. And so he come vn to the kyng And said Sire be of good confort ffor y schal 3eve 3ou swech a medecyn that 3e schal sleppe softe 7 swette and haue good reste And the¹ falce treitour 3af hym swech apoisoun (fol. 22^ab) that the kyng a non sclep^b and deyde in slepynge And whanne he hade thus done he come vn to the

Fol. 22 ¹In margin in a different (later?) hand.

come to kyng /Guyllioun 7 prayd of help and socur The kyng
 grauntyd hym wyt good wyll and sayd I wold help 3ou wyt
 good wyll vppon̄ bis couanaunte pat I my self go wyt 3ou
 wyt all my pour into bretayne for I we^b A wengyd vppon be
 bretons as fayne as for they come schorly in to my lond
 And toke A way be gret stonys fro the month pat meñ (fol.
 40^a) callyth Geantys karoell The kyng /Guyllone lett ordeñ
 his scheppys and went ~~te-thess~~¹ wyt xv housand meñ and A
 Reuyd all walys and [be]² Rob and do much Sorrow And ther
 to hym come A Sarssoun thas was callyd Coppa and sayd
 syrse dwell 3ou her in pesse wyt 3our meñ and 3our host
 and I be hate 3ou pat por my sotohte pat I shall³ sle be
 kyng /Aurylambors pat liithe seke 3effye so doo quod they⁴
 I shall 3ew rygly Awaunce This traytur coppa put oppon hym
 A nabyte of Religioun and lett schawe hym a brod crone and
 com to be kyngys corte And sayd he was A good ffeccessyañ
 and coud hell be kyng of his malady Then sayd be traytur
 /cappta to be kyng syr by 3e A good comforte for I shall
 3eve⁵ 3ou such a medesyne pat 3e shall swet anone ryth and
 fast Slepe and haue good Rest and ~~per~~ be false traytur 3af
 hym such pusone pat he slepe anone ryth and preuely deid
 in his slepyng And thane be traytur

Fol. 40 ¹Stroked out. ²Stroked out and then erased. ³I
 shall by corr. in right margin with caret; caret in text.
⁴By corr. in right margin at end of line. ⁵Inserted above
 by corr.; caret in text.

kynges seruantes ande seide he wolde goon 7 disporte hym
 in þe felde 7 wente forth in his way And anon aman of hym
 hade Suspecioun for encheson of the habite he hade vp on
 hyme. And al so for enchesoun of his brod crowne. And
 whene the kynemen^c wiste þat he was ded they mad moch
 sorwe 7 souhte the treitour alla bowte^d but thei myght
 nouht fynde hyme ffor he wente a 3en vn to the Ooste that
 he come fro

Whane kyng Aurilambros was ded men sawe asterre vp on the
 morwe with an howge light schinyng as hit were a bem and
 at te bought^e of the beme men saw as hit were an hidous
 hed of a dragoun Capitulo lx^o viij^o

And whan kyng Aurilambros was thus ded at wynchestre vp
 on the morw men sawe an howge sterr with a gret beme
 wondir bright schynyng at prime And at þe bemes ende men
 sawe asterr that schynedde brighter thane the sonne and
 at the bouhte of that beme men sawe adragons hede and owt
 of his mowth come ij beamis as hit were brennyng fire
 and that 0 beme straught^f to wardee fraunce ouer the see
 and owt of that beeme come vij bemes as bright as any
 fire and many a man sawgh that sterr but no man wiste
 what hit mente ne be tokenede and vter that was
 Aurilambros² brothir was thoo in walis with his Brettounes
 and saw the sterr and þe bemes and hade ther of moch
 maruaile what hit myght be token. And called to hym Merlyn
 7 schewed hym the sterre with his bemees and praide Merlyn
 for to telle hym what hit my (fol. 22^ba) ghte bee tokene

Howe merlyn declaredde and tolde what meruailous^g sterre
 betokenede with his bemes Capitulo lxix^o

²Second r inserted above o.

sayd he wold goo oute in to þe feld for to geddyr Erbys
 tyll þe kyng wer wakyd and so he Aschapyd be¹ Away for
 nomañ had to hym Suspectioun be cause of his habit he had
 on tall for his brod Crowne And when þe kyngys men wist⁵
 þat he was so dedd thay be come wondyr Sory 7 fast Sowth
 þe traytur but þe myth nott fynd hyme Cappa heid hym azen
 in all þe hast þat he mythe to þe ost þat he com fro

When Aurilambros was dede was on þe morowe a clere lizte
 a b[.]ne⁶ seen

When þe kyng /Aurylanbros was so dedd 7 poysoned at
 wenchester a morow aftyr when he was ded A bouth Pryme of
 the day þer was sene after grett and cler and þe ster was
 bryther þan þe Sone and at bouzt (fol. 40^b) of þe beme
 apperyth A dragons hedd and out of his mouth com A hug
 lyth þat wer as brythe as hony feyr brennyng and þe tone
 leme tilyd^a toward fraunce and þe tothir toward Irlond
 and out of þat beme come vij bemys cler along as it wer
 þe lyth of fayr þis ster was sene of meny Amañ but none
 of hem wist wat hitt be tokenyd /Vtyr þat was þe kyngys
 brothyr þat was þat tyme in walys wyt his oste of bretons
 saw þat ster wyt þe gret lythe þat he 3aff And he wonderd
 þer of grettly what yt myth be tokenyd And lett call
 /merlyne and prayd hyme for to tell watt yt my3th be
 tokenyth

Howe Merlyn declarid þe tokens of the sterr Capitulo

⁶Blotted, prob. e and first minim of m.

Merlyn stod long tyme and avised hym well and loked vp on
 that sterre and afterward sore wepped and quakede and said
 allas that euer so nobile a kyng scholde be ded in swech
 deth and said thoo vn to vter Sire 3our brothir es ded and
 enpoisonde And that I see wel in this sterre. And the hed
 of this dragoun that es atte bowghte of the beem be tokenep
 3owr selfe. And that 3e schal be kyng and regne. And be
 that beem that stondep to ward the Este es vndirstande pat
 3e schal gette a sonne that schal conquere al fraunce and
 alle londes that beene longyng to^h fraunce And he schal be
 a kyng of more pouere than any of his auncestres. And bee
 that beeme that strecheth to warde Irland be tokeneth that
 3e schal gette a douhter that schal be quen of Irland. And
 the vij bemes be tokeneth that sche schal have vij sonnes
 and euerich of hem schal be akyng and regne with mechel
 honour And I counsel 3ou to dwelle in this lond noo lenger
 but goth anon 7 3eue bataille vn to 3oure enymyes and
 boldely fighte with heme for 3ee schalle ouercome hem and
 haue the victorie Vter thankedde moche merlyn. And a non
 nome his men 7 3afe bataille vn to his enymyes and wondir
 harde thei fouhten to gydere so att the laste he sconfited
 his enymyes. And in that bataile vter quelled passent that
 was the sone of vortiger And his Brittones quelledde Guillomer
 that was kyng of Irlande and alle his men were slayn in that
 bataille. And sone afterward that pis bataille was doñe Vter
 vent to wyn (fol. 22^b) chestre to entere his brothir
 Aurilambros and thoo nome the Brittones the Body and bare
 hit to Stonhing with mehil honoure in the which place he
 lette theeⁱ grett stones that wer I brought owte of
 Irlande in remembraunce of thee Brittouns that ther wer
 quelled porgh tresoun of Engist and his men vp on the
 same day that pei scholde haue beñ acorded And in the
 same plase the Brittones nome 7 beried kyng Aurilambros
 in the se^uconde 3er of his regne. And Brittones^j dedee to

Merlyne saue that ster and he be held yt A good wyle and
sone aftyr he quakyd and vepe tenderly and sayd allas allas
pat So nobyll A kyng and worthi ys ded And I do 3ou to
vndyrstond your brothyr Aurylambros ys powsend and ded and
pat soo say I in þe ~~stret~~¹ sterr and 3our self be tokenyth
by þe hed of de dragons pat ys to say att bouzt of the beme
pat ys 3ourself pat shall be kyng and reigne And be the
beme pat stond toward þe est ys to vndyrstonde that 3e
shall gett A sone pat shall conquer all fraunce and he
shall be A wordyar kyng and of mor power⁷ þan euyr was ony
of his hauncestres And by þe bem pat strecchyd toward
Irlond be tokeny3 pat 3e shall gett A dou3tyr pat shall
be quen of Irlond And þe lemnygs^b be tokenyd pat sche shall
haue vij Sonnes and ech one of them shall be A kyng and
Reygnyd wyt much honour And abydyth no lenger her but gothe
and 3ewythe batayll to þer Enmys and fy3ten wyt hem bodely^c
for 3e shall ouyr come heme and haue de wyctory /Vter
thankyd Merlyn hartely and toke ~~hys~~⁸ his men And went
toward (fol. 41^a) hys Enmys and fou3tyn to gyddyr mortally
And at þe last Vtyr scomfyt his Enmys and dystroyd heme
hall and hym self dystroyd Passent wyt his owñ hondys pat
was wortiger sone And his bretens kyllyd Enenelyñ pat was
kyng of Irlond and all his meñ And vter/ Anoone aftyr pat
batayll toke hys way to wenchester for to Entyr Aurilambros
kyng that was his brothyr But þan was þe body borne to
stonhenge wyt much honour pat he had lett make wyt much
honour in the Remembrance of the bryttons pat wer slayne
purch treson of Engyst pat same day pat þey shuld have be
accordyd and in the same plasse þay Enteryd Aurilambros
þe second 3er

⁷By corr. over erasure. ⁸Letter erased.

hyme the honour that þei myghte and kowth of whose sowle
god haue mercy Amen

Of vterpendragoun and wherfore hade^k that name ande howe
he was ouertake¹ for the loue of Igerne that was the
Erles wiff of Cornuaille Capitulo lxx^o.

Whane Aurilambros was ded 7 entired vter his brothir was
mad kyng And he gouerned that lond wel 7 nobillych And on
atyme in the reuerence of the dragoun that he was likened
to thourgh counceill of his brittones he lete make ij
dragouns And on of heme scholde be bore be for³ hym
whanne he wente in to bataille And that other was lefte
att wynchestre in the Cherche of Seynt Swethens and
therfore he was called vter pendragoun Al his lyves tyme
Octa that was engist sone louede nouht vterpendragoun for
encheson that he was made kyng And so Octa be gañ to werr
vp on hym and ordeynde hym an howge pouer of his frendes.
And Ossa al so his brothir that wer paynemes boþe
ordeynde hem al the pouer that þei myghte have ffor thei
hade I take alle (fol. 23^a) the lande fro humber vn to
3orke And whane thei comen to 3orke the meñ of the town
wold nouh soffer Octa 7 Ossa come in to the towne nothir
3elde the Toun to hym. And whann Octa saw that he myghte
not come In to the toun Anon he 3aff astrong assawt vn
to the toun. And thei that wer with Ine the towne
manlich defended hit Whann vter pendragon herde these
tydinges Anon he ordeyned hym an howge power 7 come 7
rescued the Town and remeved the Sege and 3af astrong
battaille to Octa an to his men that wer paynemes And
Octa and his men defended heme as longe as thei myght
And atte laste they wer disconfited and slayn in that
battaille Octa 7 Ossa were taken 7 lede to london ande

³be for by scribe above with line marking insertion.

wyt all worschip þat pertynyd to suche a kyng house soul
god pardon

Howe Vter Pendragoun gate Arthur on Igreñ þe Erle of
Cornewellis wife 7 slou3e þe Erle

After þe dethe of Aurilombros /Vtyr his brother was crownyd
and reigned well and worthely And and in þe Remembrance of
the dragone þat he was lykenyd too he mad ij dragons þour
consell of his bretons þe tone to be borne by for hyme when
he wente to batayll and þe toþyr tabyd^a at wenschestyr in
þe byschops chyrscche and for þat causse he was Callyd euyr
mor aftyr Vtyr pendencyagoun And Octa þat was Engystys sone
comendet lytill vter þat was mad new kyng and agayn hyme
he be ganne to make war and hordynid a gret company of his
kyne and of his frendys And off his brother and had toke
all þe londe from hombyr to yorke but þey of york hyng^b
strongly a yenst heme and wold nott soffyr hym come in to
þe towne nor wold 3eld the Cytte to hym And ther he be
segyd þe towne anone Rythe and gaff A gret saut þer to but
þey of þe Citte (fol. 41^b) defendyd hem well and horpedly
And when Vter herd ther off he com ther wyt A Grett pouer
to helpe and Reskewe þe towne and to breke vp the Sege and
gaff hym Astrong batayll And Octa and his ee¹ company
defendyt hyme as well as he mythe but att þe laste þey wer
dyscomfit And þe most party of hem Slayne And Octa And
Offa hys broþyr weryne take and

Fol. 41 ¹Stroked out.

putt ther in prisoun And kyng vter hyme selfe dwelled
 alitil whille at 3orke And at Ester that nexte come he
 wente to london and thouhte to make a solempne feste
 among his Erlees and Barounes and so he comaundid
 thourgh his letteres to alle his reawme that thei scholde
 come to hyme 7 bee at that solempne feste And alle lordes
 that hade wifis scholde ham brynge with heme to that
 solempnite And alle the lordes dede his heste and come
 vn to the day that was ordeyned And so at that day thei
 wer alle y sett to be meete every man 7 woman after that
 her state was and honourably seruede soo that Gorlous 7
 Igerne¹ his wiffe satten nexte the kyng at mete And were
 serued ful richely And the kyng be helde ofte tyme the
 lady and sawe the beautee of hire and was take sore with
 loue for here in his herte and was grettly anamerede vp
 on here and ofte tymes was (fol. 23^ab) be twen hem lauhying
 and foly continance^a And soo at the laste the Erle saw
 that þe kyng was in purpos and in whill to haue his wife
 in foly and do here vilany Anon̄ the Erle a ros hym vp fro
 the table al in wrathe and tok his wiff with hym and
 called to hym his knyghtes^b and his meyne and wolde dwelle
 ther no lengerre and in gret wrath wente in his wey 7
 toke no maner leve of the kyng But let hyme sitte stille
 at the mete. Whan the kyng sawgh this he was evel apayd
 and a non̄ sente after hyme to have done hym come 7 speke
 with hym and nouht gon̄ in his way in swech maner And done
 hym swech adispite And vilanye And the Erle seyde to the
 messangeres schortly that he wolde nouht come a 3en̄ for
 no man̄ And the kyng was wroth and a non̄ defied^c hym for
 his dedelich enymy The Erle wente forth in his way in to
 Cornwail And Igerne hys wife with hym and his Companye
 and wente in to the Castell of Tyncastelle^d. And a non̄
 lett aparelle 7 vitaille the Castel ful wel. And vp on

Fol. 23 ¹r by scribe above.

putt to pressone in london And Vter hym Self dwellyth a
 wylle in yorke And after he went to london And att Estyr
 nex followyng he wold ber A Crone and make A Solempne fest
 And lett waryne all his Erls and barons þat þey shull come
 to þat feste And all þat had² wyuys shuld breng heme wyt
 hem to þe fest And all come att þe kyngys comandmente as
 they wer Sent for The ~~fyrst~~ feste³ was Rychly holden And
 all worthely Seett at mette after þey wer of statte So þat
 Carlois þat was Erle of Cornewell and Igerñ his wyff satt
 nex þe kyng And he saw the fayr bewte of þat lady And was
 rawysschid in her for her beute And oft he mad toward her
 nyce contenaunce in lokyng and laugyng þat So at last E^c
 þe Erle persayvyd þe preuy lokyng and lauhying 7 þe v^l love
 tat hys by twene hem and A Rosse vp frome þe tabyll all in
 wrathe and toke his wyff and eallyd¹ callyd to her¹ hym
 all hys knyttys and went þens all in wrathe wyt out takyng
 leve of the kyng /þe kyng A none sent after hyme þat he
 shull come A 3ene And nott goo A way in dyspytt of hyme
 And þe Erll wold nott come A 3ene in none maner werfor þe
 kyng was wrothe and hym defeyd as hys bodely Enmy And the
 Erll went þens in to Cornwall wyt his wyff in to þe
 castyll of Tentagyll And

²Inserted above by corr. ³fyrst stroked out and partially
 erased; feste inserted above by corr.

a tyme afterwarde the kyng Vter ordeynede hym an houghe pouere and come in to Cornwaille to werre vp on þe Erle and distroie hem for cause of his wyffe in al thing that he myghte And þe Erle was in the Castel that was strong and wel vittailled and apareylde with men atte fulle. And the Erle sayd to the kyng that he uolde^e zelde the Castel for no man nothir for hyme. The kyng was wroth and a non̄ be seged the Castelle and dwelled there xv daies And myght nowght gett the Castel for no maner thing that he Cowde don̄ And euermor the mynde was vp on the lady that was in the castell and made for here loue moch mornynge so that he ne² nyst what (fol. 23^ba) to done and at the laste he called to hym a knyght that heyth vlfyng that he moche lowede and with hym most priue and tolde hym al his counceill And axed hym what was best vn̄ to done Sir quod the knyght anon̄ doth sende aftir merlyn̄ 7 he schal counceille 3ou and ordeyn̄ for 3ou remedye for he can better̄ than̄ any man̄ that es lyvyng in the world the kyng sente anon̄ aftir merlyn̄ and he come to the kyng And the kyng tolde hym his wil Sir quod merlyn̄.y schal do so moch þourgh crafte that I can̄ that I schal make 3ou this nyght to Come in to the Castel of Tyntagel And ther ine 3e schulle do al 3oure wille. And al so to do with þe lady what 3ou likeþ

How kyng Vterpendragoun̄ bi gate vp on Igerne the Erles wiffe of Cornwaille a sone that men̄ called the Artur that was anoble knyght and aborde among alle the men of the worlde Capitulo lxxj^o

TEllyn merlyn³ thoo with Crafte that he Cowde chaunged the kynges figure^f in to lykenesse of his Chamberrere vlphyn Al so he tourned the kynges likenesse vn̄ to Iordan

²he ne by scribe above with line marking insertion.

³Inserted above TEllyn.

þe kyng lett ordene a grett hoste and com to Cornewell for
 to dystroy þe Erle and he myt3e But he had put hyme in to
 strong castell and well A Rayd þat he wolld nott zeld hyme
 to þe kyng The kyng Anone besegyð þe castell and dwellyd
 þer but xv dayis and neuyr coude (fol. 42^a) ne myzt sped
 of hys Atente and euyr þe¹ he thowthe² So much hoñ Igrene
 and on hyr he layd So much his love þat he ne wist³ watt
 to doo for love So at þe last he callyd to hym A kny3the
 þat was callyd Vlphen þat was A preuy mane wyt þe kynge
 and told hym all his conssell and Axid hym wat wer best
 to do⁴ Syr he said do send aftyr Merlyne for he cane tell
 3ou þe best consell in þat matter of hony mañ lewyng
Merlyne ~~/////~~⁵ Anone aftyr was sente for⁶ and come to þe
 kyng And þe kyng told hym all his wyll Syr quod merlyne
 I shall do 3ou So mucche þoww craft þat I cane þat I shall
 make 3ou come in to þe Castyll of Tengtall And 3e shall
 haue all 3our lost of þat lady

Howe Vter begate on Igren þe Erlis wyfe of Cornewel kyng
 Arthur

Merlyn þoww craft þat he coud turnyd þe kyngys liknes in
 to þe lyknes of Erle Vlphyn And his Chambyrlayn in to
 this liknes of Iordañ

Fol. 42 ¹Stroked out. ²First -h- by corr. above; caret
 in text. ³Inserted above by corr. ⁴do by corr. over ne;
 MS. orig. tone. ⁵Erasure. ⁶Inserted above by corr.;
 caret in text.

that was the Erles Chamberleyⁿ so that eche of hem was Chaunged to everimanes figure. And whaⁿ merlyn hade thus I doⁿ he sayde to the kyng Sire 3e may gooⁿ in to the Castel of Tyntagel now savelich and boldeliche. Axe ther to come In And in the Castel do al 3oure wille. The kyng vter no^me with hym^g priuⁱlich aknyght that he moch louede and troste vp on 7 sayde vn to hym. I pray the too keppe my peple til that I come a3en (fol. 23^b) to 3ou. And soo he wente priuⁱlich til that he come to the Castell with merlyn 7 vlffyn his Chamberleyⁿ. And whaⁿ they⁴ comen to the Castel gate they called the porter vn do and the porter welcomede heme 7 wende hit hade beⁿ his owne lorde And soo he wente his wey til that he come to þe lady ther that sche was And whaⁿ tyme come thei went to bedde to gyderis And the kyng dede with the lady that nyzte al his wille and bi gate vp on her a sonne that men called Aurtir And the nobbile kyng vp on the morwe nome and toke his leue of the lady and 3ede a 3ene to his Ooste. And the same nyght whiles the kyng was in the Castelle and was in bed with the lady his mene hade 3oue astrong Assawt to the Castelle And the Erle and his folke manlich defended the Castel So that att the last in that sawte the Erle was quelled hym selfe. And the Castel was take whanne kyng vter herde this tyding Anon he tou^rned a 3eⁿ to the Castell And come to the ladi and spoused here And made her quen with mechel honour And whaⁿ tyme come sche scholde be delyu^ered sche bare aschilde that men called hit Aurtur and afterward was anobbil kyng 7 abolde And afterward he gat vp on here adouhter that height Amya 7 whanne sche was of Agee sche was rychly wedded to anobil baroun that height Alothe that was lorde of leones^h. And whaⁿ Vter hade long tyme beⁿ kynge he fil in to grette sikennesse. And hadde vp on hyme an howge malady And in

⁴-y added later.

þat was þe Erls Chambyrlayne þat [þ]⁷ Eche one of þeme was
 transfuguryd to⁸ þer liknez 7 when he had so I doo he sayd
 to þe kyng Syr quod 3e now 3e may goo into þe castell of
 Tentegell⁹ and aske entur ther 7 haue 3our wyll Thane þe
 kyng toke all his ost to led to A kny3the þat he louyd
 muche And toke his way toward þe Castell And wyt hyme
 Vlphyn̄ and Merlyn̄ And when þay come dethyr þe portyr wend
 fre^a had bene his lord And wene tyme come to goo to bed
 wyt Igren̄ þe Erls wyffe and ded wyt her all his wyll And
 be gatt vppon̄ her A Sone þat callyd /Arthur And aftyr he
 be gat vppon̄ her A dowther þat was callyd /Amya And when̄
 sche was of Age sche was worthely Meryde to A barn̄ þat was
 callyd Aloch þat was lord of leone3 when Yter long tyme
 had Reygnyd þer com vppon̄ hym a grett Sekenes as yt wer
 Sorowe And in

⁷Erased. ⁸Superscript flourish, poss. o. ⁹-te- by scribe
 above with caret in text; -ll from orig. -hl.

pat mene tyme they that hade Octa and Ossa that wer Engistes sonnes (fol. 24^a) in kepyng And in warde fo prisoun^a for mede thei lete hem goⁿ owte of prisoune and they wente forth with hem And afterwarde whanne Octa and Ossa that were engistes sones come in to her contrey thei ordeyned heme an howge pouere and come a zeine in to this lande and bi goune to werre vp on vterpendragoun

How kyng vter ordeynde Aloth that hade spoused Amya his douhter to kepe the lande of Brittainye whilles that he was sike for encheson that he myght nouhte helpe hym selfe Capitulo lxxij^o

And for enchesoun that vterpendragoun lay sike and myghte nouht helpe hym selfe he ordeyned 7 made in his stede alieu tenaunt Aloch^b that was Elynnes sone and made hyme cheueteine of alle his men to gouerne and to rewle. Alothe 7 the Brittones nomen 7 assemblede heme 7 come vp on a tyme 7 3af bataille to Octa^c and disconfited hym 7 alle his men Ande after ward hit fille that the Brittones hade scorne and dispite of Aloche that he was ordeyned 7 made her souerayn in werre 7 so they nolde no thinge be to hym entendaunt And therforre the kyng vter made gret sorwe and a none lett make a liter and sore sikee was laide vp on the litier And so the Brittones nomen 7 ledde hym to Veroleyne that was a feir Cittee. Ande in the same Citte seynt Albion was done vn to deth And that Citte was loost 7 destroyed pourgh Sarezennes 7 and paynymes that destroyed that tyme Cristente. And to that Citte Octa (fol. 24^ab) 7 Ossa were fare and her men wth hem and had taken the town 7 made her gatis faste that no man scholde come to heme. And in that Citte thei held hem And kyng vter come pedir with his peple and be segede the toune And made stronge assaut to the toune And thei that were with in the toune manlich hem defended

þe mene tyme tho that had to kepe Octa þat was Engyst Sone
 and offa his brothyr þat þan was in presone þey let hym
 goo for grett yeftys þat gaf (fol. 42^b) hym and wente
 forthe þo to bretheryne weryne Aschapyd þey went in to
 her owne Contre and þer þey hordynyð hyme A gret host and
 agret pour And be gane to wer eft Sonys oppoñ Vter
Pendragoun And for as muche as kyng vter was seke and
 mythe nott help hym Self he hordynyð Aloth þe soñ of Elen
 þat þane was to be wardene and schevetyn̄ of all his folke
 And he Anone and his bretons assemlyd A grett oste and
 gaff batayll to Octa and to his folke but Octa at þe last
 he was dyscomfyt hit be fyll þus afterward þat þes bretons
 had indyngnacioun of Alooth and wold nott to hyme be att
 tendans^b wer for þe kyng was wondyr sory and let put hyme
 in a batell of þe host Amongys his folke and þey had hym
 to werelyne þat þane was A feyr Sytte þer þat Sent Alboun
 was martyryd and after þe Cite was dystroyd purch þe
 paynymys And thay had sent Octa and Offa and her pepyll and
 Entyrd in to þe towne and lett make fast þe 3atys and þer
 þey held hyme and þe kyng come and hym be sechyd and mad
 a strong A Saute but þei þat wer wyt in hem manly hem
 defendyd

and kepte the toune kyngee Vter anon lett ordeyne his
 engynis 7 gounes and lett caste to the Toune but the
 wallis were so stronge that no man myght done heme non
 harme for no maner Engyn And Octa hade grete dispite and
 scorne that a kyng ligyng in a litier hade be seged hym
 and alle his men And a non ordeyned a councel amonges
 heme. And soo on the morwe thei come owt of thee Town
 and 3af battaile to kyng vter and his men. And in that
 bataile Octa and Ossa were both y slayn And her men that
 aschapid on lyue fley in to Scotland and made her
 Cheuetayn 7 here gouernour a man that mene called
 Colengrine And the Saxsones pat aschapede and wenten a
 wey frome discounfetur at 3orke had ordeynede heme astrong
 Ooste And seiden amonges heme. If hit wer soo that kyng
 Vter were ded thei scholde conquer and haue th lond of
 Brittainne at her owne wille. And priuylich they ordeyned
 amonges heme to enpoysone hym yf bei myghte And ordeyned
 certeyn men amonges heme to done this dede. And ther to
 3afe hem riche 3eftes and many And Anon they pat scholde
 do this dede wente (fol. 24^ba) forth in her way and
 asspied where the kyng was dwellynge and nome and caste
 vp on heme feble^d clothinge if that they myghte the
 better speede But for no maner thing they myght nouht
 come neygh the kyng no with hym speke And whanne they
 saw that they myght nouhte have her porpos to come to be
 kynge in no maner wise Tho wentte the false treitoures
 and aspiede whate drynke the kyng dranke. And men tolde
 hyme that he drank no nothir drynke but water of the welle
 that was per kyng vter lay seke. And so the false
 treitoures wente 7 nome strong poisoun and cast in the
 welle and so the water was envemend^e And whan the kyng
 hade drounken of the water a none he gan to swelle
 grettly And anone after he deide And as many men 7 women
 had dronken of that water whane men of the town aspieden
 this wikednesse anone they nome 7 wente and stopped this

The kyng lett horden his gonnys and his engynis for to breke þe wallys and the wallys wer so strong þat noþing hem mythe ~~dee~~¹ hem mysdoo Octa and his pepyll had grett dyspite þat A kyng liging in a lettyr had hym besegit And toke consell on þe morrowe and come out and 3ef batayll to þe kyng and so þey did Octa 7 Offa was slayne And all þe tothir that schapyd oñ lyue fled in to Scotlonde and mad Colegryn her schevetayn And þe Saxons þat wer on lyve and eschapyd frome þe batayll brouth a3ene A grett strenthe amongys hem þey saydeñ and þe kyng Vter wer ded þey shull well conquer þe lond amongys hym 7¹⁰ þay þouthe to Enpowsyne þe kyng (fol. 43^a) and A Rayd meñ a grett heppe and yaff hyme yeftys for to goo do þat dede and þey hordynyð hym dedyrward þat þe kyng was dwellyng and cloped hem in por weed¹ þe bettyr for to sped her lewd porposse But þ^a neþyr lesse for her falsnes and quayntes þat þay my3th neuyr come ny3h² þe kyng but so At last þay Aspyd þat þe kyng drank none opir lycour but watyr of cler well þat was ny3e be seyð and thes false trayturs preuely vppoñ A day went to þat well and put þer in Poysyne so þat all þe watyr was in powsend And Anone aftyr as þe kyng had dronke þat watyr he be gane to Swell and sone aftyr he dyde³ and as meny as drongen^b þer of þat watyr died also And Anone as thes falsnes⁴ was A spyd folke of þe tounne lett stop þe

¹⁰Over a by corr. Fol. 43 ¹Second -e- by corr. over erasure. ²-i- over -c- by corr. ³Badly formed -e with flourish. ⁴-s- by corr. above; caret in text.

welle for euermor Ande when kyng vter was ded his mene
 nome and bare hym to Stonhyng be sydes Salesbury and ther
 they enterede hyme with mochel honour of Bisschopes Erles
 and Barounes and manye othir lordes and layde hym be
 sydes his brothir Aurilambros. And þoo tourned alle the
 lordes aȝene And nome and sent after Arthur that was his
 sone and nome and made hym kyng with mehil honour
 whanne his fadir was ded. And vter his fadir hadde be
 kyng xvij ȝere

How Arthur was I made kyng of Brittainne whane vter
 pendragoun his fadir was ded And howe (fol. 24^b) kyng
 Arthur drofe owte of the lande a man that heighte
 Colengrime And alle the Saxsounes with hym. And al so
 Cheldrik of Almaine Capitulo¹ lxx^o Tercio

Whane Arthur was made kyng of the lande he was of Age
 but xv. ȝerr and he was a fair ȝong man And a meke and al
 so strong and bolde boȝe gentil and Corneys to alle
 maner men and a ȝens prowde men he was both fers 7 sterne
 and to goode men he was gentil and curteis and moch y
 loued a ȝens² monges his peple. And sone after that he
 was I made kyng he swor and made his othe that he nolde
 neuer have reste nor pees til that alle the Saxsounes
 wer dryven owt of his londe. And o non lete ordeigne an
 howge pouere and come and fowoght^f with Colengryn that
 thee Saxsouns hade y made her Cheueteyne. And Colingryn
 was discourfited ande come to ȝorke and þedir fley for
 drede 7 toke the Towe and keppte hym ther Inne And kyng
 Arthur be seged the toune and myght nouht gette the Toune
 ffor the Towe was soo Strong And they with Inne the
 Towe manlich keppte þe toune And in the mene tyme Colengryn
 toke the Toune to Aman that men callede Blduph^g to warde

well for eu~~y~~r more when þe kyng was dedd hys folke bar hym
to stonehe~~n~~ge grette solempnite of bysshops and we⁵r barons
þat wer ther beryed hyme be seid Aurilambros brothir and
afty~~r~~ tornyd A 3en þan eu~~y~~r chone and lett send af~~t~~y~~r~~
Arthur his sone and lett make hym kyng of þe lond wyt
much Reue~~r~~ens af~~t~~y~~r~~ his fadyr dethe the xvij of þe⁵ his
Reigne

Howe kyng Arthure was made kyng of þis londe 7 of his
worthy dedis

When /Arthur was mad kyng of þe lond he was full yong of
xv 3er of Age but he was fayr and bolde and dou3ty of body
and to meke folke he was good and cortyis and larg of
Spendyng and hym welbelouyd Amog^c all meñ ther as yt was
nede And when he begane to Reigñ he Swor þat þe Saxons
shuld neu~~y~~r haue rest tell he had drve hem owt of this
londe Alott A Semlyd A grett host and fou3t wyt Collegryne
þat af~~t~~y~~r~~tyme þat /Octa was dede þe Saxons maynten and
this Collygryne was dyscomfyd and fled to 3orke and toke
þe toune and ther held hym And þe kyng besegyð þe towne
but he myth nothyng sped for þe toune was strong And þese
wyt in kepe þe towne so horpydly And in þe mene tyme
Collegryn let þe town to Bladulf

⁵Stroked out.

and to keepe And priuilych flede hym selfe to Cheldrike
 þat was kyng of Almaine to haue of hym socoure and helpe.
 The kyng grauntede hym help and socour and sembled an
 howge power and come with hym in to Scotland and brought
 with hym v C schippes ful of men. whan kyng Arthur herde
 this tydinge and saw that he hadde nought peple y nowgh
 to fighte with Coolengryn and with Cheldrik of Almay
 (fol. 25^a) gne Anon he lefte the sege at 3orke 7 wente
 to london And a non sente to thee kyng of lital Brittain
 that highte howell his nevowe that was his sustres sone
 that he scholde come to hym and bringe with hym al the
 power that he myghte kyng hoel assemblede a non an howge
 Ooste of men 7 come 7 arived vp at Southamptoun And whanne
 kyng Arthur wist þat he was come he made Ioie y nouh and
 wente a 3ens hym with moch peple and feire vndirfonged
 hyme. And made for hym moche ioye. And whan þoo ij oostes
 vere assembled a non thei toke her wey 7 wente to nichole
 And that same towne Cheldrike hade be seged and myght
 nouht gette the Toune And kyng Arthur and hoel his
 brothir^a comen vp on Cheldrike and up on his men or heny
 of hem hit wiste 7 a non tho ij hostes smotten to gyder
 ande fawght longe tyme. And kyng Arthur and his companye
 quelled so many of the Saxsounes so that sweche a noumber
 of men wer neuere be for that tyme seen deed. And whan
 Cheldrike saw his men slayn and leid to the grounde a non
 he be¹ gan to flee with his men that were lefte on lyue.
 And whan kyng Arthur hit wiste he pursewed him and droffe
 him in to a woode so that they myght no ferther passe
 Cheldrike and his men saw that þei myght not Aschape thei
 come owt of thee woode and 3ellded heme to the kyng Arthur
 And praide hym to take alle her hors and harneys and alle
 her armur and alle the goodes that thei hadde and lette
 hem goon on fotte to here schippes. And sayd they wolde

Fol. 25 ¹By scribe above.

7 fled hym self to Chelderik þat was kyng of Almayne for
 to haue (fol. 43^b) of hym Socur And they Assemlyd a grett
 pour and come 7 Aryvyd in scotlond wyt v. C Chippys And
 when /Artur wyst of this tydyngys and þat he had not no
 strenthe to fey3the a3ene Cheldrik he lett þe Sege and
 went to london 7 send anone his letters to þe kyng of
 lytill Bretayn þat meñ callyd his newe wyt his sustyrs
 soñ þat he shuld come to hym wyt all þe pour þat he
 mythe And A Rivyð a gret host 7 Aryvid at Southamtoun And
 when kyng Arthur yt wyst he was glad I now3e And went
 A3ens hym and Resayuyd hym⁶ wyt much honour so that þe
 hostys bot^d Assemlyd and toke her way ewyn to sutholke
 þat Chyldrec had besegit And they come oppoñ Chyldreke
 and his pepyll or that he⁵ they wyst þer that þay war and
 hym Egyrly assaylid The kyng Chyldreke 7 his mayne
 defendyt hem manly by her pour But kyng Arthur 7 his
 mayne kyillyd so many Saxons þat neuyr har was slayne such
 A slau3ter And Chyldrek his meyne þat wer left A lyve
 fled Away 7 hartur hem pursuyd and drve hym in to A wood
 þat þey my3 no ferþir⁷ passe Theldrek and his meñ sawe
 well þat þey wer brou3h⁸ in to much sorow and hym 3eldyn
 to /hartur in þis maner of wysse þat þey shuld take her
 horrsys and her goodys and all þat þay had and that þey
 shuld goo to her Chippys And so they wold goo

⁶Inserted by corr. above; caret in text. ⁷-e- over -o-
 and -rþi- over erasure by corr. ⁸-3- over -t- by corr.

goon̄ to hir owne lande a 3eene and neuer come a 3ene in to this lande and in sikernessee^b of this thing they ley (fol. 25^ab) de^c to kyng Aurthur goode hostages. kynge Arthur thorgh councel of this^d Brittonnes graunted heme her axinge and nome the hostages to hyme. And Cheldrik and his mene wente to hire Chippis And whanne they wer in the highe see her purpos schanged as the devel hit wolde and come and tourned a 3ene in to this lande and arivede at Totenesse and wente owt of hir schipes and quelled and robbed the Countre pourgh owte and nome and toke al the armure þat thei myght fynde and so thei went and distroied the Countre tyl that thei come to Bathe And men of the Toune saw enymies come thei nome and schett faste the 3attes and wolde nowght lette heme come wip Inne the Toune and kepte manlich þe Toune for^e alle her enemyes.

How kynge Arthur come and fawght with the Saxsouns whan̄ thei were I comen a 3en̄ in to this lande and hade be seged the Toune of Bathe and howe kyng Arthur 7 his men discounfited Cheldrike a 3en and his men euerichon̄
Capitulo lxxiiij^o

Thanne^f kyng Arthur herde telle how that Cheldrike and his companye wer come a 3en̄ in to this londe and quelled his folke and robbed the lande anon̄ he lett take alle the hostages and lett hong heme and praide kyng hooel his newowe to kepe the marchis of Scotlonde whils he wente to helpe and too rescue the towne of Bath that Cheldrike 7 the Saxsouns in his company hadde distroied whan̄ kyng Arthur was come too Bathe he 3afe astronge Bataille to Cheldrike and to his men and quelled there al moste alle his men̄ for ther myghte no man̄ endure the stroke of kyng Arthures swerde that hit fill to grounde and in that Bataille was qwelled Colengryn̄ and Bladuh his brothir And thane Cheldrike sawgh this myschefe he tournedee

in to her owne lond and neuyr com Azen vn to þis lond and
 oppoñ sowrans of this thyng þey 3effe hem good hostages
 And Artur thorwe Consell of his meñ grauntyd this thing
 þe hostys and oppoñ þis day whent to her schippys And
 when þe wer in þe hy See a⁵ her well schangyd as as^e de
 dewyll yt wold and turnyd her navy and come a3ene in to
 this lond and A Rywyd att Tottenes 7 went oute of her
 schippys and toke þe londe and Robbyd yt 7 tok much
 Ryches and slow much pepyll and toke all þe Armour þat
 þey coude feynd and went forthe tell þey com to⁹ bathe
 But þe meñ of the towne schit fast þe 3atys and wold nott
 com in to þe towne and they defendyd hem and orpidly
 A3ens hem

(fol. 44^a) Whene¹ hartur hard² this tydyngys he lett hong
 anone þe hostagys and left huell of Bretayne his newwe
 forto kepe þe March toward Scotlond wyt half his pepyll
 and hym Self went to Reskew þe toune of baathe and when
 he come dedyr he 3aff A grett batayll to Chyldreke and
 kyllyd allmost his³ all his pepyll þat he had for nomañ
 mythe stond ne endur vnder þe stroke of his Swerd and
 ther both wer slayne Collegryne² and bladud his brether
 and Chyldreke fled thens

⁹Inserted above by scribe. Fol. 44 ¹Three-line blue
 initial. ²Superscript -r-. ³Stroked out.

(fol. 25^ba) and wold hawe goon̄ to his schippes 7 haue passed a weye. Whan̄ kyng Arthur herde this tyding A non̄ he be toke to Cador x M¹ men that was Erle of Cornuaylle to pursewe after Cheldrik² and to suffir hym nouhte to go to his Schipes 7 goon̄ aweye owt of his land Whan̄ kyng arthur hade thus y done he nome and toured a 3en to ward the march of Scotland ffor ther come Messenrges^g and tolde kyng arthur how thei hade be seged kyng hoel of Brittainne his Nevewe ther that he lay seke and myght nouh help̄ hym self Whanne kyng Arthur herde this tyding he spedde hym pedirward as faste as he myghte. And in the same tyme Cador Erle of Cornwayle pursewde after Cheldrik and his men and ouertok hym̄ ar thei myght come at her Schippes and there Cador quelled Cheldrik and alle his so pat non̄ of heme aschapede And whan̄ Cador hadde thus done he spedde al that hee myghte and come in to Scottlond to kyng arthur that hade rescued kyng hoel of Brittainne. And the Scottes wer goon̄ al fer with Inne Mounref and ther bei abode altil tyme And kyng Arthur poursewed the Scottes and the Scottes for drede fleygh forth in to Almaine^h. And in that lond wer Sexty Illes And in that Countre wer howge fowgles and many Egelles that wer wonede to fighte to gideres and make an howge noyse whanne any straunge men̄ come in to the londe to robbe and distroie the londe or to make ther Inne any werr so criden and maden an houghe noise whene the Soctesⁱ wer y comen in to pe londe ffor the Soctes wer so moche (fol. 25^bb) ravanoures that they lefte no maner thing pat they myght take or fynde in the londe of Almaine and sparede no maner thyng 7 as the Scottes passed pourgh the londe of Aylmoygne thei comaund the peple to kepe the goodes to heme tyl pat bei come a 3en̄ that bei myghte have hem whan̄ that bei come a3ene in to Scotland

²Minuscule c with dot = c.

and wold haue gone to his schippys but wene /Arthur yt
 wyst he tok x M^l knyztys to Codyr pat was Erle of Cornuall
 for to lett 7 stop his company And /harthor hym selfe went
 A3en toward the march of Scotlond ffor Messangers told hym
 pat be Scottys had besegit hoell of Bretayn ther as he lay
 Seke and perfore he hastyd thidyrward And Cadyr pursuyd
 after Chyldryk and toke hyme hor pat he my3th come to his
 schippys and kylllyd Childryke 7 his peppyll And when gador
 had done this viage he hastyd hyme A Sone A3ene as he myth
 toward /Arthur and fond hym in Scotlond per as he had
 Resayvid^a holl in bretoun and make grett news whane folke
 cam to Rob pat londe and werryd as muche as thay mythe
 and so pay dydene for be Scottys weryne so grett Raveners
 pat pay toke all pat they my3t fynd in be lond of lemoygn^b
 wyt out Any Sparyng And ther wyt they charged her folke a
 gayne into Sostlond⁴ for to wend

⁴-l- over -e- by scribe.

Howe kyng Arthure axede of merlyn vp on atyme what
 aduentures the kynges schulle haue þat schalle regne in
 yngelond and how and in what maner the lande scholde
 ende. ¶ Capitulo lxxv^{to}

Sire³ quod merlyn In the 3ere of in Carnacioun of owre
 lorde ihesus Criste² M⁺ CC and xvj 3ere schal come a
 lambe owt of winchestre that schal haue a white thonge^j
 and trewe lipes^k and he schal have wretten in his herte
 holynesse and this lambe schal make many godeshowses^l
 and he schal be in pes al moste al his lyues tyme. And
 hee schal make on̄ of the feirest plases of þe worlde
 that schal not in his tyme be browght to an hende and in
 the ende of his regne astronge wolfe schal come owte of
 ffraunce land and werre vp̄ on̄ hym and do hym moch harme
 and at th ende the lambe schal haue the maystrie þorgh
 helpe and socour of a reed foxe that schal come owt of
 the Northwest and schal ouercome hym and the wolfe schal
 dye in awater and after that tyme the lambe schal lyfe
 but alitil whille. And than̄ schal his seed bee in straunge
 Contre and þane schal the lande be a whille with owten
 pasture^m

And⁴ after hym schal come adragoun medled with mercy and
 with wodneese⁵ that schal haue aberde as a gotte þat
 schal 3eue schadw to England 7 schal keepe the londe from
 colde ande (fol. 26^a) froo hette and he schal sette his
 fotte in wyk and a nothir fotte in london̄ And he schall
 enbrace ther habitaciouns and he schal opene his mouth
 to ward wallys and the tremblynge of the hidour^a of his
 mouthe schal strecche his erys toward many hitaconis^b and
 toward many Contreies and his breep schal be ful swette
 in straunge londe and in his tyme riveres schal renne with

³Red pen-flourishes om. from ornamental blue initial.

⁴Two-line ornamental initial A in blue with red pen-flourishes. ⁵Badly formed o like a

Of Merlyns prophesis

And after this tym shall come a dragoun medelyd wyt mercy
 7 Eke wyt woodnes þat shall haue A berd as a gott þat
 shall 3eve in Englonð sehawe³ schadow and kep the lond
 fro Cold and fro hette And he shall Sett his oone fotte
 in wyke and his opyr fott in london And he shall vn bras^c
 iij habytacionis And he shall opyn⁵ his mothe toward
 walys and yt shall Opyne toward many londys and his breth
 shall be full swette And in his tym shall Ry~~ys~~³ Riuyrs
 Rene wyt

⁵opy- by corr. over erasure.

blod and with brayn̄ and he schal make in diuerse marches of his londe stronge wallis pat schal do moche harme to his seed after his tyme.

Thane¹ schal come apeple owte of þe northe west duryng his regne pat schal be lad and gouerned by aluther^c hare pat the dragoun schal do crowne and make kyng that afterward schal wend ouer the see and neuer schal come a 3ene for dreed of the Dragoun̄ And in the same tyme the sonne schal be as rede as any blod and to mannes sight pourgh owte al the worlde. And that schal be token̄ straunge deep of peple both of men̄ 7 wommen and cristen peple pourgh stroke of swerd 7 the puple than̄ schal be faderles til pat þe dragoun schal dyee pourgh an hare pat schal by gyne to werr vp on̄ hym̄ in the ende of his lyfe And that werre schal nouht be browght to the ende in his tyme And this dragoun̄ schal in his tyme be hoolde most noble of eny man̄ in the worlde and he schal be ded be syde þe marches of straunge lande. And the londe schal be faderles with owten any good pastur and men schulle wepe for his deth froo the Ile of Sheepe^d vn to þe hauene of marcile And the comune songe schal bee thanne among the fader (fol. 26^ab) les childeren and among the peple Allas and so schal the peple synge in the lande pat schal than̄ be distroied

And¹ after this dragoun̄ ther schal come a gott owt Kar^e that schal haue aberde and hornes of seluer And of his nose þrelles schal come a drop̄ that schal be token̄ moch hunger and harme and grette deth among the peple And this Gott schal goo over the see in to ffraunce and werre vp on the flour of life and of deep. And in his tyme ther schal a rise an Eglee in Cornwaile that schal have federes of golde that schal been of pride with owten peer of alle the londe and he schal disspise lordes comen of grette

Fol. 26 ¹Two-line ornamental initial in blue with red pen-flourishes.

blod and breñ And he ~~sh~~⁶ shall make wyt wallys in a
 plasse of land þat shall do much harm to his sede⁷ (fol.
 44^b) Thane shull þer come a pepyll out of the northe west
 duryng his Reigne þat shall be ledd þurch a wyccyd hare
 whan þe king shall be⁸ Crownyd þe kyng þat afterward
 shall goo ouyr the See and com neuyr A gayne for dred of
 de dragoun and in that tym shall the sone shyne⁸ as Red
 as blod þat meñ shall See þourh⁹ all þe world þat betokenyth
 pystolence and grett deth and dynte of Swerd And this
 dragone þurch an[d/e]¹⁰ har þat shall meue wer A 3enst hym
 And this dragone shall be hold þe best body of all þe
 world ~~thureh~~³ And in þe marchis of a strang lond and this
 lond shall be wyt out gouernor And men shull wepe fro þe
 Ile of shippay to þe Ele of Mirtyll And alas shall be þe¹¹
 comon song in this lond 7 much Sorow^{t12} wyt his dethe

Of the prophesies of Merlyne.

And after this dragoun shall come a goot out of car þat
 shall have hornes 7 a berd¹³ of Syluyr And þer shall come
 out of his nosse a dropp þat shall betokenyth much hunger
 7 sorowe and deth of his pepyll This gott shall goo in to
 fraunce and hopyñ^d þe fleur of fraunce And in this tyme
 shall A Rysse þe Egyll out of Cornuall þat shall haue
 fedyrs of gold þe wych of pryd shall haue none peer and
 dispyt lordys of

⁶Almost illegible, but prob. stroked out. ⁷Followed by flourish. ⁸Inserted above by corr.; caret in text.
⁹-h by corr. above; caret in text. ¹⁰-d or -e erased.
¹¹Inserted above by corr. ¹²Superscript t stroked out.
¹³-er- by corr. over erasure.

blood And afterward schal bee made Brugees of folke vp
 on ariuees^f of the see inafelde ordeyned as a scheld and
 in that bataille schal dye manye witty heuedys. And
 therefore pat bataille schal be called batailed^g And
 this Bere schal doo this Gott moch harme. And he schal
 come owt of Sowth west And of his bood. And thanne^h schal
 the Gott lese moche of his land til at the laste
 Schenschipⁱ schal hym ouercome And than he schal gett a
 zene al that euer he hath loste. And moch more ffor the
 peple schal come owt of the Northwest that schal make þe
 Gott sore a drede and than he schal avenge hym þourgh
 councel of ij.owles þat schulle ferst be in perelle to
 be vn do and the olde owles schull wende ouer the see in
 astraunge land and þere he schal dwelle tyl a certeyn
 tyme And after he schal come a 3en (fol. 26^ba) in to
 this londe And þoo ij olde owles schullen do moch harme
 to many aman and thei schulle councel the Goot at make
 werre vp on the forsayd Beer ande at the laste the Goot
 and the owles schullen come to Burtoun vp on trent 7
 þere thei schulle goñ ouer And for dreede the Beere
 schal flee a Swan in his companye to Burtoun to ward þe
 North And ther an howge a Gustorne schal mete hem^j and
 there schal the Swan be slayn be sides his neste with
 mochel sorwe And the Bere schal take 7 bee hyde that
 schal stonde vp on a broode Brigge y broken vp on whom
 the sonne schal caste his beames and after ward many
 aman hym schal seke for vertue And in the mene tyme schal
 dye for sorwe and for mochil harme a peple of hys land so
 that many landes schulle be vp on hyme the more boldere
 And afterwar þoo ij.oweles schule do moche harme to the
 forseyd floure of lyfe And schal brynger^k in to moch
 sorwe wherfore sche schal goñ ouer see into ffraunce and
 make pees be twen þe Gotte and the flour of lyfe. And þer
 sche schal dwelle tyl here seed schal come and seche here
 And there thei schull dwelle bothe tyl the tyme þat þei

name and aftyr he shall be Sllee shamfully be Aber at
 Cauersith And aftyr shall be mad bryggys [of]¹⁴ oppoñ
 costys of the See and stonys shall fall fro castellys and
 many opyr townys shall pleyne And in his tym shall seme
 þat þe ber shall brene and ther shall dy many whyte¹⁵
 hedys werfor þis batayll shall be callyd þe wite¹⁶ batayll
 And þe forsayd ber shall ~~brene~~³ do gret harme to þe goot
 be A pepyll out of þe north west And so they shall counsell
 the gott and þe ber shall com to Burtoun oppoñ trent and
 shall wend ovyr and for dred þe ber shall flee and Swan
 wyt hym in his company toward þe northe² And ther þey
 shall be wyt and hard Schour And þan þe Swan shall be
 slayne wyt much Sorrow and þe ber takyne and behedyd
 (fol. 45^a) Alther ~~nex-his~~¹ next^a his nest þall^b shall
 stond oppoñ A brokyne brig oppon hom þe sone shall cast
 þes² bemys And meny shall hyme seke from vertu þat frome
 hym shall come And in þat same tym shall dy much pepyll
 in this lond for sorowe So þat meny londys shall be so
 bolde vppoñ hym /And aftyrward þe too owlis [þ]³ Sall do
 much harme to many oone in espesiall to þe flour of lyff
 and her put to hir in much dessesse so that she shall
 pass⁴ ouyr þe See in to fraunce for to make pesse by twene
 þe flowr þe lyses^c and þe Gotte and ther Sche shall be⁵
 tyll her Seed shall come and seche her and byd ther tyll
 atyme þey

¹⁴Erased. ¹⁵-h- by corr. above with caret in text; -te
 by corr. over erasure. ¹⁶-e by corr. over erasure.
 Fol. 45 ¹stroked out. ²p- by corr. over erased h-.
³Erased. ⁴Flourish through tails of long ss. ⁵Inserted
 above by corr.; caret in text.

schull Clope hem with grace. And than̄ after warde they
schwlen¹ poo ij owles 7 take hem and doo hem to dispitous
deth And afterward schal the Goott be brought in to moche
sorwe al his lyfe

And¹ after this gott than schalle come owt of Wyndesmor
Aboor that schal have an heed of whitt 7 a lyownes herte
and aspitous lokyng (fol. 26^b) and his visage schal be
reste to sike men and his briest scha^m be staunchyng of
threstⁿ to hem that been a priste^o ande schulle take ther
ofe and his word schal be as gospel and of Berynge he
schal be as meke as a lombe And in the firste 3er of his
regne he schal haue moch disese and iustifie hem that
been nouh trewe and in his tyme this land schal be
multiplied with aliens 7 with straungers And this Boor
pourgh sternesse of herte schal make wolues as meke as
anye lambes And he schal be called pourgh al the world
the Boor of holynesse and of fersnesse and of goodnesse
and of mekenesse and al maner thyng that hee wole haue
doñ schal be doñ vp on right and resoun vn to the bourgh
of Ierusalem. And he schal whett his teth vp^p be gates
of paris And al so he schal be holde vp on ffoure landes
Spaigne schal tremele for drede of hym Gascoigne schal
swette And in ffraunce he schal sette his on wynge And
grett taille schal dwelle in Englonde in reste and in pees
and Almoygne schal quake for drede of hym. And this Boor
schal 3eue mantelles vn to ij Touñes of Englonde And
afterward he schal make be ryver renne with blood and
withe Brayne. And he schal make many a medwe reede and
he schal gette as moch lande ar he dye as dede any of his
auncestres and ar he be ded he schal beere iij Crownes
And he schal bryng a londe in to moch subieccioun And
aftir ward that lond schal be amendid but nowght durynge
his tyme And pis Boor for his douhtinesse after his dep
(fol. 27^a) schal be entered at Coloigne And this land
pañ schal be fulfelled with al maner goodnesse

shall cloþ hym wyt grace And þay shull put þe owlys to
 dyspoutus deth And aftyr shull þis Goot lyve in much
 anguyssh and dyssesse all his lyve 7 aftyr þat put to
 dethe

Of melyn's prophesies

And aftyr this goot shall come A ber out of wensor þat
 shall be callyd [7]³ þe fayrest 7 þe most mercyabyll of
 prynce borne And he shall correc hym þat bene nott trew
 And in this tyme shall [.]⁶ þis lond be wyt Alyons And
 this ber shall make wolwys by come lambys And he shall be
 callyd þourh⁷ out þe world Bore of holynes 7 of nobely of
 fresnes of mercy And he⁸ shall to do messurabyly^d all þat
 euyr he hathe to done in to þe Burch of Ierusalem And he
 shall wett his tothis^e of þe 3atys of ~~p~~rewys¹ perrys
 Spayne shall trymbyll for dredd or of hym Gaskoyne shall
 quake but his tayll shall Rest in Englund Almayn shull
 quake for dred of hym And he shall mak Ryuyrs Rene wyt
 blod and wyth⁹ brane þat he shall make many medews Red
 And gett as much¹⁰ has his hansatres ded be for hym And
 or þat he be ded he shall wer iij Crownys and he shall put
 0 lande in subyeccyoune and aftyr hyt shall be Rewlyd but
 nat in his tyme And for his dowttynes he shall be enteryd
 at Colyn And þan his lond sull be fulfyllyd wyt all maner
 good

⁶Letter stroked out and erased. ⁷-h by corr. above; caret
 in text. ⁸Inserted above. ⁹-h added by corr. ¹⁰MS. has
 6 minims for mu-.

And¹ after this bore schal come alamb that hath fette of leed and heed of Bras and herte of alop^a and a Swynes skyn and schal be a herde best in his tyme his land schal be in pees and in reste And in þe ferste 3ere of his regne he schal fownde a Citte and the name ther ofe schal sprynge thoruh owt al the worlde And the lamb in his tyme schal lese moch of his lande and þat schal be þourgh an hedows wolfe and afterward he schal gette a3ein And þane 3eue hit to an Eggle of his land And þane schal the Egle gouerne the land ful well tyl the tyme that pride schal ouer come hym Allas the sorwe for he schal be ded þourgh his brotheris deth with swerd And thañ schal the londe tourne a 3ein to the forseid lamb Andthane schal the lamb gouerne the land in pees al his lyves tyme. And afterward þe lambe schal dye and thañ schal the lond be fulfelled with al good And¹ after this lamb schal come a moldwarpe^b cursed of godes mouth a kaityf a coward as an hare^c and hee schal haue an oldelich^d skyn as a gott and veingaunce schal falle vp on hym for cause of synne And in the ferste 3er of his regne he schal haue multiplicacioun of alle good in his land and schal be moche preised til the tyme that he schal soffre his peple to haue to moch pride withowten schastei3yng and ther for al myghty god wylle be greued And thañ schal a dragoun come 7 arise owt of þe North þat schal be feers and felle and by gyn to werre vp on the molde warp ande schal come and 3ef hym bataille vpon (fol. 27^ab) astoun And this dragoun schal take in to his company a wolfe that schal come owte of the Weste and straungly schal² were vp on the forsayd Moldewarpe in his halfe Andthane schal he and the dragoun bynd her ij tailles to gider. And thañ schal come alyoun owt of Irland and schal come to her company And thañ schal the land tremele as an Aspenlefe^e for drede that es Englond And in

Fol. 27 ¹Two-line ornamental initial in blue with red pen-flourishes. ²1 inserted above in lighter ink.

And after this Boor shall come A lambe þat shall haue fett
 of led 7 hed of Bras and hart of A lopp A Swynis Skyn and
 herd And in his tyme shall þe lond be in pesse (fol. 45^b)
 And in þe fyrst 3er of his Reygne he shall do make A Cite
 þat all þe worle shall speke þer of and this lambe shall
 lesse in his tyme a grett part of his lond þour And hidous
 wolfe but he shall Recouyr yt A 3ene And he shall take his
 lordschip to Anegyll of his londe And Egyll shall gouern
 well and worthely vn to þe tyme þat pryd shall hym ovrcome
 and he shall dy thorw his brothirs Swerd And after þat
 shall his lond be in pesse 7 after he shall dy And þe lond
 be fulfyllyd of All maner good

Of Merlys prophesies

And after þis lond shall come a Moldwarp a corsyd wyt godys
 mouthe a caytif A coward and har and he shall haue A
 neldrysse Skyne as A goot And wengans shall come vppon hym
 for Syne þat shall be vsyd And his lond shall be fulfyllyd
 wyt all maner goodnes vn to the tym þat he s[.]all¹¹ suffyr
 his pepyll leff in grett pryd wyt out Chastesyng in grett
 dysplesance to god And ther in wengaunce a dragoun shall
 come owt of northe and meue wer a3ens þe sayd Molwarp
 oppon A stone And þis dragone shall gadyr in to his company
 a wolf þat shall come out of þe west and so shall þe
 dragoun bynd her taylis to gyddyr Than shall come Alyone
 of out of Irlonde þat shall fall in Company wyt hym And
 þan shall trymbyll þe lond þat þan shall be callyd Inglond
 and in

¹¹Letter obliterated.

that same tyme Castelles schal falle a downe vp on Thamys
 Ande Severne schal seme dreye for the deed menes bones
 that schulle falle þer in And the iiij principale wateres
 of England schulle renne al blood And moche drede and
 Angwissh schal þat tyme a risse and bee in the land and
 þan schal the molde warpe fle for drede. And the dragoun
 ⁊ the lyoun and the wolfe schal drive hym away and thane
 thei schulle haue the land And than schal the moldewarpe
 have no power but a schip wherto he may than take And
 afterward þane he schal goon vp on the land atte ebbe of
 the see. And after ward he schal 3eue the thride parte
 of his land for to haue the fourthe part in reste and in
 pees. And afterwarde he schal lyve in tribulacioun and
 in sorwe al hys lyves tyme. And in his tyme the hote
 Bathes scha be come colde. And afterward the moldwarp
 schal dye aduutureslich^f and sodenlych Allas the sorwe
 for he schal be drenched in the flood of the see. And
 þanne schal his seed be fer faderles in straunge Countre
 for euer more. (fol. 27^ba) Thane schal the londe be de
 parted vn to thre parties that es to the wolfe to thee
 dragoun and to the lyoun and so hit schal bee for euermore
 And than schal this lande be called the lond of conquest
 ⁊ in this maner the rightful heyres of England schulle
 ende.

How kyng Arthur ouer toke Guillomer that was kyng of
 Irland ⁊ ouer come hym And how the Scottes be cam his
 men and dede to hym ffeautee and homage Capitulo lxxvj^o

Whanne Guillomer that was kyng of Irland herde telle that
 kynge Arthure was at Glastenbury Anon hee assembled an
 howge power of Ireshmen an wente to the see and come in
 to Scotland and so come and asspiede where þat kyng
 Arthur lay with his men. And whanne kyng Arthur herde that
 he was come in to that Countre Anon he come and 3afe hym

that tym shall many castellys fall be Thamys blanke^f And
 it shall seme þat Severyn shall be dry wyt þe bodyis þat
 shall fall þer in The iiij cheff flothis of Englonð shall
 Rene wyt blod and Brayn And þe Moldworp shall fle for dred
 And þe dragon þe lyoun and þe wolfe shall drue hym out of
 þe londe and þe Moldwrpp^g shall haue none pour saue honly
 A schip wer to he shall wend And he shall go to lond wene¹
 whene þe See ys dry and come a3en And 3if þe þird part of
 his lond to haue þe iiij part in pesse And aftyr¹² he
 (fol. 46^a) shall lyue in Sorrowe /all his lyve tyme shall
 þe bathis by come cold And aftyr þe moldwarpe shall dy
 Awentoursly in a flod in þe See his See^a shall be come
 fadyrles in strang lond for euyrmor and þan shall þe
 londe¹ be þepartyd^b in iij partyis to þe wolf to þe dragoun
 And to þe lyoun and so shall yt be for euyr And þan shall
 þis lond be callyd þe lond of conquest And so shall þe
 rythfull heys of Englonð

Howe kyng Arthur discomfetid Guyllimore þe kyng of Irland

And whene /Guyllomore² kyng of Irlond hard þat kyng
Ar /thur was A Ryvid att Glassynbury he hordynyð A grett
 pour of Irssysmeñ and come in to Sotlond and A Rivid fast
 by ther as kyng /Arthur whas ? Arthur gaff hym

¹²Superscript -r. Fol. 46 ¹Inserted above by (?) scribe;
 caret in text. ²Superscript -u- by scribe.

bataile And a non ouer come hym And whenne Guilomer saw that he was discounfited he ffley ffor drede and wente in to Irland And his men̄ with hym þat were lefte a lyue that tyme whan this bataille was done kyng Arthur tournede a 3ein to his ooste that he hade ordeynede to kepe the Scottes. And kyng Arthur thowghte to haue quelled the Scottes euerichon̄ that he myghte have takee and distroied al the lond for euermore But Bisschops Abattes and men of religioun̄ come to hym barefot and hopen hedded any many other men of Religioun̄ and al so many ladies of thee lande comen discheuolde be fore þe³ kyng Arthur and prayde hym of mercy and grace. And sayde to hym Sire gentil kyng myghty and gracious have vp^g vs mercy and grace as 3e be holden̄ to mayntene þe lawe and al so cristen dome And (fol. 27^b) And sire gentyl kyng hit were dishonoure to 3ow to quelle hem or distroie that leue vp on god as 3e don̄ And Sire gentil kyng have pitte and mercy vp on ws. And graunt ws oure lyvis for the Saxsouns ofte tymes have doon̄ ws moche sorwe And woo ffor ofte tymes they haue goon̄ poruh owtte⁴ owr⁵ londe with owten owre deserwyng 7 have don̄ ws moch sorwe ffor they haue taken̄ owre Tounes and Castelles ande take owre bestes and quelled heme and eten heme and taken owr goodes ande lede hem a way And if 3e wille nowe slee ws therto hit wer no worchip to sweche a gracious kyng as 3e been̄ And ther fore for the loue of god haue vp on vs mercy and petee and lette vs lyve ffor hit es nowght to 3ow that 3e have vs y ouercome. whan̄ kyng Arthur saw þe sorwe that they made he hade of hem pitte and graunted hem bothe lyf an leme And a non̄ alle thei fil a downe and be come his lige men and kyng Arthuree nome of heme feaute and homage And whan̄ this was don̄ kyng Artur nome and torned hoome a 3eine with ooste^h

³Inserted above by scribe. ⁴-tt- over -re- by corr.
⁵In right margin of col. by corr.

batayll and dyscomfyt hym And /Guyllomer fled a3ene in to
 Irlond And Arthur turnyd hym A 3en þer þe Scottys was and
 wold haue slayne hyme but þe bysshoppys And oþyr good
 pepyll comēñ done And submetthem^c to his grasse and Cryd
 hym mercy And sayd we haue had mucche sorow and car of þe
 bretayns And syr thay sayd we wyll be Crystenyd And fyll
 doune vn to his fette And he toke of hyme homagys 7
 fealte And turnyd a3en wher þe Sottys^d wer and gaff þem
 batayll but þey wold nott Abyde And thane he went

to 3orke and dwelled ther duryng that Viage And Arthure
 3af al that Contre to loth þat hade spowsed hys Sisterr
 and many other grette 3efftes And in that tyme Gaweyn
 that was his nevewe but of Ageeⁱ þo was þer Ande kyng
 Arthur nobly auaunsede alle his men⁶ that hade helped
 hym in his viage and in his were and thanked heme moche
 of here grett travaille and of her servise

How kyng Arthure spowsede Gonnore that was Cosyn to Cador
 þat was Erke of Cornwayle And howe kyng Arthure afterward
 ordeynede an howge pouere and thowght to goon̄ (fol. 28^a)
 in to Irland to conquere the lande of Guillomere that was
 kyng of the land and ouercome Guillomer and hade al þe
 land Capitulo lxxvij^o

Whane kyng Arthur hade brouht al his land in reste And in
 pees in Eche Contre abowte hym̄ Thoo he wente and spowsed
 a wife that men callede Gonnore that was Cosyn to Cador
 Erle of Cornwayele and made here qwen̄ of the lande And
 sche was a faire lady bothe gentil and Corneys. And Cador
 þe Erle hade done Norissshed here in his Chamber among
 other gentil damyselles for enchesoun̄ that sche was Cosyn
 to hym And kyng Arthur and sche hade neuer Childe to
 gideres. And natheles kynge Arthur louede here moche And
 sette be her grett pris^a And whan̄ the tyme of winter was
 gon̄ he lette assemble alle his Erles and Barounes and
 moch of othir peplee and sayde to heme that he wolde goo
 in to Irland to weere vp on kynge Guillomer and gette the
 land And he dwelled nouht longe there after that he ne
 wente ouer the see And come in to Irland Whanne Guillomer
 the kyng herde telle that kyng Arthur was come in to his
 land at werre vp on hym he assembled an howge peple of
 his men̄ and come and 3afe battaille to kyng Arthure and

⁶Badly formed e like o.

to yorke and Awavncyd³ his meñ and gaff hem gefftys and
thankyd hem mucche of þeyr good serwysse

Howe kyng Artur discomfetid Guyllimer

And when /Arthur had bruoth⁴ his lond in pesse 7 rest was
in euyry contre he weddyd A waff^e þat callyd Guynore a
fayr lady and gentyll cosyñ to Cadur Erle of Cornuall And
when þis was done /Arthur went⁵ hym A Semlyd a gret host
and sayd he wold go in to Irlond to conquer it⁶ And
/Guyllimore hering þat⁷ he lett A Semblyd a gret host for
to 3if batayll to hym but

³-y- over -y- by corr. ⁴Superscript -o- with misplaced
caret in text. ⁵By corr., prob. over erasure. ⁶Vertical
line separates conquer from it. ⁷Inserted above; caret
in text.

was a non̄ discounfited and alle his men̄ And thoo come kyng Guillomer and 3oolde hym to kyng Arthur and be come his man and dede to hym feavte and homage and helde the lande euermore afterward of kyng Arthur And kyng Arthur wente pens to conquere Gutland And Ike lande^b and toke feaute and homage of alle (fol. 28^ab) men. And þoo come he a 3ene and dwelled in his awne lond xij 3ere in reeste and in pees And werred vp on no man ne no man vp on hym And afterward kyng Arthur be cam so gentyl and so curteys to alle maner of men And helde so grette an howsolde so that men saide that þer nas the Emperour of Roome no no man̄ lyvinge in the worlde þat helde so howge a retenew as ded kyng Arthur Ande for enchesoun of his hardynesse and of his goodnesse the beste knyghtes of þe worlde come and dwelled with kyng Arthur And alle maner of men that come to hym were vnderfonged with moch honour And alle the kyghtes that he hade with hym were al so goode and hardy so that no man kowth hym discroie^c which of hem were beest And for enchesoun ther offe kyng Arthur lette make for heme the round table ffor enchesoun whan̄ they schulle Sitte at mete euery man scholde sitte like heyghie and alle been served lyke wel So that no man of hem scholde make his boost that euerich of hem was heygher þan̄ oper. And at that table Satte knyghtes Brittoun̄s ffrenche men Normannes fflemynge Burganers Mauncers Ioberuz^d and of alle the landes of this halfe the Mount of Gorth^e And al so þer wer of his owne lande that es to saye of mechel Brittagne And al so of Cornwaille and of walles and of Irland of Scotland and of alle landes he hade knyghtes with hym þat wolde abide And assaie aduentures and honour of Chivalrie come to kyng (fol. 28^ba) Arthures Courte And were I vnderfonged with mochil honour

Howe kyng Arthure Come in to ffraunce And ffauht withe ffrolle that was a Romain and quelled hym with his handes

/Guvllimer was dyscomfyd and 3eld hym̄ to hym And held all his lond of (fol. 46^b) of þe kyng /Arthur euyr mor aftyr And þan kyng /Arthure conquerd Gutlond an Many moo londys and dwellyn in Rest and pesse þan long tyme And wene he held So honourable an houshold þat all þe world spake þer of and many worthi kyngys come in to his Cuntre So þat he mad þe Rowne tabyll and sett hem at her mett so þat none shall Sett hyer þan othir and so þey come on to his owne Contre⁸ from all londys

How Arthur went to conquere ffraunce

⁸-r- over -e- by scribe.

Capitulo lxxviiij^o

And afterward hit fille that Arthur thourgh counsell of his lordes wolde goo in to ffraunce and conquere the land and men callede the countre that tyme Galle thourgh te Romaines that hade þat tyme al the londe in here power and lordschipe And the Emperour of Rome and the Roomayns hade y take the land of ffraunce to kepe and to gouerne to amyghty knyght of body 7 of good þat me called ffrolle And so whan̄ frolle herde telle howe þat kyng Arthur of Brittainye come to conquere the londe ffrolle assembled anon̄ an howge power and astrong oost And come and 3aff battaile to kyng Arthur And at the laste frolle and his company were discounfited And ffrolle fledde in to paris a non̄ 7 comaunded to schette faste the Gattes And kyng Arthur come and be seged the Toune And the Citte was soo stronge and so wel appareilled And so they that were in the Citte manlich¹ defended the Citte so that kyng arthur myght nought longe tyme Segee the Citte And dwelled there mor than̄ a monethe with his men. And ther was so moche peple in the Citte So that they hade al moste dispended here vittailles And hade amonges heme grete defawte of mete. And moche peple of heme deidee for hunger And so att the laste manye of the greet men of the Citte come to ffrolle that was her Cheueteyn̄ Ande praide hym goo and acorde with kyng Arthur And make With hym pees And if (fol. 28^b) he wolde nouhte acorde with hym thei wolde 3elde the Citte to hym. whan̄ ffrolle sawhe that he myght nowht halde the Citte a 3ens her wille And helde hym selfe abolde man 7 astrong and troste moche vp on his myght And anon̄ sente to kyng Arthur and seyde that he wolde for the londe of fraunce fighte with hym a lone and in swech maner thei scholde departe the londe be twen hem And kyng Arthur anon̄ graunted ther to 7 wolde nouhte soffre

And hit be fyll A pone⁹ atyme þat kyng /Arthur þurh
 concell of his lordys shuld⁷ to go to conquer all france
 of þe wyche /ffrolles A Romain was warden of worthy knyzt
 And he hard wane /Arthur was come [...] ¹⁰ hordynyth a grett
 pour to fythe wyt Arthur And he and his folke wer dyscomfyt
 and fled to peryss[.s] ¹¹ and held hem ther And /Arthur
 hym porsuyd 7 besegyð hem but þe Cite was sso Strong and
 so well A rayd þat he my3th not wen the towne ne sped And
 þer so much pepyll in þe Cite þat þay had spent all most
 All her vitayll and grett hunger come Amog^f hem þat þay
 deyð wondyr thike And þe contre prayd to þe kyng /frolles
 to be Accordyd wyt kyng /Arthur And so /froll/ say þat he
 my3te no lenger endur And trust much vppon his howne
 strenthe And send to /Arthor þat 7¹² he wyll fy3t wyt
 hym¹² body for body^g 7 so shull fraunce by þem partyd^h
 by twen hem A¹³ The kyng /Arthur anone grauntyd yt And
 wold lett

⁹Badly formed -o- like a. ¹⁰One or two letters erased.
¹¹Erasure. ¹²Inserted above by corr.; caret in text.
¹³Stroked out.

non̄ of his knyghtes to do that bataile for hym but him
 selfe alone. And vp on the moren they come bothe be fore
 paris And longe tyme they fawght to gyderes So that non̄
 kowthe deeme wyche of hem hadde þe better And at the last
 ffrolle 3af kyng Arthur sweche astroke that almost hee
 knelled to the ground And as ffrolle nome to hym his swerde
 with that stroke he hurte kyng Arthur in the felde^f Soo
 that the blod fill adowne be his eyen and ouer his face.
 And whan̄ kyng Arthur saw that he was hurte and saw his
 bloode he sterte vp as a wood man and nome in his hande
 Taberne^g his swerde And 3aff ffrolle swech astroke that
 he cleft heede and schulder adoun̄ to the briste So that
 his helme myght nowght save hym̄ And a non̄ hee fil a downe
 ded in the same place Ande whanne they of the Citte sawe
 þat ffrolle was ded they made moch sorwe and come and
 3elded the Citte to kyng Arthur and dede hyme feavte 7
 homage And bi come his men. And kynge Arthur toke of hem
 good hostages 7 þoo wente kyng Arthur ferder ande (fol.
 29^aa) conquerde Angoun Aungers Gascoigne Phieto Nauerne
 Burgonye Brep Ioherne Turny and phetters and gate alle
 thee londes of ffraunce. And whan̄ he hade conquered ale
 the londes And taken of hem feautes and homages torned a
 3en to paris and duelled ther Inne longe tyme 7 made
 thourgh owt al the lande of ffraunce reste and pees. And
 whan̄ he hade so y don̄ that no man durste make were a
 3ens hym ne contake he abode ther stille in fraunce ix
 3ere in reste and in pees. And dede in þe londe of fraunce
 many wondirful dedis of armes And he made prowde men bothe
 mylde and lowe and felouns 7 wikkede men he schastizede
 hem as they worpi^a

How Arthur awauncede hem alle that trauailed^b with hym
 and halpe hyme in his werre Capitulo lxxix.^o

none vndyrtake for þe batayll for hym And smote¹⁴ feirsly
 togidyrs And so well þay fau3thyn þat no mañ knew þe
 bettyr but yt be fyll /Arthur had such a stroke þat he
 fyll to þe grond and blod Ron doune hisASSE And /Arthur
 Anone stert vp when he felt hym horte And wyt his Swerd
 gaff /ffrolles suche A stroke þat he cleft hym downe to
 þe (fol. 47^a) Schulders and so he fyll done ded And they
 wyt in þe Cite 3eld vp the Cytte and ded feaute 7 homag
 to kyng /Arthur and by come his¹ his men And /Arthur went
 forth and conquerd meny londys abou3te 7 toke homagys 7
 fyautys and turnyd A3ene to pereysse and toke all þe
 contre about 7 was in pesse many day so þat nomañ durst
 werr a3ens hym And he dwellyd in fraunce xj 3er for to
 Sett þe lond in pesse 7 rest and s^a Chastysyd terauntys
 aftyr þeir deservyng

And² aftyrward hyt be fyll thus þat harthur held A gret
 fest

¹⁴-te by corr. over erasure. Fol. 47 ¹Stroked out.
²Three-line blue initial.

And thus hit be fille þer afterward at Ester that kyng
 Arthure helde at Paris a rial feste amonges heme that had
 holpen hem in his viage and in his werre. And how he
 Auauncede his knyghtes fferst he 3af to his Stward þat
 men callede kay Agoun and Angers. And to Bydewere his
 Boteler he 3af Normandie that was tho called Neustrie
 And he 3af to hosden^{1c} his schamberleyn fflaundres and
 Maunte. And he 3af to Dorell his Cosyn Bolloigne And to
 Richard his Neuoue pountesse and 3af to alle his men many
 Tounes and landes and Auaunced hem hougely euery man
 after his Astate whane kyng Arthur hade auawnced alle his
 mene at the monthe of Aprill that come nexst after he
 come a 3ene in to Brittaigne his owne lande And at the
 feste of wutsontyde that come nexte after þourh Councel
 of his lordes he wolde be crowned kyng of Glomiergoun²
 And lette ordeygne a solemene feste. And lett warne kynges
 Ereles Barouns and alle oþer (fol. 29^ab) lordes that helde
 of hym to come to that Solempnite. And theder come Skater
 kyng of Scottlond And Cador kyng of Southwales and kyng
 Guillomer kyng of North wales And made kyng of Irland^d
 And malganus kyng of Guttland And Achilles kyng of Irland^e
 And Aloth kyng of denmarke and Gonewas kyng of Norewey 7
 hoel his Cosyn kyng of Dorkeney Ande Cador kyng of litel
 Brittainne And Merewith Eerle of Cornuaille And Mawran
 Erle of Gloucestre and Gueredoun Eerle of wynchestre And
 Boell Eerle of hereforde And vrtgy Eerle of Oxenforde
 And Cursale Erele of Bathe And Ionas Erle of Schestre and
 kymar Eerle of Salesbury And Ingerne Erele of Chechestre
 And Aral Erle of Leycestre And al so the Erle of warewyke
 and many other grett lordes And al so ther were there
 many of Brittounes that es to Seye Dipoun Donand Genu3
 and many other childeren þat been nouht nempned at this
 tyme And many grette festes kyng Arthur hade made by fore

Fol. 29 ¹Long s used. ²-mi-: MS. has 4 minims.

and A wancyd all his kny3tys after þat þey wer of A Statt
 And to /kay/ his steward he 3aff Aungeñ 7 Aungers And to
 /bedwer his botler And gaff /Normandy and to holdeñ his
 chambyrlayne he gaff flandors and to /Dorell his Cossyne
 he gaff bolayne And to Rychard hys newove he gaff pountyf
 And he diffeffyd^b heuyry mañ after þat þey wer of degre
 And in this same tyme he was Crownyd kyng of Glommorgoñ
 7 let hold A Solemphe feste And let somoun many dukys
 Erles and barons And ther was schatyr kyng of Sotlond^c
 Gyllomer kyng of notrh³ walis Madded kyng of Irlond
 Malgamus of Gutlond Athylles kyng of Island Aloch kyng of
 Denmark Goune was kyng of norway And hoyll his Cossyn
 kyng of Dorkeney Cador kyng of lityll Bretayn Morwyth
 Erle of Cornuell Mauran Erle of Gloucester Guerdoun Erle
 of wyncester brell Erle of herford And many opir⁴ Erlys
 and barons and opyr pepyll many ooñ

³Superscript -r- misplaced. ⁴yr abbreviation-mark above
 -p-.

that tyme but neuer non³ sweche ffor that feste lasted
xv.daies with moch solempnite 7 honour.

Of the proude letter þat the Romaynes sende to kyng Arthur
Capitulo lxxx⁰

And vp on the þredde day as kyng Arthur satte at the
ffeste among alle his lordes there come xij menne fro rome
tha wer men of Age ande welle appareyled And come and
salude^f kyng Arthur and to hym they sayde þat they were
messangers Sent frome Rome fro the Emperour And toke
kyng Arthur a letter that was thus moch to vndirstande
Arthur ws merwayle grettly that þou Arte so hardy with
eygen⁴ (fol. 29^ba) in thyn heede^g to make open werr with
vs of Roome that have al the worlde at gouerne and to
deme ffor þou hast nouht 3iet proued thy myghte ne the
strengthe of Roomaynes. And ther fore þou schal assaye
with Inne litel tyme ffor Iulius Ceiser owre ij.
predecessour^h conquerde and helde al brittayne and longe
tyme hade þe lande and ther of receyved trewage 7 now þou
with thi pride with holdes hit 7 þefore we comaunde the
that þou paie þat truage as þou wilt haue þi lyfe. And
al so ferþermor þou hast don a gret folye for the in as
moch as þou quelled a Baroun and aworthi lorde on that
highte ffrolle that was our wardeyn lieu tennant of
ffraunce falslych and treiterowslych And therefore alle
þe lordes 7 comenes of ffraunceⁱ comaundeþ the 7 warneth
þe þat þou hastely be at Rome vp on thy lyfe and lyme to
make amendes of thi trespas that þou hast don to vs And
if hit be soo þat þou come nouhgt to vs we schal come
with oure pouere to seke the where euer that þou myghte
be founden And þou schalt nouht haue a foote of lond that
we ne hit schal take froo the See^j and afterwarde take

³By corr. over erasure.
of column.

⁴By scribe outside right margin

And this fest was hold xv dayis wyt much honur and worschip

And⁵ kyng Arthur satt at his mett his kny3tys 7 his lege
meñ ther com in x heldermeñ of Rome in Message from þe
Emperour of Rome and toke Arthur A letter þat was thusse⁶
much to vndyrstond Gretly vs marweld Arthur þat þou hart
So hardy wyt eyen[d]⁷ in thi hed to mak opyn wer 7 conteke
A 3ens vs of Rome þat owyn all þe world (fol. 47^b) to deme
And þou hast not prouyd owr strenth but þou shalte in tyme
to come for we woll haue the conquer 7 haue the truage þat
Iulius sezar had conquerd þe wych þou wytholdyst wrongfully
And 3et hast þou more done þou hast Slayne our kny3the
ffrolles And ther for þe comens A Rome comand⁸ þe vppoñ
þe peyne of thy lyff and lym þat þou Amen thi mesdedys and
trespas þat þou hast done to vs at Rome And we shall come
oveir þe mont of Ioye 7 seke the wher souer þou mayst be
fond and we shull dystroy the and thy londys Also

⁵Two-line blue initial. ⁶th- by corr. over erasure.
⁷-d erased. ⁸n abbreviation-mark above -o-.

thy body and do with al what vs goode lyketh whan this letter was radd ande alle the men in the kynges howsolde herde this letter they wer full Angrye and evell apayde. And anone þey wolde have quelled the messengeres. And kyng Arthur for beed hem Ande seyde to heme in this maner Beau syrres^k messengeres 3e mowe none harme haue ne non disserue for her message But kyng Arthur a non co (fol. 29^b) nē^l comaunded to sette hem to the mette and serue heme with mochel honour 7 whā kyng Arthur hade eeten he tokee counsel amonges his lordes and knyghtes dukes Eerles and Barouns and axede what Ansewer he myghte 3eue to þe messangers And alle the lordes counselde hym that he scholde anon lette assemble alle the landes that he hadde of power and lordeschip and ordeyned hym astrong hooste and goo and avenge hym vp on þe Emperour for enchesoun that he hadde y sente to hym swech a spitful letter And alle the loredes seyde an swor be al myghty god and be his holy names þat þey wolde goon with hym and helpe hym to be avenged vp on the Emperour of Rome and brene hym and distroye heme if that they myghte And alle the lordes seyde that þey nolde nouht faill hym by day nothir by nyght and rather they wolde suffre deth than forsake hym for any thing And a non they nome and let writte a lettre and sente by the same messengeres to the Emperour of Rome and þe lettre was as moche to vndirstand as ffolweth after

Of the bolde Answer þat kyng Arthur sente to the Emperour of Rome and to the Roomaynes be the same messengeres
Capitulo iiij^{xx} I^o

Understande 3e amonges 3ou of Rome þat I am kyng Arthur of Britaigne Ande freschly^m holde that land and schal holde And y do 3ou to vndirstande that y schal be hastylich att Roome nouhte for to paye swech truage as

/And when this lettyr was vndyrstond by [kyng]⁹ kyng /hartur
 and all þat odyr meñ at þat Riall fest þey wold haue slayne
 þe messenger but kyng /Artur wold nott soffyr it but mad
 hym to be worschipfully Seruyd and gaff hym gret 3eftys
 And aftyr mett þey toke consell what was best for to done
 And wat hanswer[d]⁷ þe myzt Send And so þey concell hym
 þat he shall Semlyd A gret hoste and manly to weng hym
 vppon the Emperour of Rome by the same messenger in this
 maner

Howe kyng Arthure wold pay no truage to Rome

Understond ye¹⁰ Amongis 3oue of Rome þat I [h]am¹¹ kyng
/Arthur of brytayne 7 frely hit hold 7 shall 7 at Rome I
 Shall bene in Schort tyme not for to pay 3ou trewag

⁹Erased. ¹⁰y- by corr. over erasure. ¹¹h- erased.

3e Axen̄ to Roome But for to Axe of 3ou trewage for
 Constantyn̄ that was Elenes son̄e þat was Emperour of Rome
 And of al þe lorchipⁿ that þerto per̄teyneþ of maxmyan⁵⁰
 that was kyng of Brittain̄e þat conquered al ffraunce an
 Almoyg (fol. 30^a) ne and lombardye and these ij lordes
 were myn Auncestres. And al that þei hade an helde y
 wille have 7 holde þough goddes grace.

Of the gret honour that kyng Arthur deed to the
 messangeres that come fro the Emperour of Roome Capitulo
 iiij^{xx} secundo

Whan̄ the letter was made and enselled kyng Arthur nome
 and toke hit to the messangers and 3af heme grette 3eftes
 and many and they thanked the kyng and nome her leue and
 wente fforth and come to Rome and tolde the Emperour how
 rially they fonde kyng Arthur at his mete And howe feire
 they were vndirfonged wip mochel honour And tolde the
 Emperour which afayre mayne kyng Arthur hade with hym of
 kynges dwkes Ereles and Barouns that wer alle at his
 retenewe And sayde to the Emperour that kyng Arthur helde
 an howger howsolde than̄ dede the Emperoure hym selfe or
 any lorde of the londe or of the worlde whan̄ thee Emperour
 sawh the letter And wiste what hit mente and saw that
 Arthur wolde nouht do his comaundement ne be gouerned be
 hym no be his Romaines A non̄ he lette assemble an howg
 Oost And thought to distroie kyng Arthur if he myghte.
 And kyng Arthur inthee mene tyme ordeyned and assembledde
 his peple And spede hym in al þat he myghte. And al so þe
 knyghtes of þe rounde table.

Of knyghtes and lordes that comen with here retenue to
 helpe kyng Arthur a 3ens the Emperour of Rome 7 his

⁵Line division betw. x and m.

but for to axe of 3ou truage for /constantyne þat was /Elyne
 Son som tym Emperour of Rome And also Maximiam And we shull
 passe the monte of Ioy and conquer þat myn Auncestirs had
 be for me

When⁵ this lettyr was in celyd kyng /harthur gaff grett
 3eftys to þe messenger and þay toke her leve and went to
 þe contray of Rome And told þe Emperour how worthely thay
 wer Seruyd and vndyrfong and wat Ryall company he had to
 serue hym and how Ryally he was Seruyd þer was none Crystyn
 Soo Ryally Serwyd And whene þe Emperour saue þat /Arthur
 wold not be Rewlyd Aftytr hyme he Assem (fol. 48^a) lyd a
 gret host to dystroy /Arthor 3eff þat he myzte and kyng
 Arthur hordynynd in his party

Romaynes Capitulo iiij^{xx} iiij^o

The kyng of Scotlond and the kyng of Irland And the kyng of denmarke And þe kyng of Almoygne eche of hem hade $xx^{M\pm}$ men the kyng of Normondye and the kyng of Gascoygne off fflaundres and of phithon^b and of Boloign⁻ (fol. 30^ab) foure score M^{\pm} and Geryn of Chatreis browghte $x^{M^{\pm}}$ men. And kyng arthur broughte of his owne men and his retenue $xl^{M^{\pm}}$ men of Armes. And he hade of Archeres and Arwblasteres^c and of fotte men so many that no man kowþ hem noumber. And whan alle wer reedy kyng Arthur nome 7 tok his wif Gonnore and al his land to his Newewe þat men called Mordrede to warde an to kepe that was a bolde knyght and an hardy and a wis but atte laste he was false and vntrewe as afterward 3e schal her And so this Mordrede hade al the land at his wille and dede ther with al maner thing that hym likede and was owt take no more but the Croune^d. Ande kyng Arthur nome his peple and wente to Southamtoun and thedir were the Schippis I brought for hym and for his company And wane alle men were assembled they wente in to her Chippes and sailled forþe and hade wynd and wedir att wille and come and arived at Barfleu and as fast as they myght thei come out of hir Schippes and sprade^e al the contrey abowte hem

How kyng Arthur come and ffaught with a Geaunt in Spaigne þat men called Dinabus þat for lay^f Elen þat was nece to kyng hoel of Brittaigne Capitulo iiij^{xx} iiij^o

And kyng Arthur hade dwelled but alityl whille in Spaigne that men come to hym and saide here^g was come in to Spayn a Geaunt that hade ravached and slayn Elene a fayre damysele that was Cosyn^h (fol. 30^ba) to kyng hoel of Brettaigne And he hadde take the damysel and broughterⁱ vp vn to an hill that es Called the Mounte of Seynt

in all þat he my3te

The¹ kyng of Sotlond of Irlond of Gutlond of Denmark and
 of allmayne euyry of hem had x M¹ meñ in þe best A Ray
 And thay of normandy gasgoun And Gyane flanders peccardy
 and bullene had vij^{xx} M¹ and moo and holle of bretayne
 had xij Mill And euyry kyng duke and Erle had a Sertayne
 So þat euyry kyng was Redy at southhamtoun And /hartur
 Assemlyd A gret hoost ~~te~~² of his meñ and come into
 Suthamtoun And when þey wer Redy thay tokyne the See and
 A rywyd at harflet and thane þay Spred all þe cuntre

Howe kyng Arthur killid dynabus þe Geante

And when kyng /hartur had dwellyd in that contre A wylle
 meñ told hym ther was a gret Ieante in Spayne and had
 Ravissyd feyr Elyn þat was Cossyne to howell of bretayn
 And he was in an hill callyd Mount Sent

Fol. 48 ¹Two-line blue initial. ²Stroked out.

Bernarde and pere was no man in that Countre pat durste fighte with hym pat forsayd Geaunt ne come neygh the plase that he dwelde vp on ffor he was soo strong and so houghe and soo moche harme he dede in that Contreye. whan kyng Aurthur herde this tyding he called hyme ij of his knyghtes that on me called Cay And that other Bodwer that wer with hym ful priuy and prayd hem to goñ and aspye where that the Geaunt myghte be founde And they wente forth in her wey tyl that they come to awater pat men wente over that was be twen hem and the Mount ther that Dynabus the Geaunt dwelled and that water wente al^[1]abowte¹ the hille And schal euermor And so they come ouer the water to þe hill and sawe vp on the hill an howge fire And ther was al so anothir fir vp on an hill there faste be sydes And kay ande B[r]odewer² come to the nexte fir ande fonde a wedew sitting open hedded & weppte and made moch sorwe and was afeir woman and ofte sche seyde Elyne Elyne these ij knyghtes kay and B[r]odewer² come to here and axede wherfor pat scho made so moch sorwe And axede her who lay ther in a Toumbe be sydes here. Allas fair sires quod sche what sek 3e her for yf the geaunt com now & fynde 3ou her sertes both 3ee ben ded ffeir dame quod kay and Bodewere wherfore be 3e nouht drade no dismay 3ou nouht but telle vs why 3ee make so moche sorwe and mournyng Now certes Beau Sires quod sche ffor a damyselle that I haue noriched with my breestes and kepte hit of a childe pat heighte (fol. 30^b) Elene that was kyng Hoeles Ness[e]³ of litelle Brytayne. And here sche lyeth ded in þis Toumbe. The damysel was take me too Norich and to keepe. And So vp on a tyme a devel a Geaunt hade Ravesshed bope here and me. Al so he nome and lade ws bothe awhey And he wolde haue for layn þe maide that was but 3ong and tender of

Fol. 30 ¹_l erased. ²_r erased. ³_{-e} erased.

barnard And þer was no mañ durst³ fy3th wyt hyme ne come
 nyth þer he was And he was callyd Dynabus þad^a ded much
 harme /And when kyng Arthur hard thys thyng he callyd
kay 7 bedwer And command hym preuely to aspy wer þe Gyante
 wer And þei come ouyr a grett Reuyr and so to þe⁴ Mownte
 and saw A gret fyrr and a nothir feyr be syd þat And when
 þey drow nych þe fond a nold womañ wepyng syttyng by syd
 a tombe and þay axid wy she⁵ wepyd soo And she sayd fayr
 Elyn lyith in this tombe hoell of bretans cossyn O fayr
 syr quod Sche wat sech 3e her and 3e a byde þe Geant
 woll sle 3ou /And whi set 3e her for I may do none opir
 And he hath to done wyt me as he hath wyt þis damesell
 And she was so 3ong and tendyr of

³Sewn tear in vellum to fourth line from foot of page;
 writing round it. ⁴Inserted above by corr.; caret in
 text. ⁵s- over c- by corr.

Age and sche myght not suffre hym ffor the Geaunt es so grett and so howge and thus he hath slayn the damysele. And if he come as he es wont to done and fynde 3ou in this plase for sothe 3e beⁿ ded both two And pere fore fair Sirs I pray 3ou gooth forth in 3oure whey anon Tho Sayde kay and Bodewer bothe gentyl knyghtes and bolde Damysel whi goo 3e nouht hens. Sertes fair Sirs quod sche whan fair Elen was ded the Geaunt made me abide with hym to doune and haunte^j his lichorie and his lykyng and nedis I moste Suffre hit ffor almyghty god hit knoweth tha y do it not with my good will ffor y hade leuer be ded than to suffre hym medel with me ffor I have so moche peyne whane he me for lythe. whane kay and Bedewer hade herde al that the woman hade sayde to heme A none they wente a 3eyn to kyng Arthur and sertefied hym like as the woman hade tolde heme. And a non kyng Arthur toke heme both with hym And wente a 3een priuilich be nyght Soo pat non of thee Ooste perceyuede hit And soo they wenten vp on the morwe Erlich to the place pere pat the Geaunt Diabus^k was dwellyng And kyng Arthur and he ffauhte longe tyme to Gider and Soo atte pe laste kyng Arthur quelled the Geaunt and sore trauaillde and long tyme or he myght hym ouer come. And whan the Geaunt was deed he praid bodwer to Smyte of pee Geauntes heed and bryng hit to pe Oost (fol. 31^a) and schewe hit to the Ooste ffor agret marvaile for hit was so moch 7 so horrybille 7 whane they come to the hoste pei tolde hem where they hade beⁿ And schewed hym the heede of the Geaunt And Euery man was glade and Ioyffull of here lordes douhtines And kyng hoel of Brittaigne made moche sorwe for his nece pat was in swech amaner loste. And afterward whanne he hadde tyme and space he lett make in the plase that elen his nece was ded in[.]^l a fair Chapel in the honour of

Fol. 31 ^lLetter erased, poss. -e.

Age þat he for ley her And he come he woll 3ou kyll 7 ther
 for wend 3ou then3 And when kay /A bedwer hard þis þay
 turnyd A (fol. 48^b) a3ene and come in to þe kyng Arthur
 7 told hyme [.....]⁶ And Arthur toke hem bothe wyt hym
 and went preuyly by ny3t þat none of host⁷ hit wylt and
 come and fond þe geaunte and fawth wyt hym and slow hyme
 and mad bedwer Snyit[h]^{8b} of his hed and brouth hit to
 þe oste and let hem se yt for A marwayll and euyry mañ
 had Ioy þer off 7 glad of that seyte⁹ and sorrowfull for
 fayr Elyne And when þay had spase þey tok 7 mak afayr
 tome of Elyns grave in a [s]chapell¹⁰ A bove

⁶ Word erased, poss. hoel or hall. ⁷ -o- over -i-.
⁸ -h erased. ⁹ -e by corr. over erased -h. ¹⁰ s- erased.

owr lady

Howe kynge Arthur wente afterward and 3af Battaile to the Emperour of Roome And how in pat bataile the Emperour was quelde Capitulo iiij^{xx} v^{to}

Kyng Arthur and his men hadde tydyng how that þe Emperour hade semblede an howge pouer of Sarezines and paganes 7 of false cristen men² iiij^{xx} M⁺ and ix. of horsman and of fotte men. kyng Arthur and his men nome and wente forth in hir way to warde the Emperour to mete with hym and his companye. And come forth in to Normandye and in to ffraunce and so forth in to Burgoigne and so wolde haue gon to the Emperoures hoost ffor hit was told hem the Emperour and his men wolde come to lucye and so in the by gynyng of Augoust the Emperour remevede fro Rome Ande come forth with his hoost And so kyng Arthures aspies come 7 tolde hym. And saide the Emperour hade so moche pouere with hym that it was with owte Nounber^{3b} of kyghtes^c of the lond of Sarzines of Paynymes and of falce cristen men to gider And seide to kyng Arthur her lorde þat hit wer but gret foly to gon and mete with the Emperour and seide that the Emperour hade v men or vj a 3enis his on whan kyng Arthur herde this tyding he was right not a gast ffor he trusted vp on al myghty god and was abold man and an hardy 7 an hardy^d and seide to his men in this ma (fol. 31^ab) ner wyse. Gowe we in the name of god al myghty gowe now and mete with þe Sarzines and wth the Roomaynes ande haue we good trist to Almyghti god ffor þei triste no thing vp on god but vp on here streighth^{4e} and slee we of the sarzines and false cristen men that been enymyes to god and god schal helpe vs for we haue þe righte and thei

²Followed by mark like a sloping I, ? poss. to be taken with the roman numeral. 3-uñ-; MS. has 4 minims.
⁴i; MS. has one minim.

Howe þe Emperoure of^c was sleyne be kyng Arthure 7 his
meyne

Arthur 7 his pepyll hard tydyng þat þe Emperour had A
Semlyd A gret host of all maner of pepyll to þe nombyr of
xxⁱⁱⁱⁱ M^{ld} And /harthur and his meñ hastyd hym as fast as
they mythe And meñ told hyme þat þe Emperour and his host
wold com to lucy and had Remewyd þe iiij day of August
And then come kyng Arthur espies and sayd þe Emperour
was fast by syd but he had trabell^e þe meñ þat Arthur
had And þerfor yt wer a folly to Arthur to sett vppon
hyme And kyng Arthur was bold 7 hardy and comford his meñ
thus Go we in þe name of god A 3enst our Enmysse that bene
panyms and sa3erns and godys Enmysse þe wych wyt þe grace
of god shall haue no my3t azens vs for we be crystyne meñ
and goddys serwantys and ther for be we bold and of good
harte for we shall haue þe feld and ouyr com [heme]^{ll} our
Enmys by the grace of god

^{ll} Stroked out and then erased.

have the wrong And go we now and do so to hem that mene
 may speke good 7 honour of kynght hed^f And whan kyng
 Arthur had thus y spoke to his men Alle they cride with
 an heyghi wois God fadir al myghty i blesse be thi name
 with owten ende Amen And graunte vs grace owre enymyes
 to distroie amen pat wolde distroye cristen dome And goo
 we now to hem in the name of the fadir and of the sone
 and of the hooli gost And god graunte hym neuer grace non
 worchip in this worlde that spareth to day to fyghte with
 his enemyes And so kyng arthur and his men softelych
 reeden forth to here eny mys And ordeigned here wynges
 wel and wysly The Emperour herde telle pat kyng Arthur
 was al reedy and his men to fyghte with hym and ordeigned
 hyis wynges in the beste manere that hee cowthe and
 myghte. And trosted more vp on his pouere pan he dede vp
 on god That was full wel sene afterward whane po two
 hostes metten and smott to gyderes ffor the Emperour hade
 lost in litil tyme fyve so manye of his men as hade kyng
 Arthur And so in that bataille was quelled as moch peple
 in bothe Sithes pat routh and pitte hit was to wette or
 to see And in that bataille wer quelled thourgh kyng
 Aurthur and his men v kynges of paynymes And with owten
 hem oper (fol. 31^ba) peple with owten noumber And kynge
 aurtheres men dede in that bataill soo well and soo
 manlich So that the Romaynes no the paynymes hade no more
 myght a 3ens hem than hade xx^{ti} schep azens v wolves And
 in this bataille the Emperour hym selfe was quelled but
 men for sothe wist nough who quelled hym

Howe kyng Arthur let entere his knyghtes that were
 quellyd in pat bataille and howe he lett take the
 Emperoures body that was sclayn in that bataille And
 sentte hit to Rome Capitulo iiij^{xx} vj^o

And þan þe Emperour hard tell þat kyng Arthur was com and
 A Rayd hys wyngys in þe best weys 7 com forthe 7 þan þay
 metten And þe Emperour lost iiij men a 3enst kyng Arthur
 oon man for þay had no more my3th and strenth þa[t]¹² hathe
 xx Schep Azens a wolf And so yt happyd in a Scharp schour^f
 þat þe Empur was slayne but no man wist hoo hym Slou3e¹³

¹²-t erased. ¹³Catchword by scribe below: And when þe

Thane^g the Romanes and the paynnymes wiste that here lord
 thee Emperour was deed anon thi^h forsoke thee feelde And
 kyng Arthur pursewede heme til that hit was derke nygh and
 queled so many of hem that hit was wondir to see. And for
 the enchesoun that hit was nyght he touned a zeine and
 thanked al myghty god that sente hym swech victorie And
 vp on the morwe he lett seche pourght owt al the feeld
 for his knyghtes that pere wer y slayn in that bataille.
 And that es to seye Borel Erle of Malus and Bodewer and
 Kay And legers Erle of Boloigne and vrtegy Erle of Bathe
 And loth Erle of wynchestre And kursale Erle of Chestre
 And holdeyn Erle of fflaundres. And these were the grett
 lordes that kyng Arthur loste in that bataille and many
 othere goode knyghtes. And many of hem he lette entiere
 in abbeyes in the Countre and some he ledde in to hir owne
 countre and dede entere hem there 7 amonges alle other
 thinges he lette take the Emperoures body and commaundede
 to leye hi vp on a bere and with mochil honour sent hit
 to Rome (fol. 31^b) and sente worde to the Romaynes that
 as towching the lond of Brittaigne Ande ffraunce that he
 hade and helde othere treuage he wold nat for heme paie
 And if thei axed of hym afterwar heny more treuage sweche
 wolde he paie and non othir thyng⁵ Arthur lett bere kay
 to kynerieⁱ his owne Castell and ther he was entired And
 legers was boren to Boloigne for he was lord of that
 Countre. And holden was bore to fflaundres and there he
 was entiered. And alle other knyghtes and his men he lete
 entiere in Abbaies and in howses of Religioun and abowte
 in the Countre. And kynge Arthur dwelled hyme selfe in
 the same 3er in burgone with his men peple pought in
 thouth^j the nexte 3er Aftter warde haue passed the mounte
 Ioye And so haue gon forth in to Roome and gette the Citte
 and distroye the Romannes and brouhte hem in to

⁵th- by a corr. over erased k.

(fol. 49^a) And whene þe Romayns wyst þat þe Emperour was ded thay fersoke þe feld And kyng Arthur pursewyd hym tell So many of hem was kyllyd þat hit was wondur to wytt And than kyng hartur thankyd all my3ty god of that Glorius victory and lett seke for his kny3tys þat he hathe lost þat ys to say Borell Erle of mans kay 7 legers þe Erle of bolleyñ Vrget Erle of bathe Alothe Erle of wenchestyr Cursall Erle of Cestre And let entyr hem in dyuers placys And þe Emperour body he lett ber ytt in to Rome oppoñ a ber And let say to þe Romayns þat opyr truage he wold not pay And 3eff þay axid ony othir [...]¹ ryth such þey wyll hem pay /And than kyng Arthur lett ber kay to hys owne castell and ther he was enteryd And lygers was born to belloun þer þat he was lord And holden was born to flandrys and þer he was enteryd And all þe opyr he lett entyr in othyr plasys aboute And aftyr hym selfe soiornd ther A whille and þou3te to passe Munte Ioy and so to Rome to take þe Citte of Rome and put þe Romayns in

Fol. 49 ¹Word stroked out and then erased, poss. rest.

subieccioun for euermore But the fals trettour Mordred
lette hym of that viage as 3ee afterward schal her

How the fals treitour mordred that kyng Arthur moch louede
helde his lande a 3eins his wille and his Tounes and his
Castelles Capitulo .iiij^{xx} Septimo

Thene^k kyng Arthur went ouer þe see with his men to mete
with þe Emperour of Roome he nome ande toke his wyfe to
alle his Reame of Brittaigne And mordred his Cosyn to
gouerne and holde hit til that hee come a3ene and al so
his wiff Gonnore. And a non as kyng Arthur was passed ouer
the see he wente and tok feautes 7 homages of alle men of
the lande as his owne and dede þere with al thing that
hym likede And anon he lette apparaille Castelles (fol.
32^a) and vitailde hem att the fulle^a. And after warde
whañ this was don a 3eins godes lawe he nome and lay þe
Gonnore his Emes wiffe as a fals treitour and ordeigned
hym astrong pouer a 3ens kyng Aurthour scholde come a 3en
and thouth with strength to holde and haue the londe a
3ens his wille And thouht to quele and distroie kyng
Arthur if þat he myghte And sente a bowte by See 7 þe
lande and assembled an howge pouere of Painemes And al
so of cristene men And sente al so to the Saxsounes 7 to
the Dannys that thei schold come 7 helpe hym. And sente
al so to Cheldrik the Saxsoun that he scholde come too
hyme and bringe with hym al the peplee þat he myghte to
helpe hym a 3ens kyng Arthur And vp on couenaunt he wolde
3eue to hym and to his heires for euermore Alle the lond
bee twene humber and Scottland And all the lond that kyng
Engist hade of 3efte of kyng vrtieger whañ he spoused his
douhter And so vp on the couenaunt Cheldrik come and
broughte with hym a grett power and come to this londe.
And Mordred hade assembled so moche peple in one syde and
in that othir Soo that he hade at his retennew.xl

subieccioun but he had takyne his Reme of Bretayne to oon
Mordred to kep tyll he come home A 3ene þe wyche was false
 as 3e shall her

And² when /hartor had takyne hys Reme to kepe to oon
Mordred a manfull knythe Mordred A none toke homagys 7
 fealtes of hem of þe lond And wold hawe had it to his vse
 And lett A Ray many castellys and stoffyd hem well and he
 ded mor wrong for he tok his owne nevyis wiff and held
 her A3ens wyll of holy chyrche and hordynynd hym A grett
 pour a3ens kyng Arthur comyng to hold þe lond a 3ens hyme
 wyt strenthe for euyr mor And Sle kyng Arthur 3ef þat he
 mythe 7 lett A Semlyd pepyll wyt out nombyr And send to
 saxoun (fol. 49^b) and to danys for to help hyme And he
 send to sheldreke for to com and for to hylp³ hyme and
 he shall haue þe londe for euyr mor in herytage fro
 bezend humbyr to Scotlond And Childreke come wyt a grett
 pour And so þay wer Assemlyd on both Sydys of [M...]⁴ of
Mordreke and of Chydryke so þat þay had xl

²Two-line blue initial. ³-lp inserted above by corr.
⁴Erasure.

M¹ of nobill knyghtes þat were to hym̄ entendaunt what tyme that he hade nede

How that kyng Arthur come to pursewe vp on mordred and in that batataile mordred þe treitour was quelde Al so kyng^e Artour wounded to the deth Capitulo iiij^{xx} viij^o

Whane these tydinges come to kyng Arthur ther that he was in Burgonye he was sore anoied and anone nome and toke all the Reaume of ffraunce and^b his Cosyn hoel and al so (fol. 32^ab) halfe his Ooste to keepe the land of fraunce til that he come a 3ein froo Brittainye his owne reaume ffor he thoughte to be avengid vp on̄ that fals treitour mordred And nome and wente as faste as he myghte and his men with hym til that he come to Swutsand and as faste made his men goo in to Schippes. And on non̄ thei sailed forthe And so they come and arived at Sandwich And kyng Arthur brouhte with hyme moch peple of fraunce and al so of his owne rettenew. And so it fill or² that kyng Aurthur and his men myghte goo owt of her schippes and come to the lande the fals treitour Mordred and his reteneu was come and 3af astronge battaile to kyng Arthur And so kyng Arthur loste moch peple ar he and his men myghte come to lande. And in that batail Gaweyn that was neuve to kyng Arthur was sclayn. And Amguissel^c that was kyng of Scotlond and al so manye anobil body And therfor kyng Arthur made moch sorwe. And Sone afterward whan̄ kyng Arthur was comyn to londe and his men Mordrede the fals treitour myght not endure to fighte with kyng Arthur but anon̄ he and his men weren discounfited and by goune for too flee as moch as he myght and come to london̄ And wolde haue goon̄ in to the Citte but men of the Citte schut faste his 3attes and wolde nouhte soffre hym come in to

Fol. 32 ¹Above of by scribe. ²Over erasure.

M¹ when þay had nedd

Of Mordrede

When that þis tydyng com to kyng /Arthur he was anoyd and
toke all fraunce to holl of bretayne with somdyll⁵ of his
meñ for he wold gone And aweng hyme vppon /Mordred traytur
and come forthe his way to Swithsand and mad hys meñ gone
to Shipp And wold haue Ryvid at Sanwyche and brout³[h]⁶
wyt hym a grett oste of fraunce but or þat he myth come
to lond he had Asor batayll and lost meny of his meñ And
ther was Gawen his newe⁷ slayne 7 meny othyr [and meny]⁸
wer full sore I hurt But neþyrles /Mordred myȝche nott
Aȝenste hym endur but was dyscomfyd and fled to londen

⁵s- over f- third minim of -m- inserted above, ⁶-h
erased. ⁷-e inserted above; caret in text. ⁸Erased.

thee Citte And so fro thens he fley too wynchestre and his men with hym that was lefte on lyue. kyng Arthur lett take the body of Gawayn his (fol. 32^ba) Cosyn and the body off³ anguissel that was kyng of Scottland and lett lede heme to here owne Countre and lett ther entere heme. And kyng Arthur a non̄ pursewede after the fals Treitour Mordrede Ande Mordred fley for drede in to Cornwaill And Gunore the quene that was kyng Arthures wyff Soiorned that tyme atte 3orke. And whan̄ sche herde telle that Mordrede was discounfited and was fled and myght not endure azens his lorde kyng Arthur sche was sore adrad and sche nyste what to don̄ ffor sche wistee well that her lorde wolde haue of here no mercy ffor enchesoun of the Schame 7 dispite that sche hade done her lorde kyng Arthur And priuilich vp on a tyme sche toke with hire iiij. men and no mo and wente to Karlioun̄ and nome thee habite of Nonnes. And ther dwelled al her lyves tyme. And whan̄ kyng Arthur herde telle that Mordred was fled in to Cornwaille Anon̄ he lett sende after men in to Scottland And after heme of North humberland and after alle the peple vn to humber and ordeyned hym an howge pouere and a non̄ wente in to Cornuaille to pursewe after the treitour Mordrede And Mordred hade ordeyned and semled to hym an howge noumber of peple of Cornewaile and of the countres 7 he wiste well that kyng Arthur wolde come to be avenged vp on hym Ande sayde that he hade leuer to be ded þan̄ lenger for to flee. And so he abode and come and 3af astrong bataille to kyng Arthur and to his men̄ And so wel boþ partes faught and so harde so that longe tyme no man wiste which of hem schold haue the Victorie And at the last the (fol. 32^bb) fals treitour Mordred was queled ande alle his men̄ And at that bataille alle the goode knyghtes of the Round table pere were slayn̄ in that

³By corr. in right margin of column, partially over erasure.

7 his meñ And then /Arthur lett ber Gaweñ A⁹ And Anguissell
 bor in to Scotlond in to þeyr owne Cuntre And þer þey wer
 enteryd /And aftyr kyng Arthur toke his way to dystroy
/Mordred And he fled in to Cornwayll Quene Gunnore þat tym
 was at yorke /kyng Arthurs wyff 7 herd þat /Mordred was
 fled and she was sor Adred of /hartur and suposyd well to
 be schent or on¹⁰ done And þat kyng /harter wold neuyr
 haue of her mercy and toke her way preuely wyt iiij meñ
 of Carlyoun and nevr aftyr was sen amog^a pepyll /Arthur
wyst well þat /Mordred was fled in to Cornuall and lett
 send aftyr hys meñ in Scotlonde 7 in Northumbrelonde and
 assemblyll meñ wyt oute nombyr And went in to Cornuall for
 to porsue /Mordred And he on his party Assemlyd in his
 wysse much pepyll and wyst (fol. 50^a) þat /hartur was
 comyng and had leuyr lake hys chaunce^a þan ony lenger fle
 7 gaff And hard batayll to kyng Arthur and his pepyll so
 that much pepyll was¹ was slayne oñ both Sydis But at þe
 last Mordred was slayne 7 much of his pepyll And þer was
 slayne all þe good Chywallry of þe Rond tabyll of kyng
Arthur þat he had gedyrd to gedyr many 3erys be for and
 nurchyd of meny londys

⁹Stroked out. ¹⁰Inserted above by (?) scribe; caret in
 text. Fol. 50 ¹Stroked out.

bataille And kyng Arthur hym selfe was wounded al most to the deth And afterward lett carye hym selfe in a litter vn to Aueioun ther to haue medicyn And 3iet many of the Bryttones trowen that Arthur lyueth in a noder londe and how he schal come 3iet and conquere all Brittainne ffor merlyn tolde in his prophicye that his deth scholde be douthous^d to many aman ffor many men in to this tyme hath dowte 3iet of his deth And euermore schull as men telle ffor many man wot not wheder he be ded or a lyue. And that tyme kyng Arthur had regned xxij 3er and thane he was lad to auioun And this was after the Incarnacioun of oure lorde Ihesus Criste v C and xl 3ere.

How kyng Arthur toke the reawme of Brettayne to Constantyn that was the sone of Cador his Neuewe Capitulo iiij^{xx} ix^o

Thane^e kyng Arthur sawh that he myght no lenger regne he lett come be fore hym Constantyn that was the sone of Cador that was Erle of Cornewaile his Newew^f and bi toke hym alle the Reaume ande sayde to hym that he schal be kyng of the land in to the tyme that he come a 3en in to the londe for enchesoun that he hade non Eyre of his body be geten but al thing that god will haue don nedes muste be doune whoos name be blessed with owten ende Amen.

How Mordredes ij sonnes werred vp on Constantyne for enchesoun that he hade the Reame Capitulo iiij^{xx} x^o

And this Constantyn was a nobile knyght and abolde man and astrong man of body And so hit fill afterward that the two Sonnes of this treitour Mordrede hade mochil (fol. 33^a) envye with constantyn for cause that he was made kyng of the lande And vp on a tyme they be goune to were vp on Constantyne and sembled an howge Oost of hem that hade dwellyd be fore with here fadyr Mordreed that

And hartur hym self was wondyd to þe dethe And let ber hym
 in A lyttor to Awyoun to be helyd of his wondys And yet þe
 bretons supposyd þat he lewyth in to þis day and shall come
 A3ene 7 conquer bretayne but Sertes þis ys þe prophesy of
merlyne he sayd his dethe shull douton and he sayd Sothe
 for meñ haue dout þer of 3it in to þis day 7 [...] ² euyr
 mor as meñ sayne Arthur was born to A ventur^b þe xxij yer
 of his Regne afftyr the Incarnacioun of our lord Ihesus
 Crist v C xlvj

² Erasure.

dref^a owte of the lond for thei hade doñ mochil harme to the lond And vp on a day that oo brothir went to london for to take the Citte And that othir brother that was ther Anoñ ther after he wente vn to wynchestre and quelled that other brother that was ther And whanne Constantyn hade beñ kyng iiij.3ere he dide and was enterid at london

Of ij.kynges that comen after Constantyn that on men¹ called Aldelbright And that other Edelff Capitulo iiij^{xx} xj^o

And whaṅ kyṅg Constantyn was ded there were ij knyghtes in þis land of Brittain And that oñ men called Adelbright that was a danyss Ande he hade al the Countre of Northfolke & Southfolke And that other was called Edelfe and he was a Breetoun and hade Nicholle and lyndesay and al that Contre vn to humber And these ij kyṅges oft tyme werrede euerich vp on other and att the laste they wer accordid and loued heme to gideres as moch as thowh þey hade been boren of oo womman Ande kyng Edelf hade a Sister that men called OreWenne and for grett loue kyṅg kyng Albright Spoused here And he gat vp on here a douhter that height Argentylle And in the thride 3er [ther]² ther after ther come vp on hym astrong Sikenesse wherfore he deide And So vp on a tyme he sente to kyng Edelf his brothir in lawe that he scholde come and speke with hym. And he come to hym with goode (fol. 33^ab) wylle and thane he praiede hym for the loue of god that whaṅ he were deede that he wolde haue Argentil his doughter and his lande and do hir to Norissh ande keepe in his Chamber Amonges other gentil damyselles And wheṅ sche were of age to doñ here be married vn to Sum worthy maṅ that myght gouerne and mayntene wel his land And whane the damysel were of Age sche to haue al the land a 3eñe And kyng Edilf

Fol. 33 ¹n abbreviation-mark in blacker ink, poss. a later addition. ²Erased by scraping.

Blank Page

graunted hym and sayde that he wolde done his praier and
ther to he swore and made his ooth And whane kyng Albryght
was dede and entired kyng Edelf toke þe damyssel with hym
and brought hyr³ in to his Chamber to be Noriched there
amoges^b other damysseles And sche be come the feirest
womman^e that onye man myghte fynde or see.

How kyng Edelf lette marie the damyssele Argentylle to a
knaue of his kychyn Capitulo iiij^{xx} xij^o

And kyng Edelf that was⁴ vncle to þat damyssele
Argentille be thouhte hym how he myghte by sum tresoun
to haue the land from hire that was his Nece for euermore
And fals and for sworn azeins his ooth thoughte howe he
myghte disceyve the damysel And so he nome and Married
herre to a knaue of his kychin that men called Curian^c.
And this Curian was thee longest man and the heyest man
of alle the kynges howshold or in hany other place that
men knewe that tyme And kyng Edelf wend to haue married
here schamefully and vnworthily ffor enchesoun that he
thoughte to haue al her londe as he hadde and holde be
for that tyme but he was disceyued ffor this Curian was
(fol. 33^ba) hauelokes sone that was kyng of kyrkelane^d
in Denmarke. And he conquered his wyfis land and queled
the kyng Edelf þat was his wyfes vncle and þoo hade sche
a 3en al her londe as in anothir place it telleth more
pleynerly of this mater^e And he was kyng but thre 3er for
the Saxsones and the Danes quelled hym and that was moch
harne to al Brytayne. And the Brittounes tho nomen and
bare his body to Stonhyng And there entered hym with moch
Solempnite

Of kyng Conan. Capitulo iiij^{xx} xiiij^o

³By corr. in right margin of column, partially over erasure.
⁴Superscript g by (?) scribe.

Of Conan þat reygned aftir Arthure

And after Curan Conan that was his Neuewe that was a wondir proude man[̄] was made kyng And regnede but he myght have no loue a monges his peple. And euer mor he was in debat and contak amonges his men and he toke hys owne vncle in were and quelled Al so his ij sonnes And the Saxsouns werred ofte tyme vp on[̄] hym. But he ouercome hem at the laste And pane lyved in reeste and in pees Al hys lyves tyme. And at the laste he dyde whanne he hade be[̄]n kyng and Regned xiiij 3er and was entered at london[̄].

Of kyng Certife and of Gormound that come in to Brittainye pourgh paynymes. Capitulo iiij^{xx} xiiij^o

And after this Conan regnede on of hys Cosynes that me called Sertif and alle his peple hym hated an no man hym louede And þis kyng Sertif lost al Brittainye thorgh werre And in his tyme there be fill in Brittainye Amys Aduenture^f whenne the cristen peple were distroied ⁊ alle the Brittounes dreuen owte of this lande And the lond lost with (fol. 33^b) owten any recouere And the Saxsounes hade al the lond as 3e schal her afterward more fully And in that tyme ther was apaynym that men Called Gormound þat was kyng of Damstrike A paynym⁵ þat hade the reame after his fader ⁊ pereof was made kyng And he 3af ⁊ be quath to his brothir and sayde that he ne scholde neuer be kyng ther of but that he myghte goon[̄] and conquer þe reame in astraunge land for he was a strong man[̄] and abolde and an hardy and of hyme Merlyn prophicied ⁊ seyde that he scholde be a wolfe of þe See. And this Gormound assembled of paynymes an Oost with owten noumber and lett appareille Schippes And ordeyned with hem vittailles and saylede forth and toke many londes And vndirfonged feaute and homages in many diuerse landes And he come bi

⁵-[̄] in right margin of column by corr.

And aftyr regnyd Conane a wondyr prowde kn3t and con not
 hawe no maner of louf but euyr was medelyng wyt his owne
 pepyll and gretly occopyd wyt wer And þe saxons werryd
 vppon hym oft tymys but he hym ouyr com at þe laste And
 so he was in pesse all his lyv tyme and died³ and lith at
 london and Regnyd xiiij 3er

Of kyng Cortyse

And aftyr /Conan regayd^c his cosyn Cortyse be hatyth of
 all his pepyll and he lost all bretayne for Crystendom
 was distoyd^d and þe bretons dryvyn out of the lond and
 lost wyt out ony Recouyr and left þe lond to Saxons for
 in that tyme þer was A paynyme cally Gormond þe kyngys
 sone of⁴ Daufryke kyng of þe payns^e folke þat had þe
 reme (fol. 50^b) aftyr his faders dethe saw he gaff to his
 brothyr and wold neuyr be kyng of þe Reme but he myth
 conquer þe Same for he was bold and strong 7 hardy And
 of him⁵ prophised Merlyn and sayd þat he shull be A wolfe
 of the See And he lett A Semlyd paynyms wyt out nombur
 and lett appareyll schipys and toke homag 7 fealte of
 much⁶ pepyll And so he went lond to lond and conquerd
 meny londys⁷ and lordschppis And he come in

³-e- inserted above by corr.; caret in text. ⁴By scribe,
 faintly, in right margin at end of line. ⁵MS. has 2
 minims and flourish for -im. ⁶MS. has 6 minims for mu-.
⁷-s inserted above.

þe Costes of Irland and conquerde al þat londe vp on the
 which land the Brittons ofte tyme hade werred And so hade
 Iressh men vp on the Brittounes and ofte tyme wonne and
 ofte tyme looste. And ofte tyme they 3aft to the Brittaines
 hostages And vp on a tyme kyng Sertyf sente in to Irlande
 to Gormounde and sayde that he scholde come in to Brittain
 with hys hoste And he wolde helpe hym to werre vp on the
 Brittons and to drive hem owt of the lande And than holde
 hym for here lorde ffor he was a paynym and they were
 paynymes And the Brettounes were Cristen men. Ande he
 scholde haue helpe heym Sethe þei were of cristen lawe
 and hade take cristen doome And whane Gormond herde (fol.
 34^a) this tydyng he spede hym as faste as hee myghte and
 come and arryvede in Scotlonde. And so he came in to
 Northhumber land and there abeden the Saxsounes and
 affermed the couenauntes that was be twen heme by ooth
 and by hostages that þey scholde be trewe vn to hym and
 holdee hym for here lorde and paie to hym trevage euery
 3eere. And tho by goune the Saxsounes and affricanes^a to
 brenne and robbe and to slee and distroie al maner thing
 that they myghte fynde or take 7 spared nother man womman
 nor child lewde man nor clerke that they ne quelled and
 brent and betten^b castelles and Cherches and brought al
 the lond to nowght And alle that myghte fle a weye fledde
 for drede of deth as wel rychmen as pouere and Bysschopes
 Abottes and prioures channones and moch other peple some
 in to lital Brittain and some in to Cornuaille alle that
 euer myghte Any schippes have.

Howe kyng Gormounde droff kyng Certif to Chichestre Ande
 quelled the Brittounes and brent þe tounne Capitulo
 iiij^{xx} xv^o

And whane certyfe saw this myschief Anon he flede to
 Chichestre that was that tyme a good Citte and astrong

to Irlonde and conquerd þat lond And¹ oft tymis the bretons
 werryd oppoñ þe host and oft tymys wan and so þay sent to
 gormond þat he shūll com in to bretayne and help them to
 delyuer þat lond of thayr Enmys and wold hym ~~lord~~¹ hold
 for the lord for he was a paynems and so wer thay And than
 be gane þe saxons and þe affrygance to Robb and to Reve
 and bren and do much harme and to dystroy þe faythe in all
 þat þey mythe and sparyd neþyr mañ ne womañ ne chyld but
 vttyrly dystroyd but þo þat myst flee⁸ fled as well por
 as ryche som in to bretayne and sum in to Cornuall all þo
 þat shippys mythe haue

Howe Gurmond distryod þis londe /

Cortes⁹ þe kyng fled thens into Chestyr þan a good Cyte
 and astrong

⁸ f- from s- by corr. ⁹ -s over -r by corr.

And ther he kept hym xx daies And Gurmunde pursewed hym
 and by seged the Town but the Toune was strong in hym
 selfe And wel kepte with men So that he myght not wynne
 the Toune for no thyng that he koude doo And soo at the
 laste they ordeygned amonges heme a queyntyse for to
 brene the Toune And swech a queyntise saw neuer man be
 foree nor herde ffor þei maden Engynes of Glewe and of
 nettes and nome pecis of Tynder and token fire And nome
 and Chawht Sparwes bounden^c the fire and the Tynder
 (fol. 34^ab) to gyder to the Sparwes ffite and lett hem
 flee in to the Towe to hir nestes to Stakes of hey and
 of Strawe in to Euessynges^d abowte in the towne and the
 tyndir be gan to brenne. And so was the towne brent And
 whanne the Brittones saw the Toune brenne abowte heme in
 everich syde they ordeyned heme and comen owte to fighte
 and a none they were slayn And in the mene tyme the
 Brittons foughten with here enymys kyng Certif priuyli
 flede a whey and wente in too walles. And so men wiste
 neuere after warde where þat he be came And þus was the
 Toune of Chichestre take^e¹ and distroied al to nought
 And þo² wente Gurmond anon ther after þorw owte al the
 lond and brent Cittes Tounes that neuer afterwar wer
 made azeñ And that men mowe see ther ofe 3iet in many
 places

How þis londe was callede Engelande of Engist and how
 many kynges were made in þat londe Capitulo iiij^{xx} xvj^o

Whane Gurmond hade distroied al the land thoruh owt þanne
 he 3afe the lond vn to the Saxsounes and they vndir toke
 hit with goode wille for they hade long tyme desired to
 haue that londe for encheson that they were of the lynage
 of Engist and of his kynreede ffore Engiste hade fferst

Fol. 34 ¹-ne by (?) corr. over original letter. ²Blot
 betw. p and q.

and þer held hyme xx 3er And this /Gurmond it besegit but
 þis Citte was sso strong þat hit my3t not be getyne be no
 maner of gyne Thay bethouth¹⁰ hem vppoñ A quentysse for
 to bren þe towne and mad Engynys wyt glowe 7 nettys and
 toke pecys of thondur and fyrr¹¹ bond to sparrows fett
 and aftyr they wente and loggyd hem in the towne in to
 payr nettys and stake^f 7 sett feyr in the towne 7 thay
 brent þe towne And when þay save þe towne brent þay come
 and fauth but thay wer dyscomfetid (fol. 51^a) and slayn
 for thay had no pour And wylle þe batayll in duryd þe
 kyng preuelych stall A way in to walis þat nomañ wyst
 wher he was be come 7 so was the towne of Chestyr^a taken
 And aftyr wente /Gurmond to dystroy Ceteis and townys þat
ben nott 3et edvyd in to this day

Of Englonde first Name

And when /Gormond had dystroyd all þe londe þurth out¹ he
 gaff the lond to saxons and thay tok hit wyt good wyll
 for thay dysyryd it long tyme be for for asmuch as thay
 wer of Englisse kynredys þat fyrst had

¹⁰-h- inserted above by corr. ¹¹First -y- over -e- by
 corr. Fol. 51 ¹Vertical stroke separates burth from out.

þat londe of Brittain And thane they lette calle hem
 Englyssh men for encheson of the name of Engist And they
 called the lande Engeland in her language And the peple
 3iet in to this tyme calleth heme Englyssh men ffor
 Enchesoun (fol. 34^ba) that hit was in his tyme called thee
 Engistes lande that tyme that he conquerdede hit and gatt
 hit of kyng vortiger that hade spoused his doughter But
 fro þat tyme that Brvit cam in to this londe it was called
 Brittain and the peple þat dwelled ther inne called
 Brittaines til that Gurmond come a 3eñ and conquerrede
 the londe and 3af hit to the Saxsounes and anon they
 Chaungid the name and called the land as they dede be fore
 Engistes lande. And whañ this was done Gurmond wente ouer
 in to ffraunce and there conquered many londes and
 distroied al the cristen peple that he myghte finde in
 eueri place þere that he come. And the danys dwelde
 that tyme in this londe and howses 7 haibitacionis^e they
 made after here owne wille as hem likede And thei ordeynede
 and wolde haue made amonges heme newe kynges But theye
 myght nouht acorde to haue a kyng for swech strife and
 debate was amonges heme that non of heme wolde be
 entendaunt vn to oon kyng And þer for they made many
 kynges in diuerse Schires as hit was in Engistes tyme
 And the firste kyngdom was kent And a nothir Southsex
 7 the þryde westsex and the iiij Estsex and þe v
 Northumberland and the vj Estangl þat es Northfolke and
 th vij Merchenerch and that es the Erledome of Nichole
 huntynghdon 7 hertforde 7 Gloucestre wynchestre warwik And
 Derby And thus they departede Englyssh men^f Englonde vn
 to vij partyes. And afterward hit fille that þo Seueñe
 kynges werred eche vp on other And euer mor he þat (fol.
 34^bb) was strengest ouercom hym that was feblest and by
 nam hym his londe 7 thus they leued long tyme and non
 kyng amonges heme and kepte non cristendam but lyuede as
 paynymes. 1. 3ere til at the laste that Seynt Grigory was

þe lond of Bretayn̄ and let hem be callyd Englysmen for
 enchesoun of Englyse name and callyd þe lond Englonð And
 thay þey² of Saxone changyd þe name as yt is be for sayd
 And wen þis was done Gurmnd³ wen ovyr in to fraunce and
 conquerd meny londys 7 dystroy all Cristeñ pepyll ther as
 he com /And þe danys be gane fast to come In And in habyt
 hem And thay wold haue mad kyngys and lordys but þay my3th
 neuyr concente to haue a kyng and to hym be Attendans And
 þer for þay had⁴ meny kyngys in dyuers schyrys as in⁵
/engestes⁶ tyme þe fyrst was kent þe second Essex The
thyrd wyschestyr The iiij estangle The fyft Northmbrelond
The vj Estangle and so euyry chyr þay mad a kyng and so
þay departyd Englonð in vij partys and þis kyngys werryd
 to gydyr and þe strenyst drow out þe febyllys for þey
 wold han no kyng among hem for þey wer paynyns xv 3er
 and mor Tyll þat Sent /Gregur þe pope

²Stroked out. ³MS. has 5 minims. ⁴-d over erasure by
 corr. ⁵Inserted above by corr. ⁶e- over i- by corr.

pope of Rome and hade sene chylderen of that nacioun in the Citte of Rome to selle And he saw þat þey were so feire and aduenaunt^g & hade gret lykyng A while to be holde heme And so vp on atyme he Axede whens they were and of what nacioun and men tolde hem that they were of Engelande and Paynymes ande mysbeleue^h. Allas sayde Seynt Grigory the sorwe for certes they may wel be called Englysshe for theye haue the semblaunt and the vysages as aungelisⁱ And thoo he sente Seynt Austyn And with hym xl. felowes that were goode men and hooly in to Engeland to teche and preche hem the right be leue And the ryghte feith and to conuerte the peple to god And that was in the vj 3eere that Seynt Grigori was made pope And this was After the Incarnacioun of our lorde Ihesus Crist v C iiij^{xx} And vj 3ere as the Crouneclis telleth

Howe Seynt Awstyn Baptised kyng Adelbright and howe he made. ij. Bischops beñ his fellowes Capitulo iiij^{xx} xvij³

Whanne Seynt Austyn come first in to Engeland he Arivedde ferste in the Ilede^j of Taneet ande fro thens he wente to Cauntyrbury and in the Same Toune dwellede kyng Adelbright that was that tyme (fol. 35^a) kyng of kente ffor he was of the lynage of Engist And he resayved Seynt Austyn and his fellowes wyth mochel honour and fonde heme all maner thinges that heme be houede and 3af hem afeir place for to dwelle vp on And ther es now a fair Abbay that men calleþ Seynt Austines. And at that place he lyeth hyme selfe schryned And this kyng Albright was a good man and gladlich woldee here Seint Austyns preching. And 3af hym leue to goo preche þourgh al his lande of kentte and turne and conuerte all thee peple that he myghte to god And sone there after þourgh godes grace hit fille that the kynge

³_x above v.

saw childrē⁷ of þe nacioun of Englissh and axe of Machantys^b
 of wens and of wat nacioun þey wer and þay sayd of Englonð
 And þan he sayd þay may welbecallyd Englismen for thay han
 facys of Aungellys but þei be painms 7 long haue be⁸ (fol.
 51^b) Oo quod sent /gregur yt is pite þat þay be not
 Rascauyd^c for þay be fayr and goodly And synt /Greger and
 synt Avsten⁹ sent^{10d} in to Englonð xl good men wyt heme
 to preche and and^e to convert þe pepyll 7 tornyd hem to
 god in þe vj 3er of Sant Gregory 7 in the of þe
 incarnacioun of our lord Ihesus Cryst v. C iiij^{xx} vij

Of seynte Austyns comyng

When sent /Austē⁹ cam fyrst in to Englonde he Aryvid in
 þe Ile of tenet and passyd forthe forth to cantyrbery And
 ther soiournyd kyng /Atthelbryht of kē² kent þat was of
 þe lynage of Engyst 7¹¹ fayr vndyr² vndyr fong seynt
 /Austē⁹ wyt much honour and heme fond all þat hem nedythe
 And fordermor he gaff heme A fayr plasse new callyd þe
 Abbay of Sent Auston In þe wych plasse he lyith hem self
 schrynyd¹² This kyng Athelbrethe was A good man and wyt
 good well herd synt Austyn Preche and gaf hym leve to
 preche 7 all hys wher he wold And kyng

⁷Vertical stroke separates saw from childrē. ⁸haue be
 below last line of writing at right. ⁹-e- from -o- by
 corr. ¹⁰By scribe in left margin at beginning of line.
¹¹Inserted above by corr.; caret in text. ¹²First -y-
 by corr. above; caret in text.

hym selfe was conuerted and torned to the lawe of god and
 tok cristendome and Baptesme and alle his peplee after
 And in the mene tyme þat Seynt Austyne conuerted the peple
 to god and prechede of cristendom vp on a tyme he come in
 to Rouchestre and there he preched of godys word they
 scorned hym there fore and caste vp on hyme boweles of
 fyssh and thaylles of Ryghe and of thornbake^a and so the
 taylles hing faste vp on his mantel And þere fore he was
 eville appayd and a noyed And Seynt Austyn preyde to god
 almygty that alle the Childeren that wer yboren in that
 Citte muste haue tailles ande so they hade And the kyng
 tho lett ordeygne an hows in the honour of god at the
 Bryge ende for enchesoun that the wommen that were with
 childe myght dwelle there til that thei were delyuered
 whan Seynt Grigori herdee telle that Seynt Austyn hade
 tournyde the Englissh peple to god he was wondir glade
 And sente his pallioun^b too (fol. 35^ab) Seynt Austyn by
 Abysshop that men called paulyne and made hym primate an
 Erssebysschop of Engeland And sent word too Seynt Austyn
 that he scholde make and ordeyne Bisschops in this lond
 And a non as Seynt Austyn hade the pallioun of dignite
 of the Eresse bysschop anone he made ij bischopes of his
 fellowees that comen were with hym in to Englonde frome
 the Courte of Rome that men¹ called melite and þat other
 Iustyne And melite was Bisschop of london 7 there he
 dwellede And Iustyne was Bisschop of Rouchestre And
 Melite þat was Bischof of london wente to preche in the
 Countre of Estsex and þer he conuertede the kyng that
 men¹ called Sikewith and he was Cossyn to kyng Albright
 that was his Sistres Soñe 7 Iustyne wente to preche in
 Southsex 7 þere he tournyd the peple to god And Austyn
 wente hym selfe thourgh Inglond and prechede and tournyde
 mochel peple to god almyghty And lette make Chirches and

Fol. 35 ¹n abbreviation-mark written, prob. later, in
 lighter ink.

was convertyd and many of his meñ Also And sent Auston come
 to Rowchestyr and prechyd And þe paynymys Schornd¹³ heme
 And kyst vp hym Scatys taylys^f and kest vppoñ hym gottys
 of Ry3th And so þe goodman was schorñe and Anoyed And
 prayd to god þat all þe chyldryn that¹⁴ shal be borne in
 þat towne Aftyward shull haue taylis And sso þay had And
 when þe kyng /Athelbri3te herd her of he wandyr Sorrowefull
 þat þay shull mystrett hyme And dyd make an howsse for
 women for to be delyuerd in /And when seng^g Gregūr herd
 tell þat þe Englysmen wer convertyd he send Sent Auston
 his palyoun and mad hym premat^h Archbeshopys of Eng (fol.
 52^a) lond and he mad othir byschoppes vndyr hyme to fellows
 þat com from Rome On meñ callyd Millet and dellyth^a at
 london And that meñ callyd Iustene he held þe^l dyngnite
 of Rowchestyr And byschopp prechid in many placys in
 Englund 7 conuertu much pepyll to god

¹³-rd by corr. over erasure. ¹⁴-t by corr. above; caret
 in text. Fol. 52 ¹p- by corr. over erased d-.

ordeygned preestes And þus by gañe cristendome in
Engelände.

Howe Seynt Austyn wente in to walis ther that the
Brittounes were dwellyng and ther they toke ne rewarde
to^c hym and were to² hyme not entendaunt Capitulo ¶
iiij^{xx} xviiij^o

And whanne ale thee peple of Engeland was conuerted and
Baptized And seynt Austyn wente þoo in to walles ther
that þe Brittouns wer to keppe hem fro thee Englisshmen.
And in that Contre he fonde Abbays and Monkes ande men
of Religioun And Sevene Bysshoppes ffor the Brittouns
distroied euer more the cristen men that Seynt Austyn
hade conuerted And þane (fol. 35^ba) Seynt Austyne seyde
to the Bysshopis þat he was alegat of Rome and al so
primate of Engelande and sayde be resoun as godes lawe
thei scholde to hym be obedient And they Answerde and
seyde that they nolde be obbedient to no maner men but
to the Erssbysschop of karlyoun And for no man they nolde
be obedient to non Englissh man. And saide to hym that þe
Englisshe men beñ owr Enymys dedly and haue driven vs out
of our owne londe. And we been cristen men ande euer haue
beñ and the Englissh men beñ Paynemes and euer haue been
til now late that they been conuerted Seynt Awstyne sawh
that he myght haue non othir Answer of the Brittounes but
euer they seyde that they nolde be obedient to hym nothir
to the pope of Rome and thanne he come a 3eñ And come to
kyng Albright that was thanne kyng of kent And tolde hym
how that his peple wolde for no thing bee obedient to þe
pope no to no man of lyue but to the Erchebischoþ of
karlyoun And ther fore the kyng was sore anoyed and wroth
to wardes the Brittouns and sayde þat he wolde distroye

²Inserted above in lighter ink.

And when all Englonde was conuertyd^b to god Seynt Auston̄ went
 toward² walys wher³ þe bretons wer and ther he fond meny
 besshoppys 7 much othyr pepyll þe wych Sent Auston̄ had
 conuertyd And sayd to þe beschoppis þat he was A ligatt
 of Rome And prelat of Enlong and þat þay shuld be⁴
 obbedyente to hym in all thyng And þay sayd þei wold nott
 but þe Arsbesshopps³ of Carlehill for þey wold b⁵ not bene
 obbedyent to þe Englysmen̄ for þay bene our Enmysse And
 haue dryue vs out of our owne Contre And þay be paynyms
 so Sent Auston̄ had none othir Answer And thane Sent Auston̄
 turnyd Azen to kyng /Athelbryste and told hym þat þay woll
 nott Abay no man̄ but þe byschop of Carlyon̄ And þan̄ þe kyng
 was sor Anoyed and sayd he woll dystroy

²-war- by corr. over erasure; -d inserted above by corr.
 with caret in text. ³Superscript r. ⁴Followed by small
 hole in vellum; writing round it. ⁵Stroked out.

heme And anone saide to Elfride that was kyng of North
 humberland that was his frende Ande praide hym to come
 and bryng with hym al the pouere that he myght. And come
 and mete with hym at leycestre And soo fro thens they
 wolde goo in to walles and werre vp on the Erchebisschop
 of karlyoun and vp on heme alle that hade forsake Seynt
 Austyne

Howee kyng Albright And kyng Elfryde quelede Brucyal that
 was kyng of Brittounes that hade all the contree of
 leycestre Capitulo ^{xx}iiiij ^{mo}xix

(fol. 35^b) And so in that tyme ther was akyng of
 Brittounes that height Brucial that hade and helde al
 leycestre Schire 7 herde telle how þat ij Englissh kynges
 scholde come thedir and meete pere to gideres and wolde
 come into walles with her pouere Anon he assembled all
 the pouer that he myghte haue for to mette with þoo ij
 kynges And with heme for to fighte But hit availed hym
 ful littel ffor alle the men that he hade ther with hym
 were y slayn and hym selfe fley and so he loste his lande
 for euer more And so kyng Albright And kyng Elfride
 dwelled at leycestre a litil while and thanne þei
 departede the land be twen heme And receyuede feautes 7
 homages of the peple of the Countrę. And sone ther after
 þei wente in to walis to distroie the Brittounes and alle
 heme that wolde not be leue in cristis lawe And whane þei
 of walys herde telle of the desconfiture that the ij.
 Englisch kynges hade y don thei were al sor adred And
 nome and ordeygned amonges hem the holieste men of prestees
 Monkes heremytes And moche other peple and alle they comen
 open heded and barefoot And wellenward^d to praye of mercy
 and of grace of thoo ij kynges And tho ij kynges were so
 dispetous and fers that they nolde nouht spek to heme But
 anone quelled hem euerichon Allas thee sorwe and pitte

hyme 3if he my3the And sent to þe kyng of Northumbrelond
 þat he shull com to hym wyȝt all þe pour þat he my3te And
 þat he shull mett wyȝt hym at lycestyr for he wold wend
 into walys to dystroy þe Arsbesshopp of karlioun And all
 tho þat Refewsyd Sent Auston

Of kyng bressywall

It be fyll so þat þer was a kyng in Bretayne þat held þe
 cuntre of leycestr callyd bressiwall and hard tell þat
 þes ij kyngys wold come into walys and hordynyȝd hym all
 þe pour þat he my3the but he was dyscomfyȝd 7 fled 7 lost
 his londys for euȝr mor And thes to kyngys abode⁶ þer A
 whyll and toke homagys (fol. 52^b) and fyautys þe Contre
 and went toward walys and þay of þe contre hard of this
 sconfite þer þat kyng bracywall had and was sory meȝ And
 chosyne amogne⁷ heme A good holy maȝ to com befor this
 kyngys 7 cry hym mercy but þe kyng wer so proud and so
 sterne þat he wold nott spek wyȝt hym but kyllyȝd hym
 done and slow many A good mane 7 dyȝd much harme

⁶-ode by corr. over erasure. ⁷Superscript -o-.

for they spard heme no more than a wolfe doth the schepe
 but anon lett smyte of ther³ hedes of hem alle. And so
 ther were marterede and slayn v C 7 xl. And afterward þo
 ij kynges ordeyned heme for to go to Bangor and thouth to
 quelle alle the Brittōuns that they myght fynde Ande (fol.
 36^a) whane the Brittōuns herd telle this tydyng thei
 assembled an howge pouere for to fighte a 3ens tho ij
 kynges And þere was in wallys a Baroune that men¹ called
 Beldrike of Cornuaille that Sumtyme was lorde of
 Deueneschire And kyng Albright hade drivene hyme in to
 wallis And in this bataill kyng Albright was quelde and
 kyng Elfrid sor wounded and forsoke the felde and the most
 part of his men were sclayn And Elfride fleede fro þens in
 to North humberland his owne Countre. And whanne al þis
 was don men of the Countre of leycestre Schire made with
 strenght Sedwaladire^a that was the soñe of Bruciale kyng
 of leycestre And he regned with mekel honour

Howe Cedwaladrie that was kyng of leycestre And Elfride
 þat was kyng of North humberland were made frendes And
 of the debate þat was bee twene Edwynne and Cadewayne
 that were here sones Capitulo Centesimo

And whanne this bataylle was y doune the Brittounes
 gadered heym^b to gyder² Ande wente thens and come to
 leyceter 7 made Cadewaladrie that was the soñe of Brucial
 kyng of leycestre 7 of al the Countre abowte and tokee
 feautes and homages And anon þere aftir Cedwaladre
 ordeyned an howge pouere and saide that he wolde goon
 in to Northumbrlond ande distroye hym And slee hym and
 alle his folke if that he myght And whanne he was come in
 to that Countre þat es to seye in to Northumberland
 frendes wente be twen hem and made heme acorded vp on
 this condicioun that Elfride scholde haue and holde al

³er inserted above by corr. Fol. 36 ¹n abbreviation-
 mark added later. ²g- by corr. over erased letter (h,
 k, or l).

7 þay martyryd and kyllyd v. Cxl And thes kyngys went fro
 thens to bangor and kyllyd much pepyll And þe Bretons A
 Semlyd hem for to fythe wyt hyme And þat tyme þer was a
 baroun callid Bledrik of cornuall some tym lord of Cornuall
 lord of Dewynschyr But kyng Athilbri3te had dryvyñ hym out
 in to walys And he 3aff batayll vnto kyng /Athibri3te And
 ther kyng Athilbri3te was slayne and kyng Eldryd also sor
 wondyd and forsoke þe feld and þe most party of his folke
 slayn And /Elfryd fled into Northumbrelond 7 afterward þe
 pepyll of leysester mad wyt strenthe Cadwan Brycyvalys
sone kyng þe wyche reigned wyt much honour 7 worschipp

And⁸ after þat þis batayll was done þe bretons hem A
 Semlyd 7 com to leysestyr and of all þe Contre and toke
 homagys 7 fealtys all abowte And sayd he wold goo in to
 þe northumbrelond To sle kyng Elfrid yf he my3te And when
 he was com dethyr frendys went by twene heme þat þay wer
 acordyd in this maner þat /Elfryd shuld hold all

⁸Two-line blue initial.

the Countre be 3onde humbar in (fol. 36^ab) to Scotlande
 And Cadawaladre schol haue al the land of this half humbar
 to ward the South and thus they wer acorded and were
 frendes al her lyues afterward and loved to gyder as two
 bretheren. And this Elfryde hade a soñe that men called
 Edwynne that hade and helde al the Countre of
 Northumberland after that his fadir was ded And his fadir
 helde hit al his lyues tyme. Ande Cadewaladre hade anothir
 sone that height Cadewaleyn that hade and helde al his
 ffadris londe. And his ffadir helde hit his lyves tyme
 and they louede hem to gidris as they hade been two
 bretheren And þat loue lastede be twen hem but ij 3ere
 And afterward there by gañ be twen hem a stronge debate.
 And al was thoruh a wikkede Neve^c that was sib Cadewaleyn^d
 that men called Briens. And so at the laste they ordeynede
 an howge partye in bothe partyes and come and mett to
 gideres And in that bataile Cadewaleyn was sconfited And
 Edwyne pursewed hym euer more til at the laste that he
 fley in to Irland And Edwynne toke his Townnes and his
 landes and feled adoune Castelles and brent his howses
 and his maneres. And he parted alle the londe 7 3af hit
 amonges his men and his frendes. And so vp on atyme longe
 ther after Cadewalen come a3en owt of Irland with an
 howge pouer And faught with Edwynne and in pleyn battayle
 quelde hym And alle his men were slayn principallych³ al
 þo that hade and helde his land of the 3efte of Edwynne.

How Seynt Oswald was quelde thourgh kyng Cadewalyn And
 Pandea and Oswy that was Seynt Oswaldes brothir was kyng
 and queled Pandea. Capitulo Centesimo Primo

And whan Edwynne was quelde Offrs hys⁴ soñe be gan to werr
 (fol. 36^ba) vp on Cadewalyn that was his Eme And so hit

³MS. has 2 minims for -in-. ⁴Superscript s by scribe.

þe lond fro humbyr to Scotlond And /Cadwaler shuld haue
all þe lyue lod^c on this half And þan þay be come so good
frendys and louyd to gyddyr as ij bretheryne and this
Elfrid (fol. 53^a) had A Sone Callyd Edwyne and he had all
þe lond of northumbrelond aftyr his fadyrs dethe and Cadwan¹
had anothir Sone callyd Cadwalyne and he had þe lond þat
his fadyr had in his lyff tyme and þay louyd to gyddyr as
thay had bene bretheryne of A modyr born And þan be gane
astrong debat by twene hem þur an Enwyus Cossyne of
Cadwalys callyd Brens so þat þay Semlyd a strong ost on
both partyis And Cadwalyn was dyscomfit 7 Edwyn hym
pursuyd so þat he fled in to Irlond And this Edwyne
dystoryd^a all his castellys 7 maners and ded much harme
And thane cam gadwyne Aþene out of Irlond wyt a strong
pour and in playne batayll kylllyd Edwyne and his frenschep
and namely wyt held his londys so fro hyme

And² whan þis /Edwyn was slayne /Offvrs his sone werryd
vppon /Cadwalyn his heme

Fol. 53 ¹-d- by (?) scribe above; caret in text. ²Three-
line blue initial.

fil that ofers deyð duryng the werre and whane offers was
 ded than̄ was was made kyng a good man and a gentil þat
 was cristen man þat moch loued almyghty god. And he hade
 al the londe of Northumberland that fil þourgh heritage
 that men̄ called Oswalde. And he was kyng of þat Countre
 ffor as moch as he was his frende and so moch loved
 Edwynne And was his goode ffrende And he hade an howge
 parte of the londe that was Cadewalynnes. And this
 Cadewaleyn̄ be gan to werre vp on Oswalde And purseued
 hym ⁊ drof hym toward Scotland And whanne Cadewaleyn sawe
 that Seynt Oswalde ffley and wolde nowght abyde to fyght
 Cadewaleyn tho Sum of his retteneu tok vn to pandea his
 brother in lawe Ande bade hym⁵ purseue Oswalde til that
 hee were take and anon̄ than̄ don hym to deth And Cadewaleyn
 wente þo in too anothir Countre And whanne Oswalde herde
 telle that Cadewaleyn was gon̄ aȝene he wolde thanne flee
 no lengere but abood Pandea and ȝaf hym batail And^e pandea
 was discounfited and fley And anon̄ he wente to Cadewaleyne
 But if that he wolde come ⁊ avenge hym vp on Oswalde he
 wolde neuer holde of hym Ofote of londe. And Cadewaleyn
 anon̄ leet asemble an howge Oost And pandea and he come a
 ȝene in to Northumberland and ȝaf Bataile to Oswalde And
 in that batayle kyng Oswalde the nobil man was slayne and
 by heded and aftirward he was entired at the Abbey of
 Berdeney and god almyghti hath donē ther for his loue
 many feire myracles And al so in other Stedes And anon̄
 Osway that was his brothir nome and seised all hys
 brotheris land in to his hand (fol. 36^b) and the foke of
 Northumberland loued hym welle and helde hym for here
 lorde And this Osway hade folke of his kynne and wolde
 haue departed the lond amonges heme And so att the laste
 they werred to gideres. And for as moch as they wer nouht
 strong I nouh to ouercome Osway with werr thei come to

⁵ -m faded.

but he deid duryng þat wer And aftyr Reignyd A good Crystyn
 mane callyd /Oswold þe wych much lovyd god and his workys
 and had all þe lond of North hunbrelond be herytag And be
 s^b Cawse he was frend to Edwyne he held þe most party of
 his ~~len~~³ lond of Cadwalyne þe Same Cadwyne weryd vppoñ
 hyme 7 droff hem toward Scotlond And Cadwelyng seyng þat
 he wold nott pursue hyme but tok sum of his folk to
peanda/ his brothyr in lawe 7 prayd hym to porsu /oswold
 tell he wer slayne And Cadwaylyn tornyd hom A3ene and
/Oswold hering þerof wold no lenger flee⁴ but Abod and
 gaff hym batayll 7 shomfit hym and he fled and come to
Cadwalyn a3ene And sayd þat he wold neuyr hold a foot of
 lond of hym but he wold (fol. 53^b) Aweng hym vppoñ
/Peanday And þene /Cadwelyne A Semlyd A grett pour 7
/peanda and com to Northumbrelond 7 met wyt /Oswold and
 slow hym in batayll 7 smot of his hed and he was enteryd
 in þe Abbay of Braney In þe wyche plasse ~~in-the-wyche~~
 plasse³ god haw wrouth for hym meny A fayr marakyll And
 anone /Oswy his brothyr Sesyd all þe þe lond in to his
 owne hond⁵ þat was /Oswaldys 7 þe folke of Northumbrelond
 louyd hyme wondyr well and held hyme for her lord but þer
 wer my3ty meñ of his kyne þat wold haue parte of þe lond
 wyt hyme 7 werryd to gyddyr And for as mucche as þey wer
 not strong Inou3e þay come

³Stroked out. ⁴Crossbar added to long s- by corr. ⁵By
 corr. in left margin at beginning of line.

pandea and prayde hyme of Scocour and of help̄ and proferede
 hym largely of that lande yf that he wolde hem socour and
 helpe aʒens Oswy And whaṅ pandea herde heme thus speke
 anoṅ he wente to Cadewaleyne And ordeyned an howge Oost
 ʒ wente towarde Northumberland to fight with Oswy And
 Oswy was a good man and meke and loued no werr no debat
 but pees and Charite and come to pandea and preide hym
 and praide hym^f of loue and pees and profered hym of gold
 and Silver gret plente And pandea was aprowd maṅ and loued
 nothir reste nor pees to haue But for anye maner thyng he
 wolde fighte with hym. And so at the laste they sette a
 day of Bataille. And Oswy trusted hollich to almyghti
 god that scholde hym socour and helpe And Pandea trist
 moche vp on his strength and vp on his pouere. And so at
 the laste þo two Oostes metten to Gidere. And Pandea was
 discounfited and [...] ⁶queld in that bataille and ale hys
 men sclayṅ And þis was aftir the Incarnacioun of owr lord
 Ihesus Crist vClv. And this Oswy had ben kyng xxviiij ʒere
 And that tyme þere was akyng that men called Oswy that was
 Cosyn to pandea. Anoṅ thoo he be gaṅ to werr vp on Oswy
 And vp on a tyme they fouhtē to Gidere and þoruh godes
 mjght Oswy hade thee victorie And Oswyn was discounfited
 and slayne. And he lieþ at Tyntemouth^g

⁶Two letters erased.

to⁶ /Peanda and prayd hyme of helpe 7 socur And he spake
 so to kyng /Cadwalyn̄ þat he grauntyd hym A grett pour and
 come in to Northumbrelond to fyt3 wyt Oswy And Osway was
 a meke mañ and much lovyd Pesse and profyrd hym both gold
 and syluyr grett plente But Peanda was so proud þat he
 wold nott graunte hym his pesse but fythe he wold and at
 þe last a day of batayll was assignid And /Osway trustyd
 oppoñ god and þis /peenda vppoñ his strenth 7 pryd and so
 þay metteñ but /Pranda^c was slayn And þis was in the 3er
 of our lord Ihesus Cryst an vj C xv And this /Osway
 regnyd xxviiij 3er And a kyng callyd /Owyn̄ Peanda Cossyn̄
 werryd oppoñ /Oswy but Oswy had þe vycory oswyne was
 slayn and lyith att Tynnemouthe^d

⁶Inserted above by scribe.

Blank Page

And aftyr þe dethe regnyd his sone /Cadwaleder/ well and nobly whos modyr was Peanda Sustyr And in þe xij 3er of his Reigne he fyll in to a grett seknes And thane was ther a gret discence^e among þe lordys of þe lond And in that tyme þer was So grett A derth of Corne and of opir wytayllys þat A mane mythe goo iij or iiij. dayes or þat he my3th [grett]⁷ gett mett or dryng and þerfor deid meny þousand And much pepyll fyll to herbys 7 to ffruthe and þer (fol. 54^a) fyll in pestelence þat vnnethe þe quyke my3th bery de ded so þat So grett A dethe was natt sen meny wentyr to forne and þo þat myte fle¹ left her howsys and went in to othir londys to sawe her lyvis And this myshap enduryd xij 3er so þat ther was² no pepyll to erie ne to Sowe

Of a grete hunger

Sadwalle saw þe grett hungyr 7 mortalyte of þe pepill and scraf^a also of wytayllys And þer hys folke þer wer left Alyff Passyd fast into lytill Bretayne 7 passyd hym Self wyt A lytill nawy into lytill Bretayne to oon kyng E³ Aleyne home he lovyd and his fadyr also And as he saylid in þe See he mad a grett wementacioun^b and all þat Saylid wytt hym And saydeñ Dedisti nobis Domine^{4c} An þan be gane Caudwaleyn to complayne hyme to his folke petously and sayd a lasse 7 woo be to vs wrechis for our Synnes God han take wengaunce oppon vs 7 drve and mad vs Awoyd our lord 7 propor Reme þe wych none Erthely pour my3th make vs A woyd but now we har Exilid out of our owne possessioun and inhatacons^d And þan þe Englissmeñ þat wer aschapyd in

⁷Expuncted by 3 superior dots. Fol. 54 ¹-e f- by corr. over erasure. ²Inserted by corr. above. ³Stroked out.

⁴Dedisti ... Dñe by rubricator in red; in right margin by scribe with red underlining; dedisti nobis domine tanquam escarum Et in gentibus sisty nos

Blank Page

hapyt hem in muintayns⁵ and muche pepyll encresyd and on
of the them^e And thay sent home to her cuntre for men
women and chydryne^f to stoff and Restor Azene to Restor
be contre to her and sawe and when be saxons hard ther
of pay come wondyr thyke in to his lond in³ and in habyt
hem selfe for pay fond no man hem to lett and thane pay
vsyne the ~~centre~~³ costoms of thayr owne contre And thayr⁶
owne lawys 7 langagys and ~~toways~~³ 3aff be townys namys
and castellys as they by now callyd 7 held cuntre 7
baronagys And than among be gret company of garmayn com
quene Saxiburge 7 a Ryvyd in North humbyrlond and toke
all be contre to her and to her pepyll (fol. 54^b) And
the bretons weryne in mountayn and in w⁷ wodys and fro
pat tyme forthe s⁸ lost his Rem for euyr And pan dey
departyd be lond among hem and mad many kyngys amogys^h
hem in dyuers pertyis of be Reme The fyrst westssex be
seconde Marcherench be Estangle be iiij kent and all thes
Reignyd togyder aftyr And he prayd to god pat he myth hav
demonstracone yf yt wer to hym to goo in to his lond for
azens be wyll of hym⁸ wold nothyng doo and when he had
bus I done a woyses com done fro heuyne and bad hym lay
doun his porposse for yt wer nott to hyme to goo in to
grett bretayne azen vn to be tyme be prophesy wer
ffullfyllyd and shuld neuyr be vn to be tyme pat the
Relekys of hys body wer brouth oute of Rome in to bretayne
and of othir Sayntys pat suffyr prosecuone⁹ⁱ for be loue
of god And when gadwalder herd her of he marvyll much and
let com Afor hym the prophecoers^j of be lond and thay
Acordyth wyt be same Auis¹⁰ wer^k and counsell hym to leff
his pepyll 7 his navy and ~~te-be~~³ submit hym to dyspocioun^l

⁵MS. has 6 minims. ⁶Superscript -r. ⁷First stroke of w,
stroked out. ⁸-y by corr. over -e. ⁹-secu- by corr.
over erasure. ¹⁰MS. has 3 minims (word at end of line).

(fol. 37^a) Howe kyng Ossa that was souereyn of alle kynges of Engeland And how ech kyng werred vp on oper in his tyme Capitulo C^{mo} ij^o

And so hit fille that after ward that alle the kynges of this lande that es to Seye of westsex Mersh^a north of Estanglil and of kent And of Southsex and of othir Costes and eche of heme werred vp on othir And he that was myghtiest be name hym his lande þat was febelest But ther was Akyng aboue heme alle that men called Ossa that was seynt Oswaldis brothir and þis Ossa conquerede and ouercome alle the kynges of the lande and was lorde ouer hem alle. And so moch werre and debate was amonges hem So that no man wiste how the land scholde stonde. And abattes 7 Prioures 7 men of Religioun wretten her lyves and hir doynges of heme 7 howe longe euerich kyng regned ande in what Cowntre and howe euerich kyng deyde and of Bysshoppes Al so they made ther offe grett Bookes

of god 7 went hym to Rome 7 did penaunce for his synnys 7
 deyde ther þe xij kalendys of Majj The yer of our lord V.
 Clxxx aftyr þe dyspsicioun of god And did þat the aungell
 comand hym than Cadwaludre callyd Inore his sonne And
bory his Cosyne that was his suster soñ and sayd to hyme
/take sayd he my folke and myne nauie¹¹ þat his her Redy
 and passe 3e wn to walys 7 ber the lordys of bretayne þat
 none dyssonouryd¹² come to hym by irrupcioun^m of þe
 paynymys folke for defaut of lordys And he hym Self left
 his Reme of Bretayne 7 of his folke for euyr mor And toke
 hys way to¹³ Rome to (fol. 55^a) þe pope the wyche worschip
 hyme moche And he was confessyd and toke penaunce for his
 synnys and he had not long dwell ther þat he ne died¹ þe
 xij kalend of May the 3er of grace vj C lxxx^{ti}

Of kyng Offa

Hit be fyll So þat all þe kyngys in that tyme þat wer in
 the lond as tho of westsex Merch ruche Estangle of kent
 and of sowshex and of othyr costys iche wor vppon opir
 and he þat was most my3ty by nom þe lond of hym þat was
 mor feble but þer wer a kyng a Mongys heme þat men callyd
/Offa þat was sent Oswaldus brother þis /offa conqueryd
 all þe kyngys lond and reigne Abowe hym All and so grett
 werre was in² euyry contre by twen kyngys þat noman wist
 how þe lond wente But Abbotys 7 Pryours 7 meñ of Relygioun
 wrytyne þe lyvis and þe dedys þat was by twene of kyngys
 how euyr-che³ Rayne And in wat Cuntre and in wat maner þat
 euyry kyng deyde and of byschoppys Also þay mad gret bokys

¹¹Vertical line separates myne from nauie. ¹²Badly
 formed -r-. ¹³Gone over (? altered) by corr. Fol. 55
 1-i- inserted above by corr. ²-re was in by corr. over
 erasure. ³Joining line in MS.

and howg 7 called heme the Crounecles^b And the good kyng alured the Bokes had in his warde whiles that he leuede 7 he lett brynge a gret boke ther ofe too wynchestre to the heigie Cherch and lett make hit faste vn to apylour ffor no man scholde take hit pens. And soo euery man myght per on reede and by holde and see the lyf and the regne of eueri kyng that hath been in Engelande.

Howe kyng Osbright for^c pat was kyng of Northumberland forlay the wiff of Brewerne Bocarde a 3ens here wille. And howe he ouercome the kyng afterward with his pouer that he hade ordeyned Capitulo C^{mo} Tercio.

And thus hit fille afterward in þe same tyme that ther was akyng in Northumberland that men¹ called Os (fol. 37^ab) bryght and his dwellyng was at 3orke And so vp on atyme he wente to play hym and disporte hym. And so whenne he come a3ene he toke with hym alytil folke and priuilych wente vn to a worthi manes howes that men called Bruerne Bokard And so in the mene² tyme the good man with his company were goon to the See for to aspie piloures^d and theues that deden mochil harme to the lande be nyghttes and robbed the Countre and brent 7 dede moche sorwe and his lady was at home a good womā And so this kyng Osbright come to this goodmanes hous and this good woman courteisly and feire receyued hym and welcomed hym and al his meynne and serued hym with mette and drynke ffull curteisly Ande whā the kyng hade eeten he toke the lady be the honde and lade her in to Chamber And saide he wolde speke with her a councyl And made alle that wer in the Chamber voide but they twoo allone. And the lady wiste no thinge wherfore he dede soo And ther at thee laste he nome here and lay by fors by here a 3ens here will And whanne he hade doñe here that vilonye

Fol. 37 ¹n abbreviation-mark by corr. ²-ne by corr. over erasure.

and lett call hyme þe Cronnieclys And þe good kyng /Aluryd
 had þat boke in hys ward and let breng yt to wenchestyr and
 let hit fast by tachyd to a pyllour þat meñ my3th nott
 Remeve ne ber yt thens So þat euyry man⁴ my3th yt See And
 theroppoñ loke for therine⁵ be the lyvis of all þe kyngys
 þat euyr wer in Ingland

Of kyng Osbry3te

And thus yt be fyll in þe same tyme þat þer was a kyng in
 Northumbrelond þat meñ callyd Osebryth and soiornd in
 3orke And this kyng went hym vppon A day in to A wod hym
 for to sporte And wane he come A3en he went preuyly into
 A por manys hows þat meñ callyd buryne 7 þe good mañ
 (fol. 55^b) of þo plasse was gone þat oute⁶ þat tyme 7
 Iobbers^a ~~awthyn-tym~~⁷ wer comyn in to þe lond to Robb bren
 And sle The lady þat was this burens wyff was a swondyr^b
 fayr womañ and welcomde the kyng wyt much honour and hym
 wordely serwyd in all thyng /when þe kyng had hetyn A toke
 þe lady by þe hond and led her in to her chambyr and sayd
 he wold speke wyt her A Councell And all þe folke frome þe
 chambyr he mad woyd saue honly þe lady but þe wist not wher
 for he deddyd^c tyll he had done wyt her hys wyll And when
 he had done dysded

⁴Inserted by corr. above. ⁵-r- inserted by corr. above.
⁶bat stroked out; oute by corr. above. ⁷Stroked out.

hee wente a 3ene to 3orke. And the lady þoo weppte and
 made moch sorwe 7 whanne here lorde come home a 3ene and
 fonde hire sore wepyng ande made rewlich mone Anon̄ he
 Axede of here what her was and whi sche made sweche sorwe
 and who hade here mysdoñ Now cleyn sire sche Seyde the
 kyng vntrewely and queyntelych hath doñe me schame and
 villany a 3ens my wille And tolde her lordee eury delle
 and how the kyng hadde leyen by herre a 3ens here wille 7
 saide that sche hade leuere the deth thanne the lyfe Nowe
 my goode wif be stille and make no sorwe ffor a3eñs (fol.
 37^ba) strengthe febbilnesse es litil thyng worth and wyf
 therefore y will nouth loue the þe wers and namely for þou
 haste tolde me þe very trewth And if god sende me life and
 grace y schal ther offe be auengid This Bruewerne was
 agret lorde and welbelowed and hadde many greete men to
 ffrendes And anon̄e sente after the gretteste men of the
 londe. And whanne they wer alle come to gider he made to
 heme his compleynt and saide that he wolde be avengid per
 ofe whatsoeuere ther ofe betyde And all they seyde at onys
 that they wolde help̄ hyme in al that they myghte and heree
 pouer do ther too And anon̄e he tok his meyne and wente to
 the kyng And whanne the kyng sawe hyme he called hym Buwerne
 be his name And he sayde to the kyng schortly I defye 3ou
 and alle 3our dedis and I 3elde vp her now feautes and
 homages And as moch land as I haue holden of 3ou So that
 fro this tyme afterwarde I wille neuer holde of 3ou no
 maner thing And in this maner he departed fro the kynges
 Courte and ther nolde no lenger abide Anon̄ theraftir he
 tok his leue of his frendes and wente in to Denneemarke and
 made to hym a complaynt that es to seye kyng Godryne^e and
 tolde hyme of the dispite And vilonye that kyng Osbright
 hade doon̄ to hyme 7 hadde for layne his wife And tho praiðe
 hyme of Socour and of helpe And whanne kyng Godryne and the
 danys herde of this thyng and of the Complaynt that Breuerne
 hade y maked they made mochil Ioye and myrth ffor as moch

he turnyd azene to yorke And he left þe lady wondyr sor
 wepyng for þe ded he had done to her And when her lord le⁷
 come home he saw her wepp and suche mornyng make he axid
 of her wat sche had done and why sche mad suche Sorowe Syr
 quod sche wrongly⁵ and falsly þe kyng Osbyrth me hath done
 Schame 7 wyalens Azens my wyll and told hyme how trewthe
 how þe kyng hæð⁷ had her forlayne wyt strenth werfor she
 sayd she had leuyr to dye than to lyve /fayr leffe^d be
 styll quod he for azene strenthe febylnes ys lithe⁸ worth
 and þer for [as]⁹ Shall þou neuyr lesse belowyd and namly
 for þou hast tolde þe truthe And yf Almy3ty god grand⁵ me
 my lyve I shall de well A wenge /This buryñ was A gret mañ
 and a my3thy lord 7 was welbelouyd and grett frendys had
 And let send for þe gret lorthis [þ]¹⁰ of þe londe and to
 hym mad his complaynte of þispyte^e þat þe kyng had to hyme
 had^f done and sayd þat he wold be Awenggyd how So þat euyr
 yt wer And all hys frendys concellyd and grauntyd to wend
 toward yorke þer þat þe kyng was And /buryne toke his mayne
 And come to þe kyng And þe kyng hym Saw he callyd hym
 curtesly /buryne by his name and /buryne hym Answerd 7 to
 hyme sayd Syr (fol. 56^a) I 3ou defey 7 3eld vp foyaltes
 homagys and landys and as much¹ as I haue of hyme And so
 frome this tyme Aftyr ward I wyll neuyr of þe nothyng hold
 and departyd from the kyng wytout mor spekche or ony
 Abydyng and toke leve of his frendys And went to Denmarke
 and complayne hym to kyng /Godriñ 7 told hym of the dyspyte
 þat to^a kyng Osbyrth to hym had done to his wyf And prayd
 hym of Socker and helpe hem to A weng when kyng Godriñ of
 Denmarke And-the-dene-when-² he hard þe compleynt³ of this
 /buryne And of þe prayer þat he had þay wer wondy glad in
 hart for as mucche

⁸Macron over -h-. ⁹Erased. ¹⁰Stroked out and erased.
 Fol. 56 lms. has 6 minims for mu-. ²Stroked out.
³-leynt by corr. over erasure.

þat they myght fynde enchesoun forto wende in to England to
 werr vp on the Englyssh meñ And for to Aveng Buwerne Bocarde
 of þe dispit that the kyng hade doñ to hyme and (fol. 37^b)
 al so for cause that Buwerne Bocarde was neygh sib the kyng
 of Denmarke. And anon the kyng lett assemble an howge Oost
 And faste lett aparaile Chippes and ordeigned al thing that
 hym neded vn to that viage. And whanne they were al reedy
 for to wende the kyng of Denemarke made his ij bretheren
 Chiveteyn of the hooste that on heyth hungar and that other
 hubba that wer nobil knyghtes and bolde

How the Danoys comen in to Engeland And token the Towñe of
 3oorke and quelled the kyng Osebright And afterward kyng
 Elle Capitulo Centesimo ¶ quarto

And whanne al thinges were redy hungar 7 hubba toke here
 peple and went to the See ande Sailed towarde Engelande as
 moch as they mygthe And so atte laste they come and arrived
 in the Northcountrē And so thei come þourgh holdernesse
 ande quelled and robbed and brent Touñes And neuer rested
 til that þei come to 3orke. And whañ kyng Osbright sawe
 heme come towardis heme Anoñ he come owt of the Touñe with
 the peple that he hade and fawght with heme but he hade no
 pouere to laste azens hem nothir to endure And in that
 Bataille was quelled moch peple in both partyes And kyng
 Osbright was quelled in that bataille And the Citte of 3ork
 a none y takeñ And the danys went þoo in to the touñe And
 al so ther was anothir kyng in Northumberland þat men called
 Elle that the frendes of Buewerne Bocard hade y made kynge
 ffor they wolde neuer after that tyme be entendaunt to kyng
 Osbright for enchesoun of the dispite that he hadee done to
 Bruwerne Bocard that was neygh to her kynne And so vp on a
 day hit fille that kyng Elle was goone (fol. 38^a) In to a
 wode for to hunte 7 to play ande hade taken of venesoun
 grete plente 7 as he satte in the wode at his metee he spake

As þay may fynd A cause for to goñ in to Englonð ffor to
 wer vppoñ þe Englysmen And so for to wenge Buryne of þe
 dyspyte þat þe kyng had had^b done to hys wyff And for as
 much as buryne was to Syb to þe kyng of Denmarke Anone⁴
 thay lett horden A gret host of men 7 let horden shippys
 And Asmuch as was ned to þat wyage and whan all þe host
 was Redy þe kyng mad his too bretherryne Cheuitains þat
 wer nobyll knyztys 7 bold þat on men callyd /hunger 7 þat
hodyr hobba

And⁵ when all thyng was Reddy tho ij bretheryn 3e² toke
 leue of þe kyng Gordiñ and went ouyr the See for to wend
 in to Inglonð as fast as they mythe Sped Now ys born^c So
 well comfortyd and fast hyd hym wyt de danys þat þay ben
 A Raysyd^d in þe north contre And come thorow holdyrnes and
 distoryd^e all þe contre And brent all þe townys And Robbyd
 folke and kyllyd all (fol. 56^b) þe contre and take tell
 þay come to yorke And when kyng Qsbrvth Saw hym com he toke
 his pepyll þat he had And come out of þe Cytte And wyt hym
 fauthe but none fusioun^f he had azenst hyme and much was þe
 pepyll þat þer was slayne in bothe partyis and kyng Qswryt
 hym Self was slayne And Anone de Cyte was takyn and de
 danys went in And þer was A nothyr kyng in Northunbrelonde
 þat Buernez frendys had chosyn hym and held hym for kyng
 þat men calthe hym /Elle was com to wod hyme for to
 dysporte And of wensoun Soudell he had take And as he sat
 in þe wod att mette he sayd

⁴A- by corr. over erasure. ⁵Three-line blue initial.

to a knyght and saide whe haue good game ⁊ wel happed.^a
 Anoñ with that worde ther come aman in at mette and saide
 to the kyng Elle. Sire 3e haue taken mochil vennesouñ and
 wonñe And as I venne^b 3e haue lost there a3eins anhundreyd
 so moch of valeu. And 3e haue lost al this ffor the danoyes
 haue taken 3orke and holdet^c A 3ens 3ou and 3ee schal nouht
 come there In And al so they haue slayn kyng Osebright And
 whanne kyng Elle herde this tydinge Anoñ he lett assemble
 all the peple of thee Countre And ordeygned as many men as
 he myght Geete and wolde haue geete the Touñe of 3oorke
 thorough maistrie^d and strengthes Ande the danyes sawe al
 this and comē owt a noñe and 3af bataille to kyng Elle and
 there quelled hyme and almoste all the peple that he broughte
 with hyme And the same place that the bataille was doñe ynne
 schal be callede Elle Croffte for euermor And that es alitel
 froome 3orke. And wanne this was doñe the danys wolde nouht
 reste til that they hade al northumberland And pere they
 made wardeynes for to kepe the Countree. And thoo wente
 they ferther in the lande. And comen and token Notyngham
 And ther they dweleden al the wyntir tyme And deeden al
 thee harme that they myghte. And after whenne Somer come
 thei remeued ffrome Notyngham And wente to Nichole ⁊ to
 lendeseye. And to hollande ffor ther myghte no man
 wythstonde heme for they hade so moche poer.

Howe Seint Edmund the kyng was martired Capitulo Centesimo
quinto

And so longe the danys wente fro Countre to Countree (fol.
 38^ab) and euer quelled robbed and brent al þat they myght
 take vñ to the tyme thei come to Tefforde. And in that
 Countre þei fonden a Cristene kyng that moch lovede god and
 his name was Edmunde and he was kyng of Northfolke and of
 Sowthfolke. And this kyng Edmound ordeynede al the peple
 that he myght haue and came and faught with the danys.

to a knythe we hawe well sped and much wensoun take and
 wyt þat word þer come in A mañ And to hym Sayd syr 3if 3e
 so much wensoun han wane and to⁶ hym seyde⁶ iij tymys so
 much þer a3ene 3e haue lefte for all þis Cuntre þe danys
 haue gott 7 take þe Citte of 3ork and a3ens 3ewe⁶ shull
 hit hold þer neuyr 3e shall come þer in 7 forsothe þay
 haue slayne þe kyng Osbyrth when kyng Elle hard this
 wordys he [...] ⁷ lett Asemble all þe folke of þat Contre
 And hordynid all þe pour þat he mythe haue and wold haue
 gett þe towne of yorke wyt strenth bott þe danys come out
 and 3aff hym batayll and kyllyd þe kyng and þe most party
 of his meñ þat he had brouth wyt hym and þe same plasse
 þer þat þay wer slayne shall euyr mor be callyd /Elle Croft
 And þat plasse ys a lytill from 3orke And than abyde de
 dannys meke-wer-but² tyll þay conquerd all Northumbrelonde
 and in that cuntre þay mad wardens and went forder in the
 lond and toke nothyng[a]^{8g} in and þer þay A byd all þe
 wentyr and dedyne all þe Sorow þat þey my3the and eftyr
 wen somyr tyme⁹ come þay Remeuyd frome Notyngam and come
 to lynkconlle 7 to lensay and to holand for no mañ my3th
 stond so much pouer and (fol. 57^a) strenthe they had

Of kyng Edmonde

And so fer had de danys passyd from contre to contre and
 euyr mor brenyng 7 Robbyng 7 dystroyd all þat þay mythe
 tell þay come to tedforthe in þat contre þay fond A
 Crystyne kyng þat much louyd god and his workys þat meñ
 callyd Edmond and was kyng of Northfolke and A of Soffolk
 And send Edmond hordynyde as much folke as he myth And
 fauth wyt Danys

⁶By corr. above. ⁷Erasure, poss. he. ⁸Final letter,
 prob. -a, erased. ⁹Vertical line separates somyr from
tyme.

And hee and his men wer discounfited and the kyng hym self was driven vn to the Castell of ffremelyngham And the danyos pursewed hym to the same castel And kyng Edmund saw that he myght nouht longe holde the Castell a3ens þe danyos he came owte him selfe alone 7 spake to the danyos. And they asked of hym where that the kyng was Edmunde. Siris quod he whane y was in the Castel he was there And whanne hee wente owt of the Castel I¹ went owt al so. And whedere² he schal aschape or schal nouht at godes wille mot hit be And whenne they herde hym speke of god they wiste wel that hit was Edmund the kyng hyme selfe. And a noñe hungar and hubba lett take hym and saide that he scholde for sake god and alle cristen lawes as they hade made many other doñe or that tyme. Seynt Edmund said that he nolde neuere hit doñe and saide that hee wolde rather suffre the deth for almyghtty godes loue. And a noñe they nome kyng Edmunde and bonde hym faste vn to atre and made here Archeres schette vn to hym with Arwes til that al his body was as fulle of Arwes as es an Irchounes skyn full of prikkys^e And for the payne that þei dede to hym he wolde nought forsake hys god in al his turnement^f (fol. 38^ba) but 3af his gost to god almyghty ande so deyde and tho they nomen and smoten of his hede. And in this maner Seynt Edmunde was doñ vn to the deth

How hungar and hubba wente and toke th Touñe of Reedyng
Capitulo Centesimo Sexto

And whanne Seynt Edmunde was martered hungar and hubba ande alle the Danoys wente fro thens vn to Redinge and as they wente be the Countrẽ thei Robbed the peple and brent Cittes and Touñes and quelled al the peplee that thei myght fynde

Fol. 38 ¹By corr. over erased he. ²er abbreviation-mark prob. added by corr.

but he and his folke was comfytte And þe kyng hym selfe
 dryvyn vn to castell of framalyngham 7 de danys hym pursuyd
 And come in to þe same castell And when kyng Edmond sawe
 þat þe castell myȝt wyt¹ hym nat² wytstond he come azens
 hym wyt home þe² danys ferst spoken³ And a non þay axid
 of hym wer kyng Edmond was Now for soth quod he when I was
 in the castell I was he And went I went out of þe castyll
 I was nott he and wethyr he shall shap or dy as god wyll
 So mott hit be /wene sent Edmond had nemyd good by þat þay
 wyst hit was he hym Self and anone hobba and hunger toke
 hym and sayd þat he shuld god forsake And Crystyn dome²
 as meny othyr hath done thurh hym by forne And sent Edmond
 sayd þat he wold neuyr but Radar þaṅ he wold he had leuyr
 Soffyr Dethe for goddys louf and his lawysse to kepe Than
 toke þay kyng Edmond and bond hyme to A tre And mad her
 herchersse to hym Schett wyt Arrows tell þat his body
 stekyd full of Arrowsse As one vrchyne ys full of Skynnes¹
 prekys but for all þe payne þat he had he wold not dy ne
 god forsake And at þe last in þe same payne And turnyd^a
 he deid And toke hys soull to Almyȝty god And when þey
 (fol. 57^b) saw þat he was ded thay Smettyn of his hed And
 in þs maner was Sent Edmond Martyrd

Howe þe danes

When Sent /Edmond was martyrd hungor 7 hubba went thens
 wyt all her danys And as they went thedyrward þay bren
 townys 7 vellagys 7 kyllyd⁴ all Crysten pepyll

Fol. 57 ¹Stroked out. ²Inserted by corr. above. ³spo-
 by corr. over erasure. ⁴ky- over ca- by corr.

and namelich hem þat wolde nought forsake god almyghti ⁊ þey caste a doune Cherchis and many howses of religioun. And so they comen to Redynge and toke the Toune And there they dwelleden til that kyng Edulph þat was kyng of westsex come þedir with al the pouer that he myght have And þanne comen the danoys owte of thee Towne of Reedyng for to 3eue bataille and feighte with kyng Edulph And in þat bataile ther was quelled an Erle of danoys that men called Sidrake And on morwe come kyng Eldrede and his brothir Alured with an howge pouer ⁊ al so kyng Edulph that fought wyth the danoys be fore comen a 3ene to þat bataile And the danys comen owte of the Toune for to fight with heme ⁊ þere be twen heme was astrong bataile and many men ther were slayn And the danoys that day hade the victorie And kyng Alured and Aldred his brother were discounfited And vp on the fourthe day ther After the danoys And the Englisshemen fouhten a3ene vp oñe Ekkeldoune and in that bataile was quelled a kyng of Denmarke that men called Rasyng and foure Erles that weren men of grett pouere And that day the danoys hade Schame ⁊ (fol. 38^b) velany and they were driven vn to Engelfelde. And the xv day ther after thee danoys and the Englisshmen fouhten to gideris at Rasyng and ther wer the Englissh men discounfited And fro þens a dane that men called Roynt wente with his peple bi the Countre And distroied al that he myght take. And kyng Eldrede fauht with hym and was sor I wounded vn to the deth And he hade been kyng v 3ere. And whanne he was ded he was entired At wonborne

Off kyng Alured in whos tyme the Danys prayde hym of mercy and that he wolde 3eue heme leue to goñ owte of the lande
Capitulo Centesimo vij^o

And whan kyng Eldred was ded his brothir Alured was þoo made kynge that men called Dolffyns And so vp on a tyme the Danoys assembled hem to gidere and wente for to sech

þat wold not god forsake and cast done cherchis and come
 to Redyng And toke þe towne and þay held hem styll /þan⁵ þe
 [~~Edele~~]⁶ /Erle⁷ of westesex com dyderr wyt all hys pour for
 to take þe towne /Thane com vn¹ out de danys⁸ for to 3ef
 hyme batayll and come for to fythe wyt hym and þe batayll
 was wondyr strong for many A man² was ther slayne And þe
 danys þat-þay-~~f~~¹ had þe wictory and kyng Eldred 7 his
broþer Aluryd þat-þay¹ wer dyscomfyt but xiiij dayis
 Aftyward þe danys 7 þe Englysmen faw3ton⁹ to giddy And
 anothyr tym vppon Elkyldame and þer was slayne þe kyng of
 Denmarke þat was callyd¹⁰ Rasyng And ther þe Englysmen¹¹
 dyscomfyt And frome thenis A dane þat men callyd /Raynt 7
 went to Redyng wyt his host and dystroyd all þat he myth
 take And kyng Eldred fauth wyt hym but he was wondyd sso
 þat he was ded And han but² Reygnyd but v 3er and lith at
 wenbur

Of Alrud þat regned afty re Eldrede

Afty the deth of þis Eldred Reyngnyd his brother Aluryd
 þat Dolfens was callyd þan went de¹² danysse A Semlyd hem
 And went² for seke

⁵-an inserted by corr. above. ⁶Erased and then stroked
 out. ⁷By scribe in left margin with caret; caret in text.
⁸Vertical line separates de from danys. ⁹-3- over -y-,
 prob. by corr. ¹⁰-d inserted above by corr. ¹¹Super-
 script -s-. ¹²-e from -o by corr.

Alured þat was newe y made kyng of Southsex And they fond hym at wiltoun with a litil meyne natheles 3iet he come 7 faught with hym At the laste he forsok the felde and fley in to a wode. And fro þens he wente in to westsex and ordeyned ther an howge pouere of peple of his owne Reame. And Al so of opere so that at the laste he hade an howge noumber of peple And thañ hadde þe danoys a 3ens hym non strength ne no myght And þo wente Alured with his peple to london ther that the danoys were abidyng. And wolde ther haue y fouhten with hyme And the danoys sauh the noumber of peple that he hade and durste nouht abide to 3eue bataille to Alured but praide him of pees and of loue and that he wolde 3eue heme leue for to wende in to here owne Countre And seyde that they nolde nevir come A3eyñ In to this Londe in^g (fol. 39^a) to done no maner harme And vp on this couenaunt thei wolde take hym goode hostages as goode as the Englissh men wolde haue l^a of hem.

How hubba that was hungars brothir was quelled at Chippenham and howe the danyois brought her kyng to Alured Capitulo Centesimo Octauo

And in the same day that the Danoys wente frome london and euer more þei reden so faste bothe nyght and day and never tok reste but litil that they comen to Excestre And there thei token the Toun 7 helde hit Whañ kyng Alured herde of this tydyng Anone he toke the hostages and putte heme in to faste warde and toke with hym al the pouere that he hade and come towarde Excestre And whanne the danoys herde tyding of this thyng Anon they remeuede fro Excestre and wente forth in to westsex and comen to Chipenham 7 dede moche sorwe in that Countre ande robbed men and broughte men in to prisoun And kyng Alured euer more pursewed hem and come vp on heme ther that they were and frechely^b faught with heme and in that bataille was quelled hubba

Aluryd þat was þe new kyng of Southsex And thay fond hym
 At wyltoun wyt a lytill pepyll but netherles he fau3t hym¹
 wyt hem¹³ but att þe last he fled thens from þe feld and
 went to west sex and hordynynd so much pepyll of his owne
 Reme Also (fol. 58^a) Soo hodyr tell he had astrong batayll
 so þat de danys¹ had no pour Azens heme to stoun and com
 to london wyt hys ost and ther was þe danys soiournyng
 and he wold haue fouth wyt hym but de danys durst nott
 wyt hym þat² fythe but prayd heme of pesse And þat must
 goune azene vn to her owne contre and neuyr more in to
 Ingland for to come Azene harme to doune 7 vppon this
 couenaunt þay shull 3eff hym a plege good hostagys And
 such as þe Englysmen wold axene

Howe kyng Alurid pursued þe Danes

And þe Same day þat de³ danys part frome london so fast
 þay Ryden both Nythe And day 7 neuyr toke Rest of goynge
 tell þay come in to excester and toke þe towne and ther
 held heme And wen[d]⁴ kyng /Aluryd hard the tydyng An²
 Anone he lett take hostages 7 went from þens to excestyr
 wyt all þe pour he had And whene þe danys hard tell of
 thys comyng þey fled⁵ from þens in to westsex And come to
 chippinham And þer þay ded much harme in the contre and
 Robbyd folke 7 brouth heme to presoun þe kyng /Aluryd hym
 porsuyd and come Apañ hyme And frescly hym Asaylid And
 þer wer slayne both hobba

¹³-e- over -y- by corr. Fol. 58 ¹Vertical line separates
 de from danys. ²Stroked out. ³Stroked out in red. ⁴-d
 erased. ⁵Inserted above; caret in text.

that was hungares brothir and Buerne Bocharde al so was slayn
 in that bataille and many other men in bothe parties ⁊
 that tyme the danyos hade victorie ⁊ the gree^c of the felde.
 And that was for the kyng brought with hym but litil peple.
 The kyng Alured saw that the danes were strengier þan he.
 And anon he tournede a 3ene as faste as he myght And whan
 the danys come and fond hubba ded anon thei toke the body
 and beried hit with grett honour And maden ouer hym a grett
 logge^d and calde hit hubbes lowe that es in deuenesschire.
 whanne the lordes of Somersete Schir ⁊ of dorsete Schir
 herde telle that the ky (fol. 39^ab) ng was discourfited a
 non thei ordeygned al the pouer that they myghte haue and
 comen to the kyng there he was and thanked almyghti god that
 he was on lyve ffor they wende that the danys hade slayn
 hym. Tho^l toke the kyng and his barouns counceil amonges
 hem and saide that they wolde goñ ande mete with the danoys
 and fight with hym and so they reeden al that nyght and
 come o morwe aboute prime to Abingdoun and there they
 fonden þe danoys. And kyng Alured and his barouns assembled
 hem euerich on and fresshlych faught with the danoys and
 3affe astronger bataille thanne euer they hade done be fore.
 And the danys faught wel and manlich So þat men wiste nouht
 in what partie wer moste peple dede. And at the laste as
 god wolde the kyng hade the victorie with mochil honour
 ffor the danys wer so pursewed in eueri halfe So that þei
 nyste where to abide And euer the kyng pursewede heme xv
 dayes til at the laste they wer ful feyne to pray hym of
 pees and of grace and of acorde and wolde 3efe him good
 hoostages and swor that they nolde neuere make werre ne
 debate a 3ens hym. And ferthermore they be highte hym to
 brynge with hem her kyng of denmarke and thanne they wolde
 euerichon be Baptized and take cristendome And vp on this
 couenaunt kyng Alured graunted heme lyfe and lyme And they

Fol. 39 ^l_h inserted above by corr.

7 hunger his broþyr And burne wocard And in this batayll
 was many folke slayne one þat party The kyng Askyd hym as
 much⁶ as he myzt for to wend aþene And when þe danys had
 fond hubba his body legyne ded þay entyr and mad vppon
 hyme A grett logge And lett hit Call hobbylow and so yt
 ys callyd vnto thys day and that plasse ys in Devynchyr
 But þus hit be fyll as god woll þat þe kyng Aluryd had de
 vyctory wyt much honour for de danys wer (fol. 58^b) So
 drywyn þat þay ne wyst wat for to done and xv dayis þe
 kyng hym pursuyd at his wyll þat glad 7 fayne þey wer for
 to speke of pesse and accordyd and toke hym god hostagys
 and þay wold neuyr vppon hym wer ne none debatt Aþer
 And morouyr thay by hythe to kyng Aluard þat þay wold gone
 7 bryng her houe kyng to hym and that her kyng And thay
 sull deparþy² by bapticyd /vp on þis condycioun kyng
 Aluryd hym grantyd lyffe 7 lym and

⁶MS. has 6 minims for mu-.

seide that they wolde gõne in to Denmark and brynge hir kyng with hym vn to kyng Alured and saide that þei wolde come a3en to hym at the day that they hade assyngned And so þey wente forth in to her countre in al (fol. 39^ba) le the haste that they myghte And so they comen a3ene at the day that was heme assigned and broughte with heme here kyng Alured anon lett Baptize heme and lett chaunge here names. And thoo the kyng of danmarke that was ther nempned Adilstone and xxx of his fellowes here names were y chaunged Al so at þe same tyme alle the other that cam with heme wer there baptized and tournyd to Right beleue And alle these thinges weren dõn at wynchestre or elles at westmestre. And whãn al this was brought to ende kyng Alured made kyng Athelstõn and his mayne to dwelle with him xij daies with mochel merthe and solempnite. And afterward he 3af heme riche 3eftes aftir that they wer worþye And thane they nome here leue at the kyng and wente home in too here owne Countre And thane leued kyng Alured in pees and in Reste as ffor heme with owtẽn dowte.^e

Howe þe danoys that wente with Gurmonde in to ffraunce comen a 3ene in to Engelande and of the deth of kyng Alured
Capitulo Centesimo Nono

And thus hit fille afterward that the danoys of Northumberland that were paynymys comen a 3en with an howge pouere owt of ffraunce with Guromonde of Aufrike that tyme that he hade conquered England and hade 3eeuen the land to the Saxsounes And all tho that Comen owt of ffraunce arived in kent 7 sente to heme that dwelled in North humberland that they scholde come 7 whane tho ij.hostes wer comen to (fol. 39^bb) gydere they wente and quelled alle the cristene peple that they myghte take or fynde in Engeland And wente fro Countre to Countre and deden all the harme þat thei myghtẽn And in the same tyme the goode kyng Alured that was wontt to

sayd to hym þat þay shull fett her kyng and at A Sertene
 tyme to com A3ene at her day þat was assyngnyd And all þe
 Danys brouth her kyng wyt heme⁷ þe kyng Anone /Aluryd let
 hym be baptysyd and her namys⁸ changyd Soo þat þe kyng of
 Danys was callyd Athelstoun And xxx of his fellows namys
 wer changyd also And othir baptysit to þe be lev And all
 þis was done at westmestyr And aftyr þat þe kyng Aluryd
 held wyt hym kyng Athelstoun 7 All his Danys xij dayis at
 soyorwne wyt² much solempnite And gaf hem grett 3eftys
 aftyr that þey wer Sodend partyd^a Tho was kyng Alurid all
 att esse when he had his Enmys ouyrcome And þat þay wer
 tornyd to beleve of all my3ty god

Of Gormond

And thus thus² hit be fyll aftyrward that⁹ the danys of
 northumbrelond þat wer paynymys come wyt a grett host of
 fraunce þat ys wyt Gormond of Aufreke when he conquerd
 Englond And yt 3aff¹⁰ to þe Saxons and tho þat come fro
 france Arywyd in kente and sent⁹ in to Northumbrelond þat
 þay shull com to hym And when þe to hostys wer come 7
 assemblyd Anone they went þe Crystyn pepyll of¹¹ (fol.
 59^a) Englonde fro plasse to plasse and dyd much Sorowe
 And hit be fyll þuat¹ þat all my3ty god wold an[d]² hard
 chauns [of]² in Englond for the good kyng Aluryd þat went
 to

⁷-e- over -y- by corr. ⁸na- at end of line; -mis prob.
 erased and -mys written at beginning of next line. ⁹-t
 inserted above by corr. ¹⁰Vertical line separates yt
 from 3aff. ¹¹Catchword by scribe below: Englond
 Fol. 59 ¹Stroked out. ²Erased.

Chastise heme diyd^{2f} and that was mochil harme to al Englonde
 And he hade ben kyng or he deide .xxx 3ere and wel he
 gouerned the londe and euermore he broughte his Enymyes in
 subieccioun and he was a nobile Clerke and lett make aboke
 In Englissh of alle the dedes of knyghtes and kynges and
 of alle the batailles that they hade I doñe oþer hade been
 doñe in this land And many othir bokes of gesteas and of
 wisdome and of lernyng wherby aman myghte hym amende that
 wolde reed ther on or looke Of was sowle almyghty god haue
 mercy And this kyng Alured lith att Wynchestre.

Of kyng Edward that was Aluredes soñe Capitulo Centesimo
 x^{mo}

And whanne Alured was ded Edward his sone was made kyng
 that was a goode man and awis and a Courteis and the danoys
 dede hym moch disese And distroied mochel of his londe ffor
 the danes comen euermore mo and mo in to this land and faste
 encresed And whan the kyng saw that he myght nouhte better
 doñe he toke trews with heme and graunted heme pees And
 thee pees lasted nouht longe ffor the danoys be gañ to werr
 and make^g with the English men a3en and dede heme moch
 sorwe And therfore vp on Atyme kyng Edward assemled an howge
 pouer And thought too fight with the danoys And in thee
 (fol. 40^a) mene tyme kyng Edward deyde as¹ was godes wille.
 And this Edward hade been kyng xiiij 3er and was entired
 at wynchestre be syde kyng Alured his fadir

Off kyng Athelston 7 of Edmund and of Eldrede 7 of Edwyn
 hys brethern Capitulo Centesimo Vndecimo

And after this Edward regned his soñe Athelston And whan
 he hadde ben kyng iiij.3ere he werred vp on the danoys

Fol. 40 ¹-eyd as by corr. over erasure.

A batte the Danys deid in the men tyme þat Alluryd Reignit
xxx 3er and a good kyng had bene 7 well couth Chastyd hys
Enmys for he was a good clark 7 mad many bokys And hon boke
mad of Englysse of Awenturs of kyngys and of bataylles þat
hathe be done in þe lond and meny othyr bokys of gestys
and let hym wryt of A grett wysdom and of good lernyng
þour wych bokys many man may hym a mend that woll hym Red
vppoñ loke vppoñ hous shoul god haue mercy and this kyng
Aluryd lyeth at wenschestyr

Of Edward þat was Alrudis sonne

Aftyr þis Aluryd Reignyd his sone þat was A good mañ 7 A
wysse þat meñ callyd Edward þat was wondyr cortesse 7 þe
danys ded much Sorowe in the lond And her pour encressyd³
and gan for to wex fro day to day And þe danys [...] ⁴ cam
houth¹ wyt her compaynes in to this lond And when þe kyng
saw þat he may no bettyr done he toke trewys wyt hym and
grandyd hym his pesse And nevyr þe lesse þe truys durd not
long⁵ þat þe danys be gane for to wer vppoñ the Englis meñ
7 ded hem much sorowe wer w^a for þe kyng Edward A Semlyd
a gret host for to fyith wyt hem And þan þis kyng Edward
[...] reynngnyd⁶ xxiiij^{ti} 3er and lyith at wenchester by Seid
his fadyr

of kyng Adelstoun

Aftyr this Edward Reynyd Adelstoun hys Sone and he had
Reignyd iiij 3er he held batayll (fol. 59^b) azensse þe-
Batryll¹ þe Danys

³-r- inserted above by corr.; caret in text. ⁴Letter
erased, poss. a. ⁵-g by corr. over erasure, poss. -d.
⁶rey- by corr. over erasure.

and droff kyng Gaufride that was kyng ouer the danoyis and al his hoste vn to the see. And thanne dwelled he al a 3ere by the marches of Scottlond and al the Countre fil to hym faste. And longe ther after the men of Cumberlonde and the Scottes and they of westmerland all attones by gonne to werr vp on kyng Athelston And come and 3af hym bataile right strong And in that bataille kyng Achilston^a and his men quelled so manye of hire enemyes that no man kowth of hem for certein telle the noumber And aftir þat he was kyng but iij 3ere And he hade been kyng in al xxv 3ere. And after he deyde² and lieth at malmesburi And whan he was ded Edmund his broþer was made kyng ffor as mochil as Adelstone hade no sone. And this Edmund was a nobil man & astrong of his bodi and a nobile kynyght & the thride 3ere aftir that he hade ben kyng he wente [inter (?)]³ In to humbar and ther he fonde.ij knyghtes of danoyis that on men Called Enlaf & that othir Renaud. Anon this kyng Edmund drofe heme owt both owt of the land And after that he went in to Comberland and ther he toke (fol. 40^ab) a grett pray And this Edmound was kynge but Sevene 3ere and afterward he deide and lieth at Clastenburi^b And aftir this Edmund regned Eldred his brothir that avengid his fadres dethe Edward of his enmyes and quelled heme after that he went and seisede al Northumberland in to his hande & made the Scottes entendaunt to his will And in the seconde 3ere her affter come Analaf Oorian that was kyng of Denmarke and toke al Northumber land & seisede hit in to his hand and ij 3ere helde hit And afterward came kyng Eldrede with his strong pouere and drof him owte of the land And kyng Eldrede was a strounge man and a good man And of his goodenesse Seynt Duñston spake moche And this nobile kyng Eldrede regnede x 3ere and an halfe and after warde he deide and lieth at wynchestre And after this kyng Eldrede

²By corr. over erasure. ³Erased, prob. by scribe.

and droff kyng Canfryd/ þat was kyng of the danys and all
 þe host in to þe See and Restyd by Scotlond 7 toke strong
 þe cuntre all a3er and aftyr þay of Combrelond and þe
 Scottys of westyner and þe lond^b be gane to wer vppoñ hym
 kyng Athelstoun and he hym 3aff A strong batayll and
 kyllyd So many of them þat nomañ couthe tell þe nombyr of
 heme And aftyr he Reignyd ~~vii~~¹ v 3er And he Raynyd in all
 xxv 3er and lyit att malmesbery /And aftyr þis hastlaltoun
Regnid Edmond þat was þe nobyll knythe mañ of body And A
 nobyll knythe and þe þird 3er aftyr he was mad kyng he
 went ouyr hombyr in þe wyche plasse had ij kyngys of danys
 þat one mañ callyd Enilafe And þat othyr Renald this kyng
 Edmond drove hym bothe fro the lond and aftyr went And
 toke gret pryd^c in Cumbre lond this Edmnd Reignyd bot vij
 3er and lyith att glassynbury /And aftyr this Edmond
Reynngnyd Eldred hys brothyr þat vengid Edward his fadyr
of his enmys þat hym kyllyd 7 aftyrwar he sesyd
 northumbrelond in to hys hond and mad þe schottys A bowe
 7 meke in to his wyll And þe second 3ere⁷ he had Reignyd
 come Arnalak Quiram þat was kyng of Denmarke 7 sdessesyd^d
 all Northumbrelond and held þat lond to 3er aftyr þan
 come kyng Eldred was A nobyll mañ and a good of hosse⁸
 goodnes Sent Donstoun prechid And this Eldred Reignyd xj
 3er and lyith at wenchestyr /And aftyr thys Eldred

⁷-re by corr. above; caret in text. ⁸Badly formed -o-
 like -e.

Edwynne his brothir was made kyng and hee was acontrarious man to god and too alle the worlde and to his owne peple ffor he hatede euermore his owne nacioune and his owne londe And worchipede and confortd his Enemyes 7 sett nought be holy Cherch and toke of here alle the tresur that he myghte haue and that was moch harme to hym and also perel of his sowle And þere fore god wolde nouht that he regnede but iiij 3ere And afterward he deide and lieth at wynchestre

Of kynge Edgar that was kynge abowe alle the kynges of the land of Scotlond and of walles and how hee was begyled þoru takyng of hys (fol. 40^ba) wyff^c Capitulo Centesimo xij^o

And aftir this Edwynne Edgare his sone was made kyng Ande was anoble man and moche loued god and holi Cherch and alle goodnesse 7 pees and he was astrong man and a bolde and mayntende his lond in Reste and in pees. And this Edgar was above al kynges of Scottlond and of walles 7 fro the tyme that kyng Artur was ded ther was neuer kyng of swech power vn to this tyme And this kyng Edgar was sent [to]⁴ Edwardis fadir And whanne his wif that was seint Edwardis modir was ded and passed owt of þis worlde men tolde hym of the fairnesse of Estrill that was Orgarus doughtour þat was a Baroun of Deuensschir and that sche was feire passing alle other so þat alle men spoken of here ferrnesse And so vp on atyme he called to hym on of his knyghtes that he moch louede ande tristed vp on that men called Edelwolde and saide thus to him in councele Go now in myn name to the gentil Baroun Orgar of Deuensschir and loke and See if that his doughter be as feir as men telleþ me saie to him that y wille haue here to my wife. This knyght wente

⁴Erased.

Edwyne hys brothyr Rignid And was An evil⁹ mān toward god
 for he hathit folke of his owne lond And lovid 7 honouryd
 strong meñ and Sett litill by holy chyrche All þe tresur
 þat he (fol. 60^a) mythe haue þat was grett schame And
 wyolens to hym Selfe 7 peraell of his soull and ther for
 god wold notte þat he sull Reigne no longer¹ iiij 3er and
 deid and lythe att wynchestyr

⁹By corr. over erasure. Fol. 60 ¹Poss. -e-, not -q-.

forth in his way and come þeder that þe lady was And whanne
 he saw thee lady was so feir in ale thinges a noñ he dought^d
 in his herte for to haue here hym selfe to his wiff if that
 he myghte and a noñ spake ther offe to Orgar here fadir And
 Orgar was an oldee man and hade no mo Childeren but here of
 his daughters And saw that Edelwolde was a comely mañ and a
 feir of Statur And al so Rich and þat þe kyng louede hym
 well And þoughte that his daughter scholde welle (fol. 40^b)
 bene sette vp on hym and graunted hym his daughter to ben
 his wyf if that þe goode lorde wolde consente and graunte
 ther to This Edelwolde wente a3ein and come to his lorde
 the kyng ande tolde hym that sche was afair womman I nough
 to mannes sight but of schap of bodi sche was nougt semely
 nothir wel y schape. thañ seide the kyng vn to hyme I ne
 sette by her but lityl⁵ pris Sire my lorde quod Ethelwolde
 Sche schal ben his heir of all that he hath after his day.
 And Sire I am but a power knyght and nouht rich of londes
 And I pray 3ou Sire if that hit be 3our wille that 3ee wolde
 graunte me to haue her to my wyff if that y may her gette
 fforthane schal I bee a rich mañ in tyme comynge. In the
 name of god saide thee kyng I graunt her the with a goode
 will Ethlwold⁶ thanked þoo his lord the kyng moch and oo
 noñ wente a 3eñe in to Deuenesshir and spoused the damyssel
 And there he dwellede. And vp on atyme as he and his lady
 were to gideres in bede Anoñ he tolde here in councel howe
 and in whiche maner he hade here gette to been his wyff
 And how queyntly he be giled his lorde the kyng that he
 most trist vp oñ hym And tolde her how the kyng thought
 to have hader^e hyme selfe to his wiff And whañ Estrilde
 herde hym selfe telle this tale Schee louede hym neuermor
 after in herte as sche hade doñe be for And so this lady
 conceyvede by this Edelwolde a schilde a soone and whañ
 tyme come that the childe was boreñ Ethelwolde (fol. 41^a)

⁵By corr. over erasure. ⁶First l inserted above w by corr.

Blank Page

come to his lorde the kyng and praid hym to cristen a schilde of his at the ffounte stoñ if hit were his wille the kyng anone graunted hym and saide that he wolde with good wille. And come and named the schild Edgar after his owne name And whañ this was doñ Edgewolde hym thouth þat he was siker I nowgh of the kyng that he scholde doo him no schame ne lyge with his wyff no neuermor after that tyme he hade susspecioun of gyle and of tresoun And sore hym drade ffor as moch as the kyng was afair mañ and a Ioly & anamorous

Howe kyng Edgar dispoused^a afterwarde Estrilde whanne Edelwold was ded Capitulo Centesimo xiiij^o

And thus hit ffill sone ther aafter þat the kynges men that wer with the kyng in howsolde spoken amonges heme and seyde that Edelwold was richely auaunced thorough the mariage of his wiff and sayde openly amonges heme that he hade spoused the ffairest womañ that euer any man wiste lyving And whanne the kyng herde telle of hire much fairnesse he thought that Edelwolde hade doñ him tresoun and gyle and thought priuylich that he wolde goñ in to Deuensshir as hit wer to huñte for hertes & hyndes and for othir wilde beestes and thought to See the lady ar that he come a 3eñe and that tyme the lady was dwellyng at Amaner be sydes the fforest there þat the kyng scholde huñte In And kyng Edgar sent to the maner and come and lay there al nyght And whañ tyme come þat the kyng wolde goñ to soper and the sunne that tyme was bright And the kyng whanne he was sette axed after his Gossipes^b and after his godsone And þañ Edelwolde wente þoo forth and brought her be for the kyng And Certes hit was (fol. 41^ab) al a 3ein Edelwoldes wille that his lorde the kyng scholde haue seen his wyff The lady ful curteisly welcomeed the kyng and he kissed her ful swetlych And nome her be the hande and sett her be sydes him at the

Of kyng Edgare

Thus hyt be fyll þat all men in kyng Edgrays² Courte þan
 spake and sayd that Edylewold was Rycly auguncyd þour þe
 maryag þat he had by hs wyff and zett þay sayd he was
 Awauncyd and honouryd mor þan he had spowsyd þe and³ fayr
 women þat euyr was sene And when þe kyng herd so much of
 her but he thouth⁴ þane that /Edelwold wold gone in to
 Deuineschyr As hyt wer for þe hont for þe harte and hund
 and opyr old^a bestys and þan he⁵ shull See þer the lady
 or he departyd thens And this lady was dwellyng in a maner
 besyd the forest þer þat þe kyng wold honte In⁵ þat maner
 þe kyng was herberowyd all anyzte and when tym cam þat þe
 kyng shull sopp And Sene⁶ þe kyng Askid aftyr his gosshep
 and aftyr his godson And Edwold mad her come by for þe
 kyng And netherlesse yf it myzth othyr haue bene she shull
 nott come in to his syte⁷ by his wyll The lady þane welcomd
 þe kyng and Swet þe lady hym cyst and toke her by þe hond
 And her nex hym Sett

²-y- from -u- by corr. ³þe by corr. above; and stroked
 out. ⁴-h- by corr. above. ⁵By corr. over erasure.
⁶Stroked out. ⁷-e by corr. over erased -h.

sopere ⁊ so thei sette and souped to gideres and that tyme was comen vsage in thee lande when a man schold drinke to a nothir the drinker scholde say wasaile and þat othir scholde saie to him drynke sire hayle And thus the kyng ⁊ þe lady dede many tymes and ofte tymes kessed And whan thei hade soped and tyme was come to go to bedde þe kyng went to his beed and moch þought vp on that lady ffor sche was so feir so that he nyste what to don for the loue of here and þought þat he schold be ded but if that he hade his wille of hire And vp on the morwe be tymes the kyng wente in þe to the fforest^c to hunte and disporte hym and so that he toke þere moch venysoun of hertes and of hyndes and of wilde bestes and he sente ther^l ofe grete pleynte to the lady And thries he cam and spake with her whilles he was in that Countre And than sone after the kyng wente thens and thought both be nyght and day howe he myght brynge^d Edelwolde and vn do hyme for cause that he hade ffalslych deceyved hyme And anon sone after viij. dayes the kyng ordeygned a parlement at Salesbury amonges his barouns and praide heme of councel howe that the Countre of Northumberland myghte be savede and kepte ffroo Enymyes that the danoys comen not in to that Countre ffor to destroy hit (fol. 41^ba) And so this knyght Etlwolde come to that parlement And so the kyng sente hym to 3orke to be Cheueteyn and kepere of that Countre And as he wente in to that Countre ward men comen be the wey and mett him and dede hym vn to deth And anon as kyng Edgar wyste that Edelwold was ded Anone he sente aftir that feir lady Estrilde vn to the Citte of london and there he spoused here with moch Solempnite and helde aryal feste. And that day he wered a croune of golde and the quene a nobir that day lastyng And Seynt Dunston come vp on the morw in to the kynges Chamber And whan he sawe Estrilde lye be the

Fol. 41 ^lCorr. has added a flourish to -r.

and so Suppyd þay to gydyr And that tyme was one costum
 And-oune-hewsyd-a-newgae⁶ þat and⁵ A mañ dranke /⁸ oone⁵
 shull say wassaylle and þat opyr shull Ansquerd and say
 dri⁶ dryng heyll and thus ded þe kyng 7 þe lady many
 tymys And also þay keste And aftyr Soppyd and when tyme
 went to bed the kyng went in to his bed /hartelych then
 kyng þout vppon þat lady fayrnes and he was ouyr come for
 love þan hym thouth he shuld (fol. 60^b) dy for her but he
 had hys wyll Vppon þe morrow the kyng Rosse And to þe
 forest he wente þer for to dysport hym wyt hartys and wyt
 hynds And wyt opyr wyld bestys And of þe hartys toke⁹
 gret plente to-þe-lad-he-sent⁶ 7 iij tymis he went hym
 Self to solasse and to speke wyt þat lady whyles he dwelt
 in þat Cuntre and aftyrward he Remeve thens And thouthe
 how he my3th delyuyr Eldellwold from hys wyff and he had
 hyme forist dyssayvid And the kyng anone Aftyr viij dayis
 lett ordeyne A perlemente at Salysbury of all baronage
 counsell for to haue And for hordene how þe contre of
 Northumbrelond my3 be best kepe þat de danys come nouthe
 þer þe lond for to dystroy¹⁰ And this Edylwold com⁹ to
 3orke for to be kepeher¹¹ of þat cuntre And þus hit be
 fyll þat meñ that know hym noht¹² slowh hym by þe way
 And a none as þe kyng hard þat he was ded he lett send
 aftyr the lady Estrell þat Sche shull com in þe Sitte of
 london 7 ther to be weddyd vn to þe kyng wyt gret
 Solempnite fest^b And [he]¹³ wer a croune of gold and þe
 quene Anothir And seynt donstoun on þe morow come in to
 þe kyngys chambyr and fawnd þe kyng⁹ in þe bed wyt þe
 quene

⁸Erasure. ⁹Inserted above by (?) scribe; caret in text.
¹⁰Superscript -r-. ¹¹Second -e- inserted by corr.
¹²Flourish on -t. ¹³Erased.

kyng a bedde Seynt Dunston axed what sche was And the kyng
 answerde and seide the quene Estrilde. And Seynt dunston
 seide to hym that he ded moch wrong and al a 3eins the lawe
 of god And a 3eins godes wille ffor to haue a womman to
 his wiffe whos schilde he hade take att the fount Ston And
 the quen for that word loued neuer mor aftere Seint Donston
 And natheles Seynt Dunston warned hem both and Councelde
 heme that they scholde leue sweche ffolyes and mysleuyng^e
 And hit was al for nought ffor the loue was so moch be twen
 heme And so þe kyng be gate vp on Estrilde asone that men
 called Eldrede. And whanne the schilde was of vj 3ere age
 hys fadir the kyng deide And he hade regned xvij 3eere
 And he lyeth at Glastenbury

Howe Seynt Edward the kyng marter was quelled þourgh his
 Stepemodir Estrilde ffor Enchessoun (fol. 41^b) þat sche
 thought Eldrede^f her Soñe kyng Capitul Centesimo xiiij^o

And after this Edgar Edward hys sone was kyng that he hade
 gotten vp on his firste wyff and hee gouerned the Reame wel
 and wislych and graciously ffor alle maner of godnesse he
 folwede and lyved an hooly lyfe. And above al thinges he
 loved most almyghty god and hooli Cherch And at the laste
 Estrelde hys Stepe modir lett slee hym and thoughte to
 make here owne sone kyng Elderede And in this maner he was
 doñ vn to the deth ffor thus hit fill vp on a day that this
 kyng Edward went on huntynge vp on aday in a forest in the
 South Countre be sydes a Toune that es called warham and
 in that fforest was grett plente of hertes and of hyndes.
 And whanne he hade been a whille in the fforest he thought
 vp on his brothir Eldered ffor the quen dwelled ffrome the
 fforest but a litill way And so he thought for to goñ and
 visitte his Stepemodir ² Eldered his brothir al so and

²By (?) corr. above.

And Sent Donstoun axid who so was pere⁹ 7 þe kyng Answerd
 And sayd þis is þe quene /Estrell And þe Ersbesshopp Sent
 Donstoun said þat he ded gret wrong A 3ens goodys wyll¹⁴
 to take A wommane¹⁵ to wyff whos shild he had take at þe
 fonstone And þe /Quen neuyr lovyd sent Anstoun⁶ Donstone
 for that word and neuyrdeles the good mañ warnd hym oftyñ
 tymis þat foly to leve but this warnyng A wayll lytte for
 þe lov by twen hem was so much þe kyng begatt vppon this
 womañ A sone (fol. 61^a) þat meñ æ¹ callyd /Eldred² And þan
 this sheld³ was vij 3er of Age the kyng his fadyr deid A
 buot^a þat tyme he had Revgnyd xviij 3er And lyith at
glassynbury

Afyr⁴ this Edgar reignid Edward his sone þat he be gatt
 be hys fyrst wyff þat well 7 nobyll gouernyd þe lond for
 he was full of all maner goodnes 7 lyve full holy A boue
 all thyng to louff well god 7 holy chyrche And þe quene
 /Estreld his Stepmodyr lett hym be kyllyd for enchosyne
 for to make hys owne sone /Eldred kyng and þus was he
 slayne Afyrward as 3e shall her hyt be fyll þus Appon
 Aday þat þis kyng Edward went hym to wod hym for to play
 in þe /Southe contre besydeys A towne þat ys callyd wharham
 in þe wych forest was gret plente of hartys and hyndys And
 as he had ben a wyll ther hym for to play he thouth vppon
 his broþyr /Eldred þat was wyt his mothyre þe quene for her
 plasse was ny the forest and though for to gone And vysid
 his brothyre 7

¹⁴Vertical line separates goodys from wyll. ¹⁵Vertical
 line separates A from womane. Fol. 61 ¹Stroked out.
²-l- poss. from -d- by scribe. ³-e- by corr. over erasure.
⁴Three-line blue initial.

tok with him but litil meygne. And as he rod in the fforest
 to wardes his Stepemodir that dwelled that tyme in the
 Castell of Corff And as he rod amonges grett bussches And
 thikenesse of the wode he loste his men and nyste neuere
 wher that they wer And so he rod forth allone til att the
 laste he come owte of the wode. And be helde allabout and
 atte laste he sawe his Stepemodris place there that sche
 dwellede. And soo hee (fol. 42^a) rode thedir alone And
 some of her men sawe him come aloñe and anoñ went to the
 quene and saide that the kyñge come theder and no man with
 hym and tho made sche mochil Ioye and boughte priuylich
 how that he myght be ded. And anoñ sche called to here
 priuilich oñe of here knyghtes that sche moch trist vp oñ
 and tolde to him all her councel And a noñ caste amonges
 hem both how that he scholde be doñe vn to the deth And
 soo they come bothe to the kyng and curteislych welcomed
 hym. And the kyng bankede heme and saide that he was come
 to visitte here and to speke with his 3onge brothir Eldred
 The quene praide hym thoo for to alighte adoune of his
 Palfray and abide and dwelle with hir that nyght The kyng
 thanked here and seide that he nolde nought nor that he
 myghte nought ffor he wolde ryde a3en to the fforest if
 that he myght fyndee his men. Than praide sche hym that
 he wolde drinke with heree er that he wente and the kyng
 graunted her curteislych And whanne the kuppe with wyne
 was I come the quen toke the kuppe and drank to the kyng
 And the kyng kurteisly tok of here the cuppe and sette hit
 to his mouthe to drynke. And whiles that þe kyng dranke the
 same knyght that was prive with the quene and wiste of her
 councel with a long scharpe knyff smot the kyng to the
 herte. And anoñe he fil ther doune deed of his palfray to
 thee grounde. And thus was that gentil kyng doñe vn to
 his deth And the quene anone 3af to the knygh that dede
 the dede ffalslyche golde and Silvir plente and many riche
 Iuelles And a noñe the knyght (fol. 42^b) wente ouer the

had⁵ wyt hym but A lytill mayne and went toward þe
 stepmodyrs house in þat tym she⁶ Soyorne in the castell
 of Crofte / And as he Rod in þe thynces of þe wod to Aspy
 hys game It be fyll þat he⁶ went amysse 7 lost hys mayne
 þat wer wyt hyme come And at þe last he com out of þe wod
 And a lokyd a bouth he sawe fast be syd þe maner þat þe
 stepmodyr dwellyd in / thethyrward he went went¹ A lone
 And anone hyt was told þe quene how þat þe kyng comyd a
 lone wytout Anny man⁷ And þer for she⁸ mad sow-⁷¹ thouth
 how þat sche myzt done þat he wer slayne as-preuyliche-as
she-myste-doon-þat¹ And preuelych she⁸ cald hyme¹ vn to
 her knyztys to heme she⁸ had told of her counsell bytwene hem
 both þay com to þe kyng And curtesly hym Ressayvid of-þe¹
 kyng Edward told þat he was com to her to vysit (fol. 61^b)
 And also to speke wyth⁹ / Eldred his brothyr The quene
 thane many tyme hym thankyd And prayd for to lyte¹⁰ And
 / Erborowe / wyt her all þe nyte¹⁰ And þe kyng sayd þat he
 my3th nott but a3en he wold wend to his folke yf þat he
 my3t hem fynd / And when þe Queñ saw þat A wold nat¹¹ a
 byd sche prayd hym þat he wold honys dryng^b and he
 grauntyd her / And Anone as þe drynke come the Quen dranke
 to þe quene¹ kyng and þan þe kyng tok þe cop and settyt
 to hys mouth And in þe meñ tyme whyll he dranke þe knyzt
 þat was wyt þe Quene wyt a knyff Smott þe kyng to the
 harte / and ther he fyll A doune ded of hys palfray to þe
 erth // Thane þe quene for this ded 3af þe kny3th gold 7
 syluyr grett plente and othyr Ryches / And þe knyth when¹²
 thys was done whend¹³ hym ouyr the

⁵had by corr. over erasure with stroke to separate from wt. ⁶By (?) scribe above; caret in text. ⁷Tail on -n erased. ⁸s- over c- by corr. ⁹-h added by corr. ¹⁰-e by corr. over erased -h. ¹¹Inserted above by corr.; caret in text. ¹²By corr. over erasure. ¹³-d inserted above by corr.

See and come no more a 3ene and soo he Aschapede And in
þis maner was kyng Edward martereded and this was in the
 3er of Incarnacioun of oure lorde ihesus Crist ix C iiij^{xx}
 3ere. And he hade beñ kyng but xij 3ere 7 an halfe and he
 was entered at Glastenbury

Of kyng Eldred and howe Swyn kyng of Denmarc come ande
 held Engeland and how Eldred was nought belowed amonges
 his peple and howe he fley in to Normandie Capitulo C^o xv^o

And after this kyng Edward regned Eldrede his brothir and
 Seynt Dunston crouned hym kyng. And sone þer aftir Seynt
 Dunston deide whenne he hade schriuen þe quene of the grett
 tresoun that sche had donne to kyng Edward ffor as moch as
 þat sche was cause of his deth and he schroff here and 3affe
 here penance and assoiled here and afterward sche leuede in
 Chastite and in hoolynesse and this Eldrede spoused an
 englissh womman and by gat vp on her ij sones that on men
 called Edmund Irensides and that othir Edwynne and sone
 after deyde the quene here modir And in the same tyme come
 Swyn of Denmarc kyng to chalange al that and to conquere
 al that þat his Auncestres hade gette and conquered And so
 hit fille that he hade al his axinge and his wille ffor
 there durste no man with stonde hym he hade so moch powere
 ffor the noble Erle Cutberd of lyndessaye and alle the
 grett lordes and comeneres of Northumberland. And al most
 alle the grett lordes of Engeland helden with Swyn that
 was kyng of Denmarke ffor enchessoun that they loued not
 kyng Eldrede ffor cause þat (fol. 42^ba) Edward his brothir
 was treytourslych slayn. And therefore no man sett by hem
 but litel pris And therfor kyng Swyn hade all his will in
 the land And kyng Eldrede fley and wente in to Normandie
 and spake soo to the Duk of Normandy that þe Duke 3af him
 his Sister to wyff And vp on here he gatt ij sones. that on
 men called Alured And þat othir Edward. And whan kyng

See and so Scapyd he // and kyng¹⁴ Edward þus was marturd
 It was in þe 3er of of-our¹ in carnacioun of our lord
 Ihesus Cryst ix^C iiij^{xx} 3er And he had Reignyð xj 3er And
 onoe^C half and lyithe at Glassyngbury

Of Eldrede

Aftyr this kyng Edward Reignid his brothyr Eldrede¹¹ and
 sent /Dunstoun crownyd hym And þis Sent Dunstoun deid sone
 aftyr þat he had for 3eve the quene /Estrell her tyrpasse
 forenchseun¹ þat sche was cause of Sent Edwardys dethe And
 Sent Donstoun had hym^d a Soyled and penauns enioynid And
 sche levid aftyr chaste lyf And clene /Thys¹⁵ kyng Edward
 weddit¹¹ on Eng lond¹ lyssch womman And vppoñ here¹⁶ be gat
 Edmonde Irensyd And a nothyr Sone þat meñ callyd /Edwynne
 And aftyr deyð þe queñ her modyr And in that tym come in
 to Englond when-he-was¹ keng of denmark for to chalang 7
 conquer All þat his Anscetreis had be (fol. 62^a) for tyme
 and so he conquer and had all at his axying for þe Erle
 /Cutberte/ of lendesay and all þe pepyll of northumbrelond
 Alid¹ almost all þe gret lordys of Englond² held wyt þe
 kyng of /Denmarke for as much as thay lovyd not þe kyng
 /Edward for enchosyne þat¹ þat his good brother /Edward
 was slayne falsy for enchesyn of hym. And ther for nomañ
 Sett but lytill by hym werfor kyng /Swyne had all his wyll
 and toke all þe lond And /Eldred³ þe kyng fled into
 normandy And so he spake to þe duke of normandy and þe
 duke 3aff hym hys dou3tyr to wyff vppoñ wych he be gatt
 ij Sonnys and one meñ callyd /Aluryd and þe todyr 7^a
 the-bothyr¹ Edward And when

¹⁴// and kyng by corr. over erasure. ¹⁵-s from -c by
 corr. ¹⁶re abbreviation-mark by corr. Fol. 62 ¹Stroked
 out. ²-d by scribe above. ³Superscript -l-.

Swyne hade conquerde al the land hee gouernede it wel and
worthili And he regned xv 3ere and lith at 3orke

How kyng Eldrede come a 3ene fro Normandie ⁊ how knoght
þe danoys was kyng and of the werre that was beetwen hem
and Edmund Irensides. ¶ Capitulo C^o xvj^o

And whanne Swyne the danoys was dede knoght that was his
sone dwellede in Engeland and wolde haue been kyng And thoo
come a 3ene fro Normandy kyng Eldrede with an howge power
and nauee So that knoght durste not abide but fley thens
and wente in to Denmarke. And kyng Eldrede toke his reame
a 3ene and hade so moche peple with him so that he be ganne
to werre and distroie hem that hade holden with kyng Swyne
and holpen hem in his werr And afterward this knoght come
a 3ene ffro Denmark with astrong power So that kyng Eldred
durste not abyde him But anon fley þens Ande wente to
london And there helde hem And þo come kyng knoght þe
danoys with an howge pouer And be segede kyng Eldrede. And
so att the laste hee deide there in þat Citte And lythe at
Seynt Pawles. And he hade ben kyng (fol. 42^b) but ix 3ere

Of kyng Knogh Capitulo C xvij^o

And whanne kyng Eldred was ded and entiered knoght the
danois be ganne to reigne but Edmund Irendies that was kyng
Eldredes sone by his firste wiffe ordeigned him an howgee
Ooste and bi ganne stronglich to werr vp on kyng knoght
that was of Denmark and so they fought to gider on tyme
and othir And strong wer was be twen hem two so grett that
hit was grett wondir to speke ther off. And the quene Enne^a
that dwelled that tyme at wynchestr was sore adred ffor
here ij sonnes Alured and Edward lest þey scholde ben
ouercome and defowled in that werr a non sche nome and
sente hem ouer the see in to Normandie vn to the Duke

/Sweyne/⁴ had conquerd all þe lond he Raynyd nobely 7
lyvid bothe xv 3er and deyð and lyith att yorke

Aftyr⁵ the de dethe^b of /Swynne/knoth/⁶ þat was A dou3ty⁷
knyth hes⁸ sone dwellyd in Englonð⁹ and wold haue bene
kyng And þan come /Eldred/ a3ene out of normandy wyth¹⁰
much pepyll 7 wyth a strong navy þat kny3t durst nott A
byd but fle a3ene in to Denmarke þan þe kyng Eldred had
a 3ene his londe and held so Gret lordschyp þat he¹¹ be
gan to¹² dystroy all þo þat ~~/~~¹³ had holp /Swynne þat was
a dane a3ens hym And aftyrward come a3ene þis kny3th from
Denmarke wyt a grett pour So þat Eldred durst not wyt hym
fythe but fled from þens to london And ther he held hym
/than com þe knyth^c and hym besegyð so long /tell þat
kyng /Eldred died¹⁴ in the Cite of london And lyeth at
powllys and he Reignyd ix 3er

Aftyr⁵ the dethe of this /Eldred/knyth/þat was A dane by
gane for to Rayne but (fol. 62^b) Edmond Irensyd þat was
kyng /Eldredis sone by his furst wyff hordynyð a grett
host and be gane to wer vppon þe kyng 7 so he ded many
tymys 7 ofte and þe wer was so strong and So hard yt was
wondyr to señ or to wyt And þe quene /Emme þat dwellyt at
wynchestyr had gret d[...]¹⁵ of her ij Sonnes of-þe-wer¹
Alurid and Edward lest þay shuld defoulyth 7 mysdone þurh
hys wer wer she¹⁶ sente hym ouyr þe See in to Normandy to
þe duke

⁴-y- from -n- by corr. ⁵Three-line blue initial. ⁶knoth
by corr. over erasure. ⁷-3ty by corr. over erasure.
⁸-s by corr. above; caret in text. ⁹-d added by corr.
¹⁰-h by corr. above. ¹¹By corr. above. ¹²By corr. in
left margin at beginning of line. ¹³Erasure, poss. he.
¹⁴-e- by corr. over erasure, poss. -d-. ¹⁵Illegibly
smudged, prob. -red. ¹⁶-s over -c by corr.

Richard that was her vnclē. And ther they dwelde longe tyme in pees and in Reste. And so al wey Edmund Irendies^b and knoght ofte tymes werrede to gideres. So at the laste þei wer y made at acorde in this manere that they scholde de parte the londe bee twen hem̄ twoo And so thei deden 7 after they be comen goode ffrendes as þough thei hade ben boren bretheren of oo modir

Howe kyng Edmund Irensides was quelled þourgh a false treitour Edrich of Strattoun Capitulo Cente xviij^o

And thane there were ij kynges in the land Edmund Irenside 7 knoght the danoys And thus hit fille in the same tyme And in the same 3ere þat they were bothe accorded ffor as moch as ther was be twen hem moche looue a fals treitour hade ther of Envie þat men called Edrich of Strattoun and hee was a grett lorde and was dwellyng with Edmund Irensides. And helde of (fol. 43^a) hyme al the londe that he hade ande ffor al that the falce thef thoughte to be traie his owne lorde for to make knoght the danoys kynge and lorde of alle þe londe and thought that he scholde be þere fore richli auaunced and rewarded of kyng knoght for that doying and þought^a to haue ben welbe loued of knoght þerefore and most priue with hym of his councel And so vp on a day he praide his lorde Edmound Irensides for to come and ette with him and dwelle with hym anyght And the gentile kyng graunted hym and come to hym at his praier and he was worchipfully serued of goode metes and of goode drinkes. And whanne nyght was comen that the kyng scholde goo to hi^b Chamber and his owne meyne with hym̄ And whan̄ the kyng come in to his chamber he stode and be helde abowte hym 7 sawe afeire ymage stondyng and wel y schape as hit hade beñ an Archier and holdyng in his hand a bowe y bente and ther inne an arwe Ande kyng Edmund wente nere to be holde the ymage what hit myght be and anone towchid with his hande

/Rychard her hunkyll and per pay per¹ dellyd^d and leved¹⁷
 in pesse long tyme Thys /Edmond Irensyd 7 /knyt werryd
 strongly to gedyr but at þe last þeay¹⁸ wer acordyd in
 this maner That pay shull departe þe Rem by twen hem¹⁹
 to and so pay dyd and aftyrward by good frendys to¹ well
 lovyd to gydyr pay be come Swor bretheryne Also pay louyd
 to gedyr as thay had beñ brether of hone body be borne¹
 Modyr borne

And⁵ aftyr this Raygnyd kyng Edmund²⁰ Irensyd 7 knythe the
 dane /but þus hyt be fyll Aftyrward in the Same 3er þat
 pay wer acordyd 7 so much lowyd to gyddy[r]²¹ wher a false
 thef a traytour had Envy to þe lowe þat was bytween heme
 and frendschip whos name was /Eldred and Strettoun þat was
 a gret lord 7 was /Edmond Irensyd man and of hym held all
 þe lond þat he had And nevyrþeles ter^e he thouzth²² hys
 lord to be tray and make kyng /knyth/ of all þe lond to
 þe entente to haue ben Rychly A wancyd And to hym welbe
 lovyd for euyr werfor he prayd his lord Edmond Irensyd
 vppon A day wyt hyme for to dyne 7 þe kyng²³ tho Curtesly
 hym grauntyd and to hym come at his (fol. 63^a) prayer And
 At met þe kyng was Ryally Seruyd wyt dyuers metys and
 drynkkys And¹ when nyte² come he shull haue gone to bed
 þe kyng toke hys owne mayne and toke hys Chambyr And as
 he lokyd about he saw a fayr Emage and well mad 7 in
 Sembland as hit wer a narchar wyt oute^a A bowe bente in
 hys hond And in þe bow a fyne Arrowe /kyng Edmond went
 ner to be hold hyt bettyr what hyt myzt be And anone as
 he tochyd

¹⁷-d by corr. above; caret in text. ¹⁸-a- stroked out.
¹⁹By corr. above; caret in text. ²⁰MS. has 6 minims for
-mun-. ²¹-r erased. ²²-o- by corr. above; caret in text.
²³dyne ... kyng- by corr. over erasure. Fol. 63 ¹A-
 from a- by corr. ²-a by corr. over erased -h.

thee Arwe. And anone the ymage smott þe gentil kyng¹ with the Arwe þoru owte the body and so he was brought vn to his deth And the fals treitour Edrich of Strattoun made that engyne ffor to quelle his owne lorde. Ande whanne kyng Edmund was thus doñ vn to the deth he nade regned but x 3ere and his meñ made for hyme moche sorwe. And þañ they nome his body and bare hit to Glastenbury (fol. 43^ab) and ther entierede hym with moch honour. And whañ this fals treitour hade thus done Anone he wente to the quene that was kyng Edmondes wif that wiste no thing of her lordes deth and toke with him here ij 3onge sones that Edmund hade gotten vp on hire and ledde hem with him to the kyng knoght And the Childeren names weren Edward and Edwyn ande saide Sire my lorde 3e may do nowe to these two childeren that were Edmund Irendies that was kyng what that 3ou goode liketh Ande tolde him euery del how queyntli he hade slayñ his owne lorde Edmund Irenside for to have of hym his loue and his frenchip Ande sayde to kyng knoght nowe 3e may haue al the londe at 3our owne will A thef treitour saide the kyng hast þou slayne myn owne swore brooper þat was man of the worlde that I louede moste Al so god me helpe y schal trewelich quyte þe thi trauaille as þou hast deserued And anon let take him and bonde faste his handes ande fett as a falce treitour and lett caste hym in to Temese. And thus this falce treitour endede his lyfe. And kyng knoght þo nome þo ij. Schilderen and toke heme to the Abott of westmestre to kepe and too warde til that he hade councel of his lordes what was beste with heme for to be doñ

Howe kyng knoght sente Edmund Irensides twey Sonnes in to Denmarke to bene ther doñ to dethe and howe thei wer saved boþe Capitulo (fol. 43^ba) Centesimo Nonodecimo.

Fol. 43 ¹By corr. over erasure.

þe Arrow Anone smot hym þour þe body and ther slow þe kyng
 for þat Engyne was mad to kyll hys lord trayturlly And wen
 kyng /Edmond/ þus was ded and slayne he had Rignyð but x
 3er and his pepyll for hym mad mucche Sorowe and his body
 thay bar to glassynbury and ther þay hym enteryd And this
 false traytur Edrith^b a none went to þe quene þat was kyng
 Edmondys wyff and wyst of her lordys dethe And anone toke
 from her her ij Sonnes þat wer fayr and yonge þat her lord
 had vppoñ her by gatt þat one men callyd /Edward and þat
 opir /Edwyne 7 led hem wyt hym to london and tok hym to
 kyng knythe þat he shull doo wyt hem hys wyll wer And told
 hym how queynlych he had kyllyd þe kyng Edmond for enchesoun
 and lov of hym so that kyng /knyth all Englond had at^{3c}
 hys pour holych myth haue /Othow fallse traytur hasse thow
 my Sworoñ brothe^d Slayne for enchosyn of me amañ most lovyd
 in the world Now by my hed I shall for thy trawayll þe well
 Reward as thow hast deservyd An Anone he let hym be take
 and bond hond and fott in the maner of A traytour endith
 his lyff ther kyng /knyth tok þe ij Chyldryne And (fol.
 63^b) by toke hem vn to A nabbot of westmestyr to ward 7
 to kep tell he wyst þe best to doo wyt hem

kyng kno3te

³had over in, and at in right margin at end of line by corr.

And sone ther aftir hit fill so þat kyng knoght hade al
 the lande in his hande And afterward he spoused quene Emme
 thoruh counsel of his lordes for sche was afeir womān ⁊
 sche was Eldredus wyfe ⁊ the Dukes Sistir of Normandie and
 they louede hem to gider as good resouñ wolde. And so vp
 on a day the kyng axede counceyl of the quene what hyme
 was beste to doñe with Edmund Irensides ij sones. Sire
 quod sche thei been right full heires of the lande And if
 hit so bee that thei gooñ a live they wille werre vp on
 3ou and doñ 3ou moch sorwe. And ther fore I counsel 3owe
 to sende hem in to sum ferr countre þer that sume^c mowe
 doñe heme to the dep The kyng anoñ called to him a danoyls
 that heyght walgar and comaunded him that he scholde gooñ
 and bringe þoo two childeren in to Denmarke ⁊ so ordeigne
 for heme that he herde neuere of heme mor tydyng Sire quod
 walgar hit schal be doñe And nome bothe schilderen and lade
 hem in too Denmarke And forenchesoun that he saw the
 childeren wer bothe feir and meke he hade of heme gret
 pitte and wolde nought doñ heme to the deth but nome heme
 both and brought heme to the kyng of hungary for to kepe ⁊
 to norisshen ffor the kyng of hungerye knewe ful well
 walgar and moche louede him The kyng axede of him ffro
 whens the Childeren come And walgar seide to the kyng that
 þei were þe rightful heires of Engeland. Ande ther fore
 thei scholde haue beñ done to (fol. 43^b) the deth And
 therefore sire they beñ come to 3ou to haue of 3ou socour
 help and mercy And if they mowe liven and come to manes
 state thei wille be come 3oure meñ and halde of 3ou her
 londe. The kyng thoo vndirtoke heme with grett reuerence
 and lette heme bee wel and honestli apparailled as longed
 for here astate. And so hit fille afterward that Edwynne
 the 3onger brothir deide and Edward the Eldere brothir
 lyved and be come afeir mañ and astrong ande of nobile
 condiciouns so that all men louede hime And this Edward
 in thee Cronecles is called of Englissh meñ Edward owt of

Hitt be fyll Sone after þat kyng /kny3th had all þe lond
 in to hys hond And spousyd þe quene /Emme þur consent of
 his baronage for she⁴ was a fayr womaⁿ and was Eldredys
 wyff And þe duches Sustyr of Normandy and þay lovyd to
 gyddy wyt much honour as Resone wold /þe kyng askyd vppon
 A day counsell of⁵ þe Quene what⁵ was for to done wyt þe
 Sonne3 þat wer Edmndys Irensydis Syr quod she⁴ thay ben
 rythe Ayrys of thy lond and yf þay leue þay wyll do 3oue
 much Sorowe wyt wer And þerfor Send hem vn to A strang
 lond with⁶ sum maⁿ þay^e may hym defowle ~~/~~⁷ and dystroy

⁴s- over c- by corr. ⁵By corr. above; caret in text.
⁶By corr. over erasure. ⁷-le ~~/~~ by corr. over erasure.

lawe. And whenne he was made knyght the kynges doughter of
 hungeri louede him moch ffor þat he was a feir 3onge mañ
 And a goode and for loue sche called him her owne Derlyng
 The kyng of hungeri perceyved the loue that was be twen
 hem Ande hade no mo Childeren but her to ben his heire.
 And wouchid^d his doughter of no mañ so wel be sett as he
 dede vp on this Edward And he 3af him his doughter with
 a goode wille And so þei were spoused with mochil honour
 and solempnite And the kyng þoo sente after his lordes.
 And made amonges heme a solempne ffeste. And be fore heme
 alle he seide that Edward scholde bee kyng after his day
 And whanne thee lordes herde this tydinges thei wer ful
 glade and made much blis And this Edward be gate vp on
 his lady achild that heighte Edgar helynge And al so a
 doughter that was queñe of Scottland by her lord that
 spowsede her that men called Mulcolom and he (fol. 44^a)
 gate vp on hire a doughter that height mawte that was
 kyng^a of Engelande after thorough kyng henres sone the
 conquerour the firste. And he be gate vp on hire a doughtir
 that heighte mawde And after he was Emperour of Almaine
 And of this Maute come the kyng of Engeland that was called
 harri the Emperresoñe And 3iett gate this Edward anothir
 doughter vp on his wiffe that men called Cristiane. Ande
 sche was anonñe

Howe kyng knoght conquerde Norweye that was aprowd mañ And
 afterward how he be come both Gentil and meke. Capitulo ¶
Centesimo vicesimo

And nowe 3e have herde of kyng Edmund Irendie^b and of his
 twoo sones that kyng knoght wende that thei hade ben ded
 and slayñ as he comaundede And this kyng knoght hade þoo
 al Engelande in his pouere and al Denmarke. And so vp on

The kyng þat was her fadyr persayvyd þe lov þat was by
 twene ~~ij~~⁸ hem to and had none hayr but A dou3tyr and þe
 kyng vouched his douthur to no mañ so well as sche^f ded
 vn to hyme and he 3aff her to hym wyt good wyll And Edward
 her spowsyd wyt much honour /þe kyng of hongre sent aftyr
 hys baronage and mad a Solempne feste 7 a Ryche weddyng And
 mad all meñ to vndyr stond þat he shall be kyng /when þat
 he wer ded And therfor all þem mad grett Ioy and of þat
 tydyngys thay wer full glad This Edward by gatt vppoñ þis
 lady A Sone þat men callyd Edgar helyng 7 aftyrward a
 douthur þat men callyd Margaret þat Aftyrward was quene
 of Scotlond and by the kyng of Scotlond þat meñ callyd
Maucolyne she⁴ had a dou3ther þat men callyd maud that was
 quene aftyrward of Englond thou[...] ⁹ kyng henry þat was
 þe fyrst Sone of þe conquerour þat her weddyd and he be
 gat vpoñ her a doughter that meñ callyd Maud þat Aftyrward
 was Empres of Almeñ And (fol. 64^a) of this Maud came þe
 kynge of Englond and 3it in to this day henry þe Emperours
 Sone And 3it had thys Edward Anothyr dou3tyr by his wyff
 þat mene callyd Crystioun And sche was A none

Now haue 3e hard of Edmndus Sonnys Irensyd that kyng knythe
 wend he had ben ded as he had comandyd ~~///~~¹ be for and thys
/knyth/ had in hys hond Englond and Denmarke 7 aftyr þat

⁸Stroked out. ⁹Erasure, poss. -rch. Fol. 64 ¹Erasure,
 prob. wher.

atyme he wente to [goone and]¹ conquere the [Conquere the]¹
 Countre of Northwey And þe kyng of the londe that men callede
 Elaf come with his meñ And wende to haue kepte his lande.
 And faught with knoght And with his peple but Elaf was
 quelled in that bataille 7 þoo nome knotte al the land in
 his hande. And whañ he hade conquerde Northwey and vndirfonged
 of men of the land feautes 7 homag he com a 3ene thoo in
 to Englonde and helde him selfe so grett a lorde that hime
 thoughte no man in the worlde his piere And be come so
 proude ande wikkede that hit was wondir too witte. And thus
 hit ffil vp oñ aday (fol. 44^ab) as he hade herde his masse
 at westmestre and wolde haue goon in to the palis the water
 of the wawes in Tamisse come a 3ene hyme wondir faste and
 al most toke his ffette. The kyng anoñ there al in wrathe
 spake to the watour ande seyde I comaunde the water to
 tourne a 3ene or elles I schal make the for to turne.
 The water wolde nought spar for hyme but euer flowed mor
 7 more. And the kyng was a prowde mañ and said that he
 wolde nouht fle for thee water but euer stode there stille
 7 smote the water with a smale 3erde þat he held in his
 hande And euer comaunde the water that hit scholde wende
 no ferther And for al his comaundement the water ros heyer
 and heyere til that the kyng was almost drenched And whañ
 the kyng saw that he hade al moste abide ther to longe 7
 sawe that the water wolde no thing do after his comaundement
 he turnede hyme and come to londe and stode vp on an heigh
 Stoon and helde vp his ij. handes to wardes heuene. And
 saide these wordes in Audience^c of all peple. This that
 makeþ the See to waxe And to wane he es kyng of alle kynges
 and lorde and god almyghti. And I ame a wreche Caytife and
 a dedlych mañ and he schal neuer dye And alle thinges done
 his comaundement ande to him be meke and obedient And this
 lorde that es most of myght I pray hym of mercy and of

he wente to Norway þat lond to conquer but kyng of the
lond þat men callyd /holaff come wyt his pepyll And went
his lond well haue kepte and defendyd and so þer þay
fauth wyt hym tell at þe last he was slayne in that
batayll And than þis kynth^a toke all þe lond into his
hond And when he had conqueryd all norway and take feautys
And homagys ther he come A 3ene in to Englund and had hym
Self gret I made² þat was none so grett ne none hys per /
And he be com so proud and So stout þat on a day as he had
hard messe Att westmestyr and wold han gone to hys paleys .
the wawes soo wysly a3ense hym³ com þat all most þey
touchyd hys feet /And þane sayd þe kyng wyt A proud harte
I comande the watyr turne A3en or ellis I shall de make
/but þe wawys for hys comandment wold not Spare but flowyd
euyrmor 7 more The kyng was So proud of hart that he wold
fle þe watyr^b but A byd styll in þe watyr and bett þe
watyr wyt A Small 3erd þat he held in hys hond And comand
þe watyr þat he Shuld wend no farder but for all his
comandement þe watyr wold nott Sesse but euyr wex more
and mor and mor of hith so þat þe kyng was (fol. 64^b) all
wett and [stope]⁴ stode depe in watyr And when he saw þat
he had a byd ther a gret wylle and þe watyr wold nott A
byd no do hys comandemente than sone he wyth⁵ drew hym and
he stod vp a stone and held his hondys hon hy And Sayd
thys word in heryng of all pepyll This god þat madyst the
See þus to Reysse [...] ⁴ on hythe he his kyngys of all
kyngys And of my3thys most and I am A Cayteff and a man
dedly 7 he may neuyr dy and euery⁶ thyng doth his
comandment and to hym hys obbedyente /To þat god I pray
þat he be my warante

²I made by corr. at end of line. ³-y- over -e- by corr.
⁴Erased. ⁵-h inserted above by corr. ⁶By corr. above;
caret in text.

grace. And of helpe ffor I knowe me now a wrech a kaytif
 And a man that have no power And to Rome I wille goon to
 make Amendis (fol. 44^ba) of my wykednesse And of that lorde
 I clayme now to holde my londe and of no nothir criature
 aliue And anone he made his heire to be kyng of the Reame
 And wente forth towardis Rome with owten any longe abidyng.
 And euer more as he wente be the wey he dede many almesse
 dedis And so he dede whenne he come to Rome. And whenne
 he hade dwelled at Rome as longe as hym likede and doñe
 there his penaunce for his synnes he came a3en in to
 Englonde and by come a good man and a meke and forsoke al
 maner of pride Ande he lade afterward an holy life. Ande
 he let make ij Abbaies of Seynt Benet in Englonde And a
 nothir in Northwey ffor as moch as he louede spesialy
 Seint Benet be fore alle othir confessours. And he loued
 moch al so Seynt Edmund þe kyng and ofte tyme 3af grette
 3eftes to the hous. And thoruh heme was made riche And
 whanne he hade beñ kyng xx^{ti} 3ere he deide and lith at
 wynchestre

Of kyng harolde that was the Soñe of kyng knoght that leuer
 hade to goñ on fote thanne ryde vp on his hors Capitulo
Centesimo xxj^{mo}

And this kyng knoght of whome we haue spoken by fore hade
 getten ij Sonnes vp on his wyf that on me called harold
 and that oþer hardknoght And this harolde was soo light
 aman of fotte wherfor men comunlich calde him harolde
 lightfotte and some men har fotte And this harolde hade
 no thing the condiciouns of his fadir for he sette but
 litil pris by Chiualrye nothir by curteisie but euer more
 folwede his owne will And þis harolde was so dispetous
 And so wiked (fol. 44^bb) wherfore vp on atyme he exilde
 his owne modir owte of the Reame And þoo sche wente in to
 fflaundres. And þer sche was and dwelled with þe Erle And

for I Cnawleg me Caytyf And febyll 7 of noñ pour and
 therfor I wyll gone to Rome wyt outyn lettyng my wykydnes
 to ponnys and me to A mend for þat god I woll chang my
 lond for to hold and not⁷ bydhyr^{8c} And anone he mad his
 heir and went hyme Self to Rome Also when he had ben ther
 long tyme and for hys synnys don pennance he come A3en in
 to Englund and by com A good mane and one holy And left
 all maner of pryd 7 stouteness and leuyd and holy lyff
 all hys lyff after 7 mad to abbay of Sente /benet one in
 Englund and othyr in norway for asmuch As he louyd
 Spesially sent Benite be for all othyr Sayntys And muche
 he louyd Sent Austoun Edmond the kyng 7 oft he 3aff gret
 3iftys to the hous wher for hit was mad ryght^d and wen he
 had Reignyð xx 3er he dyde and lieth at wenchester

(fol. 65^a) This /knyth of hemewe have^{1a} spoke by for had
 ij Sonnys by his wyff and þat tone meñ callyd /hard kny3th
 And þat opyr horold and he was so lyth of fott þat men
 callyd hym comenlych therfor harrold harford and this
 harold had nothyng de condycioun and þe maner of kyng
 knyth þat was hys fadyr for he sett but lytill prysse² of
 chywallre[ñ]³ of cortesse nethyr for worshypp ne be hys
 wyll And he be come So wyckyd þat he exilyd hys Modyr and
 went out of þe lond in to flandrys and ther dwellyd wyt
 þe Erle

⁷-t inserted above by corr. ⁸byd- by corr. over not-.
 Fol. 65 1-ve by corr. over erased -yr. 2-sse by corr.
 over erasure. 3-ñ erased.

there for ther was no goode love be twen hym and his brothir
ffor his hated^d him dedlich And whane he hade ben kyng ij
3er and lital mor he deyde ¶ was entered at Westmynstre

Of kyng hardknoght þat was haroldes brothir Capitulo
Centesimo xxi^{do}

And aftir this harolde harefote hardknoght his brothire
was made kyng that was anoble knyght and a worthy and wel
loued Chivalrye and ale maner godenesse. And whanne þis
haroldknoght hade beñ kyng alitil while he lete take vp
his brothir ther that he was beriede And lett smyte of
his hede ¶ lett caste hit in a Goñge^e And his body he
lete caste in to Tamysse. And afterwarde ther come ffychers
and fond the ded body in here nettes be nyghte And they
nome the body and bar hit to Seynt Clement and ther þei
lette berye that body And thus hardknoght avenged hym
vpon his brothir ffor he myght nought whilles that he
leuede And this hardknoght was aplentewos mañ in 3efinge
of met and drynke plente to his owne meñ and alle othir
meyne And for all maner of men that wolde come to his
Courte. And this hardknoght made Emme his modir come a
3ene in to Engeland ffor sche was driven owte of the lande
in the tyme of harolde harefotte that was kyng her sone.
And that was thorw councel of the Erle Godewynne that was
tyme the grettest lorde of all Engelande save the kyng
and most myghte done in the Reame ffor al Engeland was
gouernede and Ruled by him ffor as moch as he hade spoused
kynges knoghtes douhter that was a danoys be (fol. 45^a)
his firste wyfe And whanne quen Enne was dreuen owt of
England sche wente to the Erle of flaundres Baldewynne her
Cosyn And he fonde her al maner thing that sche hade nede
þer to til that sche hade nede come a 3ene in to Engelande
and til kyng hardeknot her sone hade sent for her and mad
her come a 3ene with moch honour And whañ he hade beñ kyng

werfor aftyr þer was neuyr good loue by twene hem And his
brothyr for his brother hym hatyth dedly And when̄ he had
Reignid ij and a lityll mor he deid and lyith at
wenschestyr^b

v 3er he dide and lieth entiered at wynchestre

Of the dispite and vilanye that the danoys deden to the
Englissh meñ And there fore ther was neuer sethen no danys
I made kyng of Englonde wer hee neuer so gret A lord
Capitulo Centesimo xxij^o

And whañ hadeknoght was ded ffor as moch as he hade no
Child of his body be geteñ And so vp on a tyme the Erles
and the Barouñs of þe londe assembled and ordeygned
acounsel amonges heme that ther scholde neuere no danoys
be kyng amonges heme þouh he wer neuer so grete alorde
ffor the despite that the danoys hade done ofte tyme to
the Englissh meñ Ande euermore or that tyme if hit wer
so that the Englissh men and the danes ffill that they
scholde mete to gidere vp on an hey brigge the Englise
men scholde not be so hardy to remeve o fote but stonde
stille til that the danes wer passede forth in her wey by
heñ And ffurthermore if that the Englissh men hade nowght
bowed adowne with her hedes vn to heme as to doñe hem
reuerence Anoñ they wolde bette the Englissh men and
fowle dispoile heme And þese de spites and many othir the
danoys dede to the Englissh men. And ther for alle the
danes wer dreveñ owt of þe (fol. 45^ab) lande whañ kyñg
hardeknoght was deed ffor the danes hade no lord þat tyme
that mygh heme meyntene 7 helpe and in this vise the
danes wer dreven owte of Englonde and neuer þere after
comen a 3eine in to Englonde ther for to dwelle. And
afterwarde the barouñs and lordes of Englonde by her
assent and counceil sent in to Normandye for to sech and
enquer after þo ij bretheren Alured 7 Edward that wer
dwelyng with duk Richarde her Eme for enchesoun þe Croune^a
and to make Alurede kyñg of Englonde ffor cause that he
was eldere thañ Edward And to bringe this thing vn to an
ende Alle the lordes att onys maden her oth But the fals

Aftyr the deth of this kyng /herd kny3t for as much as he
 had no chyldryne of his body bygatt þe Erles⁴ and þe barons
 ASemlyd And mad a counsell and neuyr mor aftyr þat tyme no
 man⁵ þat was A dane thouth he wer neuyr So gret A man a
 mongys hem he shuld neuyr be kyng of Englond for the
 dyspytt þat de danys had happyn to mett vp on⁶ A bryg þe
 Englysmen shuld be so hardy to mev ne to Ster on fott but
 stond styll tyll de danys wer passyd forthe /and morouyr
 yf þe Englysmen had not bowyd downe her hedys to Done
 Reuerensse to þe danys þay shuld haue hem bett and
 defoulyd And such maner dispysse (fol. 65^b) and wyolons
 did þe danys to our Englysmen wher for thay wer dryvyne
 of þe lond aftyr tym þat kyng hardknyt was ded for thay
 had no lord þat hym myt mayntayne and in this maner woyd
 danys out of Englond þat neuyr com Azene /The Erls 7 the
 barons by ther concente 7 consell send into normandy⁷ for
 to seke tho ij brethryn /Aluryd and /Edvard þat wer
 dwellyng wyt þe Duke Rychard that was her Eme In entent⁸
 for to croune Alurid eldre brothyr and hym mak kyng⁹ of
 Englond and of this thyngys to make one and^c þe Erls mad
 her hodyr brodyr^d /But þe

⁴-s inserted above by corr.; caret in text. ⁵Vertical line separates no from mā. ⁶to mett vp on by corr. over erasure, or gone over by corr. ⁷Superscript -a- before hole in vellum. ⁸Vertical line separates In from entent. ⁹MS. orig. makynge; -k- inserted above -a- by corr. with line separating mak from kyng.

Treitor Godwyn̄ that was Erle of westsex thought to slee
 þo ij breþeren when̄ that they wer comen in to Engelande
 And for enchesoun̄ that he thoughte to make herolde his
 sone kynḡ that he hade getten̄ vp on his wyff that was
 kyng knoghtes doughter a danoȳs And so vp on a tyme the
 fals teitour^b wente priuyl̄ich to Southampton̄ ffor to mete
 with þoo ij breþeren̄ Alured̄e and Edward whene they comen̄
 in to Engelande And so hit fill that the messengers that
 wente for þo ij bretheren in to Normandie fond þer but
 Alured̄ the Eldest brothir & Edward his brothir was goñ in
 too hungry ffor to speke with̄ his Cosyne Edward̄e owtlawe
 that was Edmundes sone Irensides And so thesse messengers
 comen in to Normandie to the 3oung lorde Alured̄ and̄ seyde
 to him that the lordes of Enge (fol. 45^ba) londe sente
 aftir¹ hyme that he scholde come safli and boldeli in to
 Engelande and vndirfonge the Reame and to bee kynḡ there
 ofe and tolde him that þe kyng hardeknoght was deed and
 that alle the danes were driven owte of the londe And
 schulle neuer after ward dwelle ther inne.

Howe the fals treytoure the Erle Godwyn̄e toke Alured vp
 on Guldesmore^c whenne he come owt of Normandie for to be
 made kyng of Engelande And treitersly let doñ hym̄ to the
 deth In the Ile of Eely Capitulo Centesimo xxiiij^{to}

And whanne Alured̄e herde this tydyng he thankedee god of
 heuene and ordeyned him in al that he myghte And wente to
 thee See. And hade weder at wille And̄e come to Southampton̄
 and come to lande and there was al redy the fals treytoure
 Erle Godwyn̄e and come too the 3ounge lorde Alured̄ and
 welcomed hyme and honoured̄ hime and made moch ioye as to
 euerymanes sight And saide to him that he wolde bringe
 hym̄ att london̄ ther that alle the lordes of Engelande

Fol. 45 ¹By corr. over erasure.

Erle goodwyne of wessex falsly and trayturly to sle thes
 ij brethene anon as thay shuld come into Englonde in entent
 for to mak hys son harhold kyng þe wych sone he be gatt
 vppon hys wyff þat was kyng kny3this dou3tyr þat was A
 /Dane¹⁰ and thys¹¹ Goodwynne went hym prevelyche vn to
 southamtoun for to mett tho the to¹² brothyr when þay
 shull come to londe and thus hyt be fyll þat þe messenger
 þat went into Normandy fond not but honly Aluryd þat was
 þe Erls brothyr for Edward his brothyr was gon into hungry
 for to speke wyt his Cossyne Edward the outlawe þat was
 Edmondys Sonne Irensydys þe messenger told and sayd to
 /Alluryd how þat the Erls 7 barons of Englonde sent aftyr
 hym and the he boldlyche shull come into Englonde 7 vndyr
 fong þe Ryall Reme for the kyng hardyknoge was ded and
 all þe Danys wer drywyn owte of Englonde

Of Alluryde

H whenne¹³ /Alluryd hard thys tydyns he thankyd (fol. 66^a)
 god And into þe schip¹ he wente all þe hast þat he my3th
 and passyd the See and a Rywyd at Sothamtoun þer þat
Edwyn the traytur was And þan þe tratur saw þat he was
 come he welcomd hym and vndyrfong hyme wyt much honour
 and Ioy and sayd and he wold led hym to london ther all
 þe barons was and lordys

¹⁰-an- gone over by corr.; -e by corr. over erasure.
¹¹Superscript -s. ¹²tho stroked out; to by corr. above.
¹³Ornamental blue initial H; w- added by corr. (? rubrica-
 tor); MS. has 3 minims for -nn-. Fol. 66 ¹Superscript -i-.

abiden him for to make hym kyng And so they wenten in her
 way to london And when they comen vp on Guldesmore tho
 saide the fals Treitour Godwynne to Alured with Glosyng
 wordes Sire be holdeth abowte 3oue both Est and west South
 and North and of alle this cowntre 3e schal be kyng and of
 Suech an hundred parte mor And now sikirly quod Alurede And
 if y may lyve and be kyng of o thing I schall Siker^d 3ou
 that I schal ordeygne sueche lawes that god and alle men
 schule holde heme wel apayde Ande (fol. 45^b) thanne hade
 the fals Treitour Godwynne priuylich comaunded his men
 that wer with hym that anon that anon as they come vp on
 Guldesdoun that they scholde slee alle men that wer come
 with Alured ouer the See And thanne toke Alured and lede
 hym to the Ile of Ely And dede hym to horrible deth And so
 they deden first putte his eigen owt of his hede.^e And al
 so quelled him 7 alle pat comen with him ouer the See
 that es to seie xij gentil men that comen with hyme owt
 of Normandie And thanne they nome Alured and brought hime
 in to the Ile of Ely And putte owte his eigen And poo nome
 and lade hym to astake that stode faste in the grounde and
 afterward they toke and rente his wombe and made per on an
 howge hole and toke owte his chief bowel and bond hit to
 the stake that on ende And priked him with prikes of Ire
 and made hym renne abowte the stake til that alle his
 bowelles wer drawen owte of his body And in this maner
 alured was don to the deth and slayn pourgh tresoun of pat
 falce treitour Godwynne. And whanne the lordes of Engelande
 herde telle howe pat Alured was don to the deth pourgh pe
 fals treitour the Erle Godwynne thenne they made moch sorwe.
 And swor here oth amonges heme be Almyghti god 7 be his
 holy names that he scholde dyee a worse deth thanne dide
 Edrich of Statton that falslych hade be traied his owne
 lord Edmund Irensides And anon alle the lordes be on
 assent wente for to take pat fals treitour Godwynne And
 wolde haue done him to the deth And anon pis fals treitour

hym Abydyng to make hym kyng And so þay went hon² her way
 to london word And when þay came oppon Gyldysdoun þan sayd
 þe traytour goodwyne to /Aluryd for to take keppe^a about
 3ou both in the left syd and in the Ryth syde and of all
 3e shall be kyng And of Such and hundyrd parte mor //Now
 forsothe quod Aluryd I be hott 3ou yf I be kyng I shall
 hordayne [7]³ such lawys wer for god and all folke shuld
 hold heme a payd Now had the traytur comand all hys men
 þat wer wyt hym þat when þay wer come vppon Gyldysdoun þat
 þei shuld sle All þat ys in /Aluryd company þat come wyt
 hym fro normandy And after þay toke Alluryd and led hym
 in to þe yle⁴ of Ely and þer put out þe y3en of hys hed
 and afterward put⁵ hym to dethe and So þey dedyn for þay
 kyillyd all þe company /And Rent his wombe and toke⁶ out
 þe bowellys out of his body and put Apone a stake to þat
 hys bouys^{7b} weryne drawyne And wyt nedelys of Irene
 Prekcyd þe good chyld And mad hym to goo Aboute þe stake
 to þat hys bouys weryn drawe all out And so deid þer
 Alluryd^c thour tresoun of þe Erle Goodwyne /whene þe
 lordys of þe lond hard 7 west how Alurid þat shull ben
 her kyng was put to dethe þour (fol. 66^b) þe false traytur
 the Erle /goodwyne they wer all wondyr wrothe and swor by
 twene hem by god and by his holy namys þat he suld dy a
 mor werse deth than did Edryk of stratoun had by trayd his
 lord Edmond Irensyd And thane þay wold takyne hym and put
 hym to dethe but þe theff tratur

²Stroked out. ³Erased. ⁴y- by corr. over erasure.
⁵Inserted by corr. above; caret in text. ⁶-ke by corr.
 above. ^{7b}- like w-.

whanne he herde of this ty (fol. 46^a) dynghe he fley and wente in to Denmarke and there he dwelled iiij 3ere and more and þoo loste he alle his londes in Engelande

Of Seynt Edward the confessour that was Aluredes brother how that he was afterward made kynge of Engelande Capitulo Centesimo xxv^o

And whanne alured was þus deed the lordes of Engelande sente another tyme in to Normandie affter Edward that was Aluredes brother that he scholde come in to Engelande to be kynge and so he came with moch ioye And þis Edward whils that he was 3onge loued muche god almyghty and much drade hyme and euere he leuede in clene lyfe and in honeste and hated synne most of any mañ And whanne he was crounede and anoynted as kyng scholde be he for 3atte nought his god no his goode coñdisciounes that [he]¹ he hade vsede be fore for no maner Erdelich maner^a or honour but euer haunted more 7 mor alle maner of goodenesse And aboue al thinges he loued mekenesse and al so pour peple and hem he louede as his owne [p]¹ brothryn and many tymes and ofte he 3afe heme grette almesse and that with good wille.

Of the Special grace that Almyghti god schewede for seint Edward in his life. Capitulo Centesimo xx^o vj^o

And vp on a day as Seint Edward come owte of þe Chirch at westmestre And hade herde masse of Seynt Iohn the wangeliste that he loued most aboue alle seyntes owtake god and our lady And so in the Samee tyme ther come to him apilgrym ande mette him and bade him for the loue of god and seint Iohn the Euaungeliste þat he wolde 3eue him sum

fleud^d thens into Denmarke and ther he held hym iij 3er
and mor 7 lost all his lond in Englonde

O Seynt Edward

And when this was done all þe barons of Englonde sent
Anothyr tyme into normandy for þat Edward shuld come in
to Englonde wyth much honour And þis Edward in hys shyld
hode lovyd allmy3thy god and hym drad 7 in honest of
clennes^e led hys lyff and hathyd syne as dethe And when
he was crounyd and anoyntyd and was of Riall pour he forgat
nott his manours^f 7 hys condycons þat he fyrst Vsyd he
for3attott all good crystines for no maner honour ne for
ryches ne for no maner of hynes but euyrmor 7 mor 3aff hym
to goodnes And louyd god and all meknes and louyd god 7
holy chyrche passyng all maner thyng And por meñ allso hym
louyd and held as that had bene his owne bretheryne And
vnto hyme yaff gret almes wyth good wyll

Hytt be fyll vppon A day as he went frome þe chyrche of
westmestyr And had hard messe of Sent Iohn̄e the Ewangelest
forasmuche as he lowyd Sente Iohne Ewangelist most
Spesyally aftyr good and our lady þane /he ded anny othyr
Saynte And þer came to pilgrims for þe louf of god and of
Sent Iohn̄ Ewangelyst some

good Anon̄ be good kyng priuyllich turned him and nomē the goode Ringe of golde of his fingere (fol. 46^ab) and priuillich toke hit to the pilgryme þat no man hit wiste the pilgrime toke þe ringe and wente forth in his way ⁊ this kyng Edwardē made alle the goode lawes and statutes that beñe holdeñ 3iet here in Englonde the moste parte And he was so good amāñ and so merciāble so that no māñ myght be² better than̄ he was

Howe the Erle Godewynne come a3en in to Englonde and hade a 3ene his londes And howe Seint Edward after spowed his doughter Capitulo Centesimo vicesimo vij^o

And whāñ the Erle Godwynne that longe tyme hade dwelled in Denmarke herde telle of the mucche godenesse of Seynt Edwardē that was kyng of Englonde and how graciously he was ⁊ howe merciāble he ordeygned him and come a 3eñe in to Englonde to pray him of mercy and of grace and that he muste haue a 3ene his landes and be in reste and in pees And so he hasted him in al that he myghte ouer the See and come in to Englonde And so he come to lundon̄ ther that thee kyngē was abidyngē And with him þere wer at the parlement all the grette lordes of Englonde And so vp on a tyme Erle Godwynne sente priuyllich to him that were his frendes And þei were the grettest lordis of this lande And praide heme that they wolde praye for hime to the king for grace And þat he wolde graunte him loue and pees ⁊ that he muste haue a3eñe his londes his ffrendes nomē and brought him be for the kyng and praide for hime for mercy and for grace And anoñe as the nobbile kyng him sawe he appelled^b him of tresoun̄ and of his brotheres deth Alured And saide to him these wordes. Thou treitour Goodwynne I appele (fol. 46^ba) the in as much as þou hast falsly and

²By corr. above.

good hym for to 3yff And kyng Edward anone preuelyche toke
 hym his Reng of his fingyr (fol. 67^a) þat nomañ parsayvid
 and 3aff hit to the pylgreme and he hyt vndyrfong¹ and went
 thens Thys good kyng Edward mad all þe lawys of Englund and
 3et bene þe most holdyne and he was Soo mersyabyll and so
 full of Pytte that nomañ my3t be mor

Of the Erle Goodwyn

When de Erle Goodwyne that was dwellyng in denmarke and
 much herd² of þe goodnes of Edward and how þat he was full
 of Mercy 7 pite and thouth þat he wold gone into Englund
 for to seke and haue grasse of hym þat he my3t haw his
 lond in pece a3en And anon he harryd^a hym as much as he
 my3te 7 put hym toward the See And soo com in to Ingland
 to london þer þat þe kyng was þat tyme And all de lordys
 of Englonde and held a gret perlemente Thane goodwyn sent
 to hym þat wer hys frendys and wer þe most gret lordys of
 þe lond and prayd to besehe^b þe kyng of grace for hym and
 þat he wold hys lond grante hyme Thane hys Enmysse^c lad
 hyme by for þe kyng for to beseche hym of grace and anone
 as the kyng hym Sawe he happelyth hyme of tresoun and of
 dethe of Alluryd his brothyr and thes wordys to hyme sayd
Traytur Goodwyne quod þe kyng I the Apelle þat þu hast by
 trayd and

Fol. 67 ¹Superscript -r-. ²-erd by corr. over erasure.

tritoresly Slayne my brothir alured Certes Sire quod
 Goodwynne Save 3our grace and 3oure lordschipe I be
 traiede him neuere no queled hym 7 ther ofe y wille putte
 me hollich as 3oure Courte wille ordeygne and rewarde Tho
 said the noble kyng be fore all his lordes Nowe lordinges
 that hedir beñ come both Erles and Barouñs of this lande
 3e haue ful wel herde al my pelle^c Al so of the answer
 that Goodwynne hath seyde I pray 3ou that 3ee rewarde and
 deme the right The Erles and barouns and alle droweñe heme
 to gider to speke of this awardee.^d And so they spoken
 amonges heme dulseliche^e and some saide that h ther^f was
 neuere aliaunce by homage. seruyent seruice^g nor bi
 lordechipe bitwynne Goodwynne and Alured wherfore they
 myghte him drawe^h And they councelde hime that he scholde
 hollich pute hime in the kynges mercy And in his grace.
 And thane saide the Erle leuerich of couentre a goode man
 to god and to alle the worlde and saide amonges heme in
 this wise. Sires I schal telle 3ou a thinge that es soth
 The Erle Godwynne es the beste frended man amonges alle
 the men of the reame safe the kyng and ther may no man wel
 it 3ou say that with owten counsel and procurement with
 owten erle Godwynne Alured the kynges brothir was neuer
 y done vn to the deth 7 therfore I awarde and councele as
 towchinge myn nowne persone that godewyne and his sone
 and eche of ws xij Ereles that beñ his frendes (fol. 46^b)
 wende to the kyng with as moch gold and seluer as we mowe
 beer bitweñe one oure handes and profere hit to the kyng
 in the name of the Erle Godwynne 7 praie him that he wolde
 graunt him his landes 7 his rentes a3en and take of hym
 feaute 7 homage. And alle the lordeⁱ graunteden to his
 awarde and to his counceile And so thei wente to the kyng
 with as moche golde and siluer as thei myght bere be twen
 hem in her handes and saide to the kyng that the maner 7
 the doyng of her acorde and of her awarde is this The
 gentil kyng a3ein seide heme nought but al thing that pei

slayne my brothyr Allered Certes quod Goodwyn syr saue
 3our grace and 3our pesse and 3our lordschip I neuyr hym
 betrayd ne slow hyme and perfor I pott me vn to 3our
 Reward of the Cuntre Now fayr lordys quod the kyng 3e pat
 bene my legis Erls and barons of þe lond pat her Assemlyd
 full well 3e haue hard myn Apelle and the Answer and also
 of goodwyne and therfor I wyll pat 3e Award and doth ryth
 (fol. 67^b) The Erls and þe barons þan drow hym to gyddyr
 for to done thys A ward by hyme self and so they spokyne
 dyuersly A Mongys hem and sum sayd pat þer was neuyr
 Aliauns by homag Seruent Serwys ne be lordschip by twene
 goodwyne and Aluryd for wych thyng they my3th drawe nothyr
 hong hym³ and at þe last pay deme he shall put hyme in the
 kyngys mercy all to gyddyr Than [he]⁴ spake þe Erle
 leueryche of Couenrte⁵ a good mañ And to all the worle he
 be⁶ told hys ressonne in this maner and sayd that þe Erle
 goowyne was the best frendid mañ of Englonde aftyr þe kyng
 and well myth he not be A gone sayd pat wyt out counsell⁷
 of goodwyne Alluryd was neuyr but^d to dethe werfor I A
 ward tochyng my parte pat hym selfe and his soñ 7 euyry
 of vs xij Erls pat bene hys frendys wend we⁸ be for the
 kyng chargithe wyt as much gold and Syluyr as we mow ber
 by twene our hondys and prayd þe kyng for to for 3eff our
 homagys and hys lond to 3eld a3en And all pay cordyd to
 that Award and come in to þis maner wyt⁶ to þe kyng as ys
 Abovyne sayd euyrech of theme wyt gold and Syluyr as much
 as thay my3t ber by twene her hondys by for the kyng And
 pay sayd in thys maner A forme of her accord and of Award
 The kyng wold not A3ene Say but as they⁹

³By corr. in left margin at beginning of line. ⁴Erased.
⁵Superscript -n- by (?) scribe. ⁶Stroked out. ⁷cō- by
 corr. over erasure. ⁸Inserted by corr. above; caret in
 text. ⁹Superscript -e-.

hade don̄ and ordeigned he helde hit ferme and stabille. And thus was the Erle Godewynne and the kyng brought vn to acorde And tho hade the Erle Godewynne alle his londes a 3eine And after warde he bare him so wel a 3eins thee kyng So that the kyng louede him wondir moch And was with him most preuee of alle men And with Inne alitel terme the kyng caste So moch looue [...h]^l to him^j So that the kyng spoused his douhter and made her quene of Engelande And Natheles though the kyng hade a wiff he leued euermor in Chastite and in Clennes with owten any fleshly dedes doynge with his wiff the quene. And so dede the quen in hir side sche leuede a holy liff And sche leved but ij 3er And afterward whan̄ that sche was deed the thing kyng wedde neuer womman̄ mor but lyvid with owten a wiff And the kyng 3af the Erledam of Oxenford to harold that was Godewynnes sone and made him Erle of Oxenford And the kyng loved him So much that theye myghte do wth the kyng what thei wolde (fol. 47^a) as towchinge Right 7 ressoun ffor a 3ens right the kyng wolde do no maner þing ffor he hade soo noble a concience ande perfore god al myghti schewed him mucche loue.

Howe kyng Edwarde sawe Swyn kyng of Denmarke drenche in þe See in the sacrament of his messe Capitulo Centesimo vicesimo viij^o

And so hit fil vp on̄ a wittsonday as kyng Edwarde herde his masse in the heygh Cherch off westmynstyr att the leuacioun of Ihesus cristes body right as alle men wer gadred and comen to the Auter for to Se the holy sacrament the kyng toke vp his handes an heygh towardes heuene and by gañ to laugh an howge laughter And alle thoo þat stode abowte him hade ther of moch wondir And anoñe as the masse was done privilich eueri man axede wherfore þe kyng hade swech a laughter at the hooly messe Tho seide the kyng my leue frendes I sawe in the holy sacrament of þe masse howe

wold horden[̄] he grauntyd 7 confermyd And so was the /Erle¹
good-wynne¹⁰ accordit wyt þe kyng Edward and had a3en all¹¹
hys lond And aftyrward he bar hym Soo wyssly þat þe kyng
lovyd hym wondyr mucche and wyt hym was preuy and wytin a
lytill tyme þe kyng lowyd hym So mucche that he spowsyd
goodwyne douth^{er} and mad her quene And neuyr þe lesse for
all þat þat þe kyng had a wyff he leuyd euyr mor in chastyte
and in chastnes of body wyt out ony flessche ded doynge wyt
his wyf (fol. 68^a) And the quene also honharbe haife^{1a} lad
her² holy lyff ij 3er and thane deid /And aftyrward þe keng
lefvyd³ all his lyve wyt out⁴ ony wyff The kyng Edward 3af
þe erldome of Oxenforth vn to harold that was Goodwynnes⁵
sonnes 7 mad hym And so well they wer be lowyd bothe þe
fadyr and þe sone 7 so preuy wer wyt þe kyng þat þay mygh
donne wat thyng þay wold by ryght for a3enst ryth wold he
nothyng done for no maner man[̄] So good and trewe he was of
consyence and therfor our lord Ihesus Cryste gret speciall
loue to hem Schewed

Of kyng Edward þe confessoure

Hit be fyll vppon[̄] A wytsonday as kyng Edward hard hys messe
in the gret chyrche at westmynstyr⁶ rytth att de lewasyoun
of Ihesus Cryst body and as all mene gedyrd vn to chyrche
and come ther to the Sakeryn of þe mes for to See the kyng
hys hondes lyfte vppon hythe and a grete law3yng⁷ toke vp
wherfor all þo þat A bowt hyme stod gret by gane to wondyr
and aftyr messe þay haskyd why þe kyng loughch fayr lordys
quod þe kyng Edward

¹⁰Stroke joins good and wynne. ¹¹Vertical line separates
a3en from all. Fol. 68 ¹Stroked out, ²Superscript -r.
³Badly formed -d by corr. over -ll. ⁴By (?) scribe above;
caret in text. ⁵MS. has 3 minims for -nn-. ⁶-stm̄yst' by
corr. over erasure. ⁷-te law3yng by corr. over erasure.

that swyn the 3onger her that was kyng of denmarke hade ordeigned astrong pouer and come to the See with alle his meigne And pought to haue comen in to Engeland to have werrede vp on ws and I sawe that he and alle his peple wer drenched in the See And this I sawe in the leuacioun of Cristes holy body nowe vp on the Auter be twene the prestes handes. And ther for I laughede that I myght not holde my pees. And Al so the Erle leuerich that stode be sides the kyng in that other half ther sawe in the leuacioun of godes body in forme of brede was turned in to the likenesse of a 3ong schilde And hit toke vp his right hande and ferst hit blessid the kyng And afterward the Erle leuerech And the Erle anoñ loked toward the kyng (fol. 47^ab) if that he sawe that holy sight Thañ saide that holi kyng Sire Erle I See ful wel the same sight tha 3ee Se thanked be god almyghti that I haue honoured visebly my saviour ihesus crist in forme of breed whos name be blessed withowten ende Amen

Howe the Ryng that seynt Edward had 3eue the pilgryme for godes loue and for Seynt Iohnes loue the Euaungelist come a 3ein to kyng Edward ¶ Capitulo Centesimo xxix^{mo}

And this nobile man Seint Edward regned xiiij 3ere and thus hit fille vp on atyme or that he deide that ij pilgremes of Engelande were goñe to the holy londe 7 hade doñe there her pilgrimage and were comynge homwarde a 3en toward here owne contree. And as they wente forth in her way they metten apilgrym that salvede^a hem curteisly and feir 7 axede of heme of what cuntrey that they were boren and they seyde in Englonde thanne seid¹ he to the pilgrimes Sires I pray 3ou [...] ² who es kyng of Engeland And they saide a good mañ that men called kyng Edward Nowe fair

Fol. 47 ¹By corr. above. ²Two letters erased.

/Swene/ þat was kyng of Denmarke come into þe See wyt all
 his pour for to haue come into Englonð vppoñ vs for to wer
 And I saw hyme and hys folke drenchyd in the See and all
 thys saw I in de lewacioun⁸ of Ihesus Cryst but betwene
 the prestys hondys ~~bott~~¹ and I had for Soo muche Iore^{9b}
 þat I my3th not my laughtyr wyt hold And þe Erle
/leueryche/ be syd hym stod at de levacioun¹⁰ An hopynly
 he sawe þe forme of bred turnyd in to lyknes of A chyld
 3ong and toke vp hys ryth hond and ferst blessyd þe kyng
 And aftyrward the Erle And þe Erle Anone tornyd hyme
 toward þe kyng to make hym see þat holy sythe /And þan
 Sayd þe kyng Syr Erle I Se well þat 3e 3e¹ See thangyd be
 god þat I haue honouryd god my Savyour¹¹ vysible Ihesus
 Cryst in forme of mañ Than was þere a pilgryme mett wyt¹²
 too men of Englonde going toward Rome 7 he asked¹³ (fol.
 68^b) of hyme in what lond and in wat Cuntre thay wer borne
 And thay sayd in englonð Than askyd þat pylgreme wo was
 kyng of Englonð 7 þay Answerd and sayd þe good kyng Edward
 fayr

⁸Vertical line separates de from lewacioñ. ⁹MS. has long
 r shape. ¹⁰Vertical line separates de from levacoñe.
¹¹ur abbreviation-mark partly over -r. ¹²Than ... wt by
 corr. over erasure. ¹³too ... asked; extra line added by
 corr. at foot of page.

frendes I pray 3ou whanne that 3e come hoome in to 3oure
 Countre a 3eñ that 3e wolde goo to kyng Edwarde and grette
 him wel in myn name and þanke hym moche of the goodnesse
 that oft tymes he hath done to me And namelych for the
 Ring that he 3af att westmynstre for Seynt Iohnes loue the
 Euaungeliste. And the pylgrym nome 7 toke the Ring to the
 pilgrymes And saide my leue frendes y pray 3ow whane that
 3e comen in to Engeland take þis Ryng to kyng Edwarde him
 selfe 7 telle him that I him hit sende And telle him that
 I schal 3ef him abetter (fol. 47^ba) 3efte ffor vp on the
 xij day he schal come to me And dwelle with me with owten
 ende Sire quod the pilgrimes what mañ bee 3ee And in what
 place es 3oure dwellyng My leue frendes quod he I am Seynt
 Iohn the Euaungeliste and am dwellyng with my lord of
 heuene And 3oure kyng Edwarde es is¹ my special frende And
 I loue him wel and hertili for as moche þat he hath euere
 lade his life in clenness and in virginyte And I pray 3ou
 my dere frendes that 3e do my message to the kyng Edwarde
 as I haue 3oue saide And whanne he hade thus doñ he
 auansshed a way owt of her sight soo that they ne¹ nyste
 where that he be come the pilgrymes tho thankede almyghti
 god and wente forth in here way And whañ thei hade goon
 ij mylles or that they be come wondir weeri and hevy of
 sleppe And sette hem doune to reste heme. And so þei fille
 on sleppe And whañ they hade long tyme I slepte on of heme
 waked and loked al abowte hem And saide to his felowes^b
 hit es tyme that we a ryse and goon owre way what felowe
 quod on of heme where be we now Sertes quod that othir
 me þenkep this es nought the Countre that we leide ws doune
 for to sleppe on ffor that tyme we wer but ij myle ffrome
 Ierusalem or thre And þoo thei toke vp here handes and
 blessed hem and wente forth in her whay And as they wente
 fforth they saw Chepardes kepe here schep And spo (fol.
 47^bb) ken Englissh Nowe my leue frende seide on of the
 pilgrymes to the Schipardes what Countre es this and who

frendys þan sayd þe pylgrem wene þat 3e come in to 3our
 owne Contre azene I pray¹ pray 3ou þat 3e woll gone vn to
 kyng Edward and often¹⁴ tymes hym grett in myn name And
 often tyme thanke hym of his gret courtesy þat he to me
 hath done 7 namlych for þe Ryng þat he 3aff me whan þat
 he hard messe Att westmester for Sent Ihñ louf of
 Euangelisse and he toke þan þe Ryng vn to þe pylgremes 7
 sayd to hym I pray 3ou for to gone and ber thys vnto þe
 kyng Edward and tell hym þat I Send yt hyme And a¹⁵ full
 Rychare yeft woll I hym¹⁶ 3eff for oppoñ þe xij day he
 shall come to me And euyrmor dwell in blysse wytout Ende
 Syr Saydon the Pylgremes what mañ by 3ee And in wat plasse
 ys 3our dwellyng /fayr fryndys quod he I am Iohñ Ewangelyst
 and am dwellyng wyt allmy3ty god and our kyng Edward ys my
 frend and I loff hym Spesyally for enchosyne þat he hath
 lyvid in clenness and ys clen mayd^c I pray 3ou my message
 all for to doñ as I haue 3ou sayd whane Sent Iohn
 Ewangelyste had thus hym I chargyd sodenlyche he Awoydid
 out of her Seithe¹⁷ þe pylgremes¹⁸ þan thane^d thankyd
 allmy3ty god and went forthe in her way and went þay had
 gone toward her wey¹⁹ and sett Adowne hem for to Rest And
 þay fyll on Sleppe And when þay had Slepyd well and³ hone
 of hem woke and left vp hys hed and lokyd A boutte And
 Sayd to hys fellows a Rysse vpp And wend our way what sayd
 þat oñ felowe to þat othyr wer be (fol. 69^a) we nowe Certys
 sayd þat othyr yt Semyth vn to me þat it ys nott þe same
 contre þat we laydis^a in for to Rest 7 to Slepe for we wer
 from Ierusalem bot iij myles thane þay toke vpp her hondys
 7 blessyd hyme And wente forthe in her wayis And as thay
 went in her way thay sawe Schipperdesse^b goyng wyt her
 schip þat Spokyn non nothyr langage but Englysse love
 frendes quod oof of þe pylgremes wat cuntre ys thys and who

¹⁴By corr. over erasure. ¹⁵By corr. above. ¹⁶-y- over -e-
 by corr. ¹⁷-ith- poss. by corr. over erasure. ¹⁸MS. has 2
 minims for -m-. ¹⁹-ard her by corr. over erasure; wey by
 corr. above with caret in text.

es lorde there offe. And on of the Schiperdes seide for
soth this Countree es called kent in Engelsond And the good
kyng Edwardes es lorde there offe. The pilgrimes with good
herte thanked al myghti god and Seynt Iohn þe Eeuangeliste
ande wenten forth in here way and comen to Caunterbeiry 7
frome thens they wente to lundoñ and there they fonde kyng
Edward and thei tolde him fro the be gynnyng to the endenge
of Seynt Iohn the Euaangelist And howe he Charged hem for
to take the ring to the kyng to kyng Edward him selfe And
they tolde him al so how [t]he[y]³ hade spede hem in⁴ the
weye And howe they⁵ wer broughte slepyng in to Engelsond
frome thee londe of Ierusalem And thañ they nome and toke
the Ring to kyng Edwardes and he vnderfonged hit with moche
reuerence and thanked almyghti god and seint Iohn the
Euaangelist 7 from that tyme afterwarde he ordeygnede and
disposede him self in all maner thinges ffor to wende owt
of this worlde whañ that god wold sende for him

How Seynt Edwardes deyde vp on the twelfe day Capitulo
vj^{xx} And vj^o

And sone there Aftere hit fille on Cristemasse evene as
the holy man Seynt Edwardes was at the matynes to her godes
seruice of that worchipful feste he be come sike And on
morwe with mochele peyne he Abode to her the heyge ma (fol.
48^a) sse And whene the masse was all doñ he was brought
to his Chamber to haue his reeste There fore in the halle
hee myghte nought come amonges his lordes and barouns als
he was wonte for to doñe euerich tyme at the solempne feste
And there for alle here yoie and merth was touned in to
sorwe and car for enchesouñ that thei wende her goode lorde
the kyng scholde haue ben ded and passe oute of this worlde

³ t and y erased. ⁴ m abbreviation-mark and l inserted by
corr. above. ⁵ -y by corr. over erasure.

ys lord þer off And þane oone of Chipperders^c Ansewerd and
 sayd þis is þe cuntre of kente in Englonð of the wyche þe
 good kyng Edward lord 7 kyng þe Pylgrem þan thankyd all
 my3thy god And sent Iohn . Ewangelest and went forth in
 her way And come to Cauntyrbury And from þens to london
 7 ther þay fond þe kyng Edward and told hym frome þe
 beginnyng¹ vnto þe Endyng as much as sent Iohn had chargyd
 hym And of all thyngys how þay sped by the way And anone
 toke þe Ryng vnto þe kyng Edward and he vndyrfong And
 thaunkyd all my3ty god And Sent Iohn de Ewangelest And
 þan he mad hym Redy euyry day for to wend out of his lyff
 wenne god wold for hym Send

And² aftyr hit be fyll thus in Crysmesewyne as the holy
 mañ Edward was att goddys Serwysse matenyssse for to her
 of þat hy fest he by come full seke And in the morowe
 enduryd wyt much payne the messe for to her And aftyr mess
 he was led in to his chambyr for to Rest hym but in to hys
 hall amongys hys barouns and his kny3tys myth he nouth
 come for to comfort 7 solace as he was wont for to don at
 þat worthy fest wher for all her my3th 7 comfort amonges
 all þat weryn in the hall was tornyd (fol. 69^b) into care
 and Sorrowe for enchosoun þat þay dred for to leesse her
 good lord the kyng

Fol. 69 ¹MS. has 4 minims for -inn-. ²No ornamental
 initial.

And vp on̄ seynt Iohnes day the Euaungelist that come nexte there after goode kyng Edwarde toke alle the Sacramentes of holy Cherch as falleth for to Acristene man to doⁿe And lay and abode the grace and the mercy of god And thaⁿ he lett sende after þoo pilgrymes And made hem come be fore heme and 3aff hem richee 3eftes and thaⁿ he toke heme almy³ti god And al so he Sente affter the Abbot of westmynstre and toke him the Ring in the honour of god and Seynt Marie 7 of Seynt Iohn the Euaungelist And the Abbot vndirfonged the Ring with moch reuerence And putted amonges here Relikes att westmynstre And ther hit es vn to this tyme and euermor schal be And soo lay the goode kyng Edwarde sike til the xij eueⁿ and þaⁿ he deide At westmynstre and there he lith ffor whos sowle almyghti god hath dooⁿ many meracles. And this was in the 3ere of Incarnacioun of owr lorde ihesus Crist M^l lxxv 3eere And afterward he was translat and brought in to Schryne. And Seynt Thomus of kaunterburi put him in to his Schryne.

Howe harolde that was Edwynnes Sone was made kyng And howe he aschapede frome the duke of Britaigne Capitulo vicesim vno.

(fol. 48^ab) Whenne Seynt Edward was deede and passed owt of this worlde and his bodi schryned with moch honour as fille vn to swech akyⁿg A noⁿe the lordes of this land wolde haue made Edward Ethelyng kyⁿg that was Edwardes sone Owtlawe And this Edward was Edmondes sone Irenside for he was the most naturell blod^a of al this londe but Thorold^b that was the Erel Godwynnes sone thought þoru help and strength of his fadir and of othir grett lordes of the lande that wer of his kynne and to him sib went and seysed al Engelond in to his honde. And anoⁿ lett croune him kyng after that Seint Edward was entirede And this harolde that was the Erle Godewynnes sone the seconde

And vppon̄ Sent Iohn̄ Ewangelyst þay þat wer next þe kyng
 Mad hym vndyrfong^d his Rithtys of holy chyrch as fallyd
 to euyry Crystyman̄ and bothe^e þe mercy of god 7 þe wyll
 of And tho too pylgremes he lett afor hyme come And 3aff
 hym Rych 3eftys And by toke hyme to god And also þe Abbott
 of westmestyr he let be for hym come and toke hym þat Rynge
 in honour of god and sent Mary And of Sent Iohn̄ Ewangelest
 7 the abbot toke yt and put yt Amongys othyr Rylykes And
 so yt ys at westmestyr And euyrmor Sall be And Soo leye
 the kyngys Edward seke tell þe xij day And þan deyde þe
 good kyng Edward at westmestyr And ther he lyith fore³ whos
 loue god hath done meny marraclis And þis was in the 3er of
 encarnacioun̄e of our lord Ihesus Cryst M¹ lxxv 3er and aftyr
 he was trancelate and put in to þe shryne⁴ þour þe nobyll
 martyr Sent Thomas of Cauntyrbury

Of kyng harold

Whene sent Edward was goone out of þis world 7 was gone to
 god and werthely he was enteryd as pertynyd to suche a
 lord for to bene þe Barons of þe lond wold haue Edward
 helynges sonne to Edward the owt lawe þat was Edmond⁵
 sone Ironseid to be kyng for as muche as he wase most
 kyndyst^f ~~///-///~~⁶ blod of þe Reme Be hareholde þe soñ of
 Erle goodwyne þure Strenthe of his fadyr And of opyr gret
 lordys of þe Reme þat wer of hys kynerede sesid⁷ ~~///-///~~⁶
 all Englonde in to hys hond And anone lett Croune hym kyng
 and aftyr þe entermente of Sent Edward /thys̄ harold þat
 was goodwyne Sone þe second

³-re by corr. over erasure. ⁴-h- by corr., poss. over
 -c-. ⁵-dis by corr. over erasure. ⁶Erasure. ⁷-rede
 sesid by corr. over erasure.

3er be fore seynt Edward was ded wolde have goon̄ in to
 fflaundres but he was dreven a3en þoruh tempest of wedir.
 in to the Countre of poumfret And þer he was taken and
 brought to Dukee william And this harolde hade Suspeccioun
 last that duke william wolde have ben̄ avenged and doñ him
 vn to the deth ffor cause that Erle Godwynn his fader hade
 doñ quelled Treitourslych Alured that was seint Edwardis
 broþer And al so ffor enchesoun that Alurede was quene
 Emmes sone that was al so the modir of Duke Richarde of
 Normandie that was Air^c vn to Duke william And natheles
 whañ the Duke william hade harolde in prisoun and vndir
 his power and for as moch as this harolde was afair knyght
 and a noble of body and a wise mañ and A bolde And Al So
 ffor As moch that he And his (fol. 48^ba) fadir were
 accorded with goode kyng Edward there fore he nolde doo
 him noñ harme And so thei spoken be twen hem of certein
 thinges And a monge alle othir this harolde swore vp on
 aboke and swore be alle seyntes that he scholde spouse and
 have to hijs wiff Duke williames doughter whanne that kyng
 Edward were deed And that hee scholde gouerne and kepe
 the Reame of Engelond well and trewlich to the honour and
 auauntage and profitt of Duke william And harolde saide 7
 swore that he wolde. And whenne harolde hade sworn vp on
 aboke and there vp on̄ made his oth Duke william leet him
 passe with outen harme whether that euer he wolde and 3aff
 him grette 3eftes And this harolde tho wente a 3ein in to
 Engelond and dede in this wise as 3ee schulle her whenne
 that seint Edward was ded as afals man and for sworn he
 lett croune him kyng of Engelond and falslych brake the
 couenaunt that he hade made with the Duke william and
 there fore he was wondir wroth wyth¹ hym and swore that
 he wolde be auenged vp on him what so euere there offe be
 falleth and anoñe lett assemble an houe hooste And tho

Fol. 48 ¹By corr. above.

wold have goon in to flaundirs for to have sleyñ Edmond Irensíd⁸ (fol. 70^a) but he was þourh¹ tempest drofe² into þe cuntre of Pouncyf and ther was take and brouth to þe Duke wylliam and thys³ harhold was com⁴ þane de Duke wylliam wold haue bene wengyd vppoñ hym for enchosyne þat þe Erle goodwyne þat was harholdys fadyr had lett kyll Alluryd þat was sent Edward brothyr And pryncypaly for enchosyne þat Aluryd was quene hemmes sone þat was Rychardys⁵ modur duke of normandy þat was Aiell^a to þe duke wylliam and neuyr delesse when þe duke wylliam had² harhold in presoun and vndyr hys pouer /for asmuch as this harold was a nobyll knygh wyse and wordy of body And þat his fadyr and he wer Accordyd wyt þe good kyng Edward and þer for he wold nott mysdoñ hym But all maner þingys þat by twene hem weryn spokyn and hordynyd harhold by his good wyll Swor vppoñ A boke and vppoñ holy sayntys þat he shuld spous And wed þe duke wylliam his douter aftyr þe deth of Sent Edward And þat he shuld besely done his deuyr^b for to kepe and Saue þe Reme of Englund to þe profett and the Auauntag 7² lett hym gone And anoñ Duke wylliam lett A Semble a gret host And

⁸wold ... Irensíd by corr. over erasure. Fol. 70 ¹-h by corr. above; stroke in text. ²Inserted by corr. above; caret in text. ³-s by corr. above; caret in text. ⁴was com by corr. over erasure. ⁵ys abbreviation-mark by corr. from tail of -d.

come in to Englonde to venge him vp on harolde & to gette the land if that he myght And in the same 3ere that harold hade made hym kynge of Engeland harolde herestrenge that was kyng of Denmarke come with his pouere and aryved in Scottlond & thought to haue been kyng of Engeland and slowgh and brend alle the contre til that he come to 3orke and there hee quelede a thousande men of Armes and an hundred prestes And whane harold herde this tyding he assembled an houe pouere of men and come to fighte with (fol. 48^b) harolde that was kyng of Denmarke And with his owne handes he quelled kyng harolde of Denmarke and scounfited the Danoys and alle that were lefte on liue fledde and wente to her schepes. And thus kyng harolde of Engeland slowe in bataile harolde the kyng of Denmarke.

How wylliam Bastard that was Duke of Normandye come in to Engeland and slowe kyng harolde Capitulo vj^{xx}. duodecimo

And whanne this batayle was don kyng harolde was so proude and so heigh and wolde no thing parte with his men of alle the good that thei hade holpen him to gette and wonne but hade hit eueridel hym selfe and helde hit for his Vse and therfore the moste part of his meyne wente fro him and for soke him al in wrath and so ther dwelled with him no mo thane Savdiours.^d And vp on a day as he sat at his mette mesengers come and tolde him that wylliam Bastard Duke of Normandie was come with his peple and was arived in Engeland in the Countre of kente and hadde taken alle the Townes abowte hastyng and hadde al so myned the Castell And whanne the kyng herde this tyding hee spedde him thedir in all that he myghte and hade with him but litel peple as for to 3eue battaile to Duke wylliam Ande whanne they ferste mette to gider Duke wylliam axede of him first thre thinges. One was if that he wolde have his doughter to wiff as couenaunt was be twene hem too and as he swore

com in to Englonð and weng hyme vppoñ harhold and conquer
 þe lond yf þat he myzte and in the Same 3er that harhold
 was Crownyd harrold harsteng of⁶ kyng of Denmarke in
 Scottloñ had⁷ thouth to haue ben kyng of Englonð And he
 com in to Englonð And kyllyd 7 Robbed and dystroyd all þat
 he myzt tyll þat he come to yorke and þer he kyllyd many
 meñ of Armes M^l C prestes when this tydyng to þe kyng he
 assemlyd a strong pour (fol. 70^b) And for to fyght wyt
 harhold of Denmarke and with his⁸ oune hand hym kyllyd and
 þe Danys wer dyscomfyt and þo þat left hon lyve wyt much
 sorow fled into her Schyppe3 And this kyng Arhold of
 Englonð kyllyd A kyng Arold of Denmarke

Howe harold was sleyne

And wan thys batayll was done harrold by come So proud
 and stoute þat he wold nothyng parte wyt his pepyll of
 thyngys þat he had gett but held all to hym Selfe werfor
 þe most party of hys meñ was wrothe And from hym departid
 Soo þat onlyche wyt hyme left no moo but his Saweldors
 And vppon a day as he satt att his mett a messag come to
 hym and sayd þat wylliam Bastard Duke of normandy was A
 Ryuyd in Englonð wyt a grett hoste and had takyn all þe
 lond aboute hastyng and had also vndyrmynd the castell
 /when kyng harrold hard tell he went dethyr wyt a lytill
 pepyll in all þe hast þat he mythe for a lytill peple was
 wyt hym left And when he was com thethyr he hordynynd for
 to 3ef batayll to þe duk wylliam but þe duke askyd of hym
 iij thynys yf that he wold haue hys dougster to wyff As[d]⁹
 he had mad promys and Swor heche to othyr

⁶Stroked out. ⁷By corr. over erasure. ⁸By corr. (?) in
 right margin at end of line. ⁹As by corr. over erasure.

vp on a boke be god and be alle his seyntes. And if that he wolde holde the lande of him in truage or that he wolde departe hit And prove hit in bataille And harolde was a provde man and a fires and tristed moch vp oñ his strengthe and came and ffaught with Duke william and with his peple and in that batayle harolde was sclayn and his men (fol. 49^a) discounfited and this bataile was at Tounbregge the seconde 3ere of his regne vp on Seynt Calixtus day and this harold lith att Waltham

Of kyng william the Bastard how he conteyned him^a noble and of the werr that was be twene him and the kyng of ffraunce. Capitulo vj^{xx} Terciodecimo

And whan Duke william Bastard hade conquered all Engeland at Criste masse day that come nexte ther after he let croune him kyng at wynstmynster and he gouerned the londe wel and wissly and he 3af courteisly to his knyghtes that wer with hym of Englisshmen londes and rentes and whan he hade so idon he wente ouer the See in to Normandy and ther he dwelled altil wille and in the seconde 3er of his regne he come a 3ene in to Engeland and brought with him maude his wyffe and made her quene of Engelande vp oñ a whittsonday And a non ther after Maucolun that was kyng of Scottlonde be gane to were vp oñ Duke william And Duke william ordeignede him in al that he myghte both be water and be land for to goñ in to Scottlonde to distroie the kyng of Scottlond Maucolun and at the last þei were made att oñ and accorded And Maucolun kyng of Scottlond be come Duke williames man and helde of him al his londe And Duke william toke of him homages And whanne he hade ydon he come a 3ene in to Engelande. And whanne kyng william hade y regned xvij 3er Maud his wyff the quene tho deide and vp oñ her he be gate many feire schilderen þat es to Seie Robert Curthoys William le Rous and Richard that deyde and

pat he wold hold hys lond of hyme in truage or that he wold trust much vppon̄ hys strenthe and fau3t wyt de duke wylliam and wyt his pepyll but Arrold and hys meñ wer discomfytt and hym Self ther was slayne and in his batayll was endyd Att Thonbrig in þe Second 3er of his Reigne vppon̄ Sent kalyxtys day 7 he lith att waltoun¹⁰

(fol. 71^a) Whene wylliam bastard duke of normandy had conquerd all þe lond vppon̄ Crystmesse daye nex ffullowyng he lett croune hym kyng att westmestyr and was A worthy king and 3aff vnto englisse men¹ lond and Also to hys kny3tys and aftyr ward he went ouyr þe See and come in to normandy and þer he dwellyd A whylle² in the Second 3er of his Reigne he come a3ene in to Englund and brouth wyt hym /maude³ his wyff and lett Croune her kyng quene⁴ of Englund on witsonday And þane anone aftyr þe kyng of Scotlond that meñ callyd /maukelum by came to wer And to dystryffe⁵ wyt wylliam And hordynynd hym toward Scotlond wyt a gret navy⁶ bothe þe lond and þe See for to dystroy⁷ kyng Maucolum but pay [A]⁸ wer A cordyd and þe kyng of Scottlon̄ Maucolome by com his mañ And held all his lond of hyme And kyng wylliam Ressayved⁹ þe homage of hyme and come vn to Englund¹⁰ And wene kyng wylliam had bene xviij 3er kyng¹¹ Mawd þe quene dieid vppon̄ hom kyng wylliam had be gatt many fayr Chyldren̄ that ys for to sayne Robert Curtesly wylliam le Rouus Rychard also þat deid

¹⁰Catchword by scribe below: Wan wylliam Fol. 71
¹englisse by corr. over erasure, and men inserted above with caret in text. ²-h- by corr. above; caret in text.
³-e added by corr. ⁴kyng stroked out; quene by scribe above. ⁵Superscript -r-; -ffe prob. gone over by corr.
⁶wt a inserted above with caret and gret navy over erasure by corr. ⁷Superscript -r-. ⁸Erased. ⁹Prob. added by scribe in margin; MS. has Reff. ¹⁰-g- by corr. above; caret in text. ¹¹By corr. above; caret in text.

henry Beau clerke and Maude that was the Erles wyff of
 Bleus and other foure doughtres And afterwarde that Maude
 the quene was deed there be gane a grett de¹ bate (fol.
 49^ab) be twen philip kyng of ffraunce & kyng william
 Bastard and so at the laste they were accorded and than
 dwelled the kyng of Engelande in Normandye with owten any
 dissesse or werre longe tyme And so vp on a day thee kyng
 of ffraunce saide in schorne of kyng william of Engelande
 that he hade longe tyme ligen^b in Geseyne^b & longe tyme
 hath hade reste and eese and so there afterwarde this
 tyding come to kyng william there that hee was in
 Normandye at his maner of Reen and than he was wondir
 wroth with the kyng of fraunce for that schorne and
 dispite and swore be god of heuene that whenne we are
 aresen fro the Iessen^c that he wolde lighte a thousand
 candeles in fraunce that the kyng scholde seen and anon
 lette semble an houghe pouere in Bryttaigne and in Engeland
 and in the begynnyng of heruest he come in too ffraunce
 and brende Tounes ande caste adoun Castelles and robbed &
 quelledede and dede all the harme pat he myghte in the Reame
 of ffraunce and at the laste he brent the Citte of mandos
 and comaunded his men for to bere thedir al the wode that
 they myghte for to brenne the Toune and halpe ther to hyme
 self in al that he myghte with good wille. And per was
 that tyme amonges heme soo grett hete of the fire and so
 moch s^d smoke and al so the wedir was hoote in that
 sesoune of the 3er so pat kyng william was ther al most
 deed for heete and al most stofed^e with the smoke and ther
 with he become sek and anone sette al thinges after his
 (fol. 49^ba) wylle and assigned to Robert Court his sone
 al Normandye al^f and to william Rous al Engeland and be
 quath al his tresour to william^g henre Beauclerk his sone
 and whenne he hadde al this don he vndirfonged alle the

Fol. 49 ¹By corr. over erasure.

henry beaclar and Maud allso þat was þe Erls wyff of
 blaynes and opyr iiij dousters And aftyr hys wywys dethe¹¹
 grett debatte was¹¹ bytwene þe kyng of fraunce philipe¹²
 but at þe last þay wer accordyd And þan dewellyd þe kyng
 of Englonð in normandy and noman hyme werryd ne-he-no-man¹³
 long tyme And þe kyng of fraunce Sayd vppon̄ A day in Skorne
 of kyng wylliam þat kyng wylliam had long tyme layen in
 chyldbbed and longe tyme Restyd hyme /And¹⁴ this word come
 to þe kyng wylliam of Englonð þer þat he lay in normandy
 at Roune And in¹³ for thys word he was Ewyll apayd for
 that word¹⁵ (fol. 71^b) And also wondyr wroth toward þe
 kyng of fraunce and Swor þan be god þat wene he wer A Rysse
 of his gysine he wold lyte¹⁶ A M^l Candyllys to þe kyng of
 fraunc And A none he lett A Sembyll a gret host of normandy
 and of Englonð and in the begynnyng of þe best^a he come
 into fraunce And brent all þe townys þat he come by thurh¹⁷
 all þe cuntre and Robbyd and did all þe Ewyll þat þay my3th
 þour all fraunc And att þe last he brent þe Cytte of
 Mawnsys and comandyth his pepyll for to ber wood And as
 much as þay my3th ber and bryng and helpyd hym Self þer
 to all þat he my3th wyt good wyll and þer was grett hett
 what of fyr þat was So grett and of þe sonne þat was
 wondur hott þat ~~////////~~ hym-Selfe-when¹⁸ þour he fyll in
 to grett Sykenes And when he sawe þat he was so strong
 seke he hordynynd and asseygnyd all normandy to Robert
Curteyse hys sonne And all Englonð to wylliam þe Rous And
 by quad to henry Beauclarke all his tressur and wen he had
 þus Idoo he hondyrfong all his

¹²-li- by corr. over erasure. ¹³Stroked out. ¹⁴A- from
 a- by corr. ¹⁵By scribe below (beginning of catchword?).
 a / ¹⁶-e by corr. over erasure. ¹⁷-h added by corr.
¹⁸Erasure followed by stroked out matter.

sacramentis of holy cherch and deide in the xxij 3ere of his regne and was enterede at Caan in Normandie

Off william that was kyng after his fadir and how he brente Touñes and howses of Religioun in Engeland for to make the newe fforest Capitulo vj^{xx} quarto ¶ decimo²

And after this william Bastard regnede his sone william Rous and this william was a lether mañ to god and to al holy cherch & destroyed meñ of Religioun and toke frome hem here landes in every countre that hee myght any finde and there fore pere be gañe agrett debate be twen hym and ancelyn that was erchebysschoþ of kaunterbury for enchesoun that þe Erchebysschoþ vndirtoke hym and saide that he dede amys for to distroy holy Cherch and therefore the kyng was wroth with him and exilde him owt of Engelande. And the Erchebysschoþe thens wente to the Court of Rome and dwelled there with the pope and this william Rous made the Newe forest and distroiede and brent to grounde xxvj goode Touñes and iiij^{xx} howses of Religioun for to make his fforest more larger for alle his delitte was for to haue large wodes and pasture and the lenger that he levede the more strenger and lother he become bothe to god and to mañ and to al holy cherch and to alle maner meñ and this kyng made the grete halle atte westmynstre And oñ A (fol. 49^b) whittsonday as he sate þer in at his mette he loked faste aboute vp on the halle and saide hit was to litil be halfe And so contrarious he be come to alle meñ that loued god and alle maner þing that gode meñ louede he hatede dedly And so hit fille vp on a tyme þat he dremede þat him thoughte that he was lette blode and blede an houge quantite of blod and thoughte that a streme of blod lepte vp towardes heuene more thañ an hundred tymes and

²Underlined in red.

Serwysis¹⁹ of holy chyrche and deid ather^{20b} xij 3er of
his Reigne and lith att cane in normandy

of william Rouse þa was william bastard soñ

And aftyr this wylliam bastard Reignid his son wylliam the
Rous and this wylliam was wondur Cursed²¹ man to god and to
holy chyrch and he lett amend and make the towne of Cardeys
ha¹³ that the paynyns had dystroyd holy chyrch and her
possensyons^c in wat party he my3th fynd and ther for theyr
werr was so muche de batt by twene heme and the
Arsbyschoppys of Cauntyrbury /Ancelyn enchesoun þat (fol. 72^a)
he vndyr toke hyme for his wekydnes þat he dystroid þe holy
chyrche and for enchosyne þer of he bar grett wrath and for
þat cause he exilyd hyme out of þe lond And þe Ersbyschop
þan went to¹ þe cunrte^a of Rome and þer he dwellyd wyt the
poppe /And² this kyng mad þe new forest and kest done and
dystroyd xxvj³ townys and iiij^{xx} howsys of Relygioun and all
for to make his forest leng and brother And by come wondyr
glad of his forest And of his wod and of his wyld bestys þat
wer ther in þat yt was a marwelus thyng to wytte So þat meñ
callyd hyme keper of wodys and of pastors And þe lenger he
lyvid þe mor wykyd he by come to holy chyrche and to all hys
meñ and this kyng william Rous he lett make þe grett hall
att westmestyr So þat vppon A wytsonday he held þer in his
furst fest Thane he lokyd aboute And sayd þat þe hall was to⁴
litell by a fadyne fendell^b and at þe last he by come So
contraryos þat all thyng Plesyd⁵ god dysplesyng hym and all
thyng that good men⁶ lowyd he hathit dedly And so hit be fyll
þat he dremyth And mett^c vppon A nythe befor a lytyll or he
deid he was lett blod and a streme of blod lepe oute hygh
toward heuyne mor þane A fadyne

19-ysis by corr. over erasure. ^{20-t-} partly over a-; super-
script -r. ^{21-s-} over -t- and -d from -s by corr. Fol. 72
1-nt by corr. over erasure; to by corr. above. ^{2A-} from a-
by corr. ^{3x-} by scribe over v-. ⁴Inserted above. ^{5p-} by
corr. over erased letter. ⁶Vertical line separates good
from mē; n abbreviation-mark by corr.

him thouthte that þe clernesse of þe day was touned al dym
to derkenesse. And whanne he awoke of his dreame he was
sore adrede and wiste not what³ was best for to do and a
non wente and tolde his metyngeⁿ and his dreame to many men
of his counseil and saide he was a drede lest that hee
scholde haue some meschaunce And that othir nyght be fore
that amonke of his hous hade y dremed Al so him thought
that the kyng wente in to a Chirch and all his men with
hym and that he was so proude and dispetous so that he
despoiled al thing that was þer in And that he nome the
crucifix and oribly bote hit with his teth And the crucifix
mekely soffred al thing that he dede to him And þe kyng as
awod man nome and rent fro the body the armes of the
crucifix and dispitous lych caste hit vndire his fette
afterwarde he nome hit vp and caste hit a 3ens the grounde
and him thought ther come owt of his mowth of the crucifix
a grett light of fire and of this dreame many aman hade
grett wondir And the goode man þe monke that hade dremed
tolde the dreame to a knyght that was moste (fol. 50^a)
priue with the kyng that men callede Reynold hamondes
sonnes and he and the monke wente to the kyng and tolde
him of the dremyng that thei hade y dremed a nyght And
saide to the kyng that þei drade sore lest her dremyng
scholde be tokene othir thing than good And whan the kyng
herde hem thus speke he stode and laughed hertely ij tymes
or iij and so at the laste he stode and be þoughte him and
saide that he wolde goo in to the fforest for to pleye and
to solace him And lordes him saide and counceilde him that
he scholde not þat day come in to the forest for þing that
myghte be falle. And so he abode at home vn to the tyme
þat he hade eten there myght no man make him to dwelle at
home but nedes in to the forest he wolde wende for to
solace him and to playe. And thus hit fille the same tyme

³By corr. in right margin of column.

and þe clernes of the day was turnyd all to darknes and
the furmament also And when he awoke he had grett dred so
þat west nat wat for to donne and told hys dreame to many
of his counsell and said þat he had grett dred and subposyd
that to hyme was sum myschance and⁷ come At þe second nyth
afor A monke dremyth of þe houshold and-þe⁷ (fol. 72^b) that
the kyng went⁸ vn to þe court wyt much pepyll and he was
so proude þat he dyspyte^d all his pepyll þat was wyt hyme
And also þat he toke þe Emage of þe crusyfyx 7 schamfully
hit bott wyt hys tethe and þe crusyfyx yt mekly hit Sufferd
all þat he ded⁹ but þe kyng wylliam the Rous as A wood mañ
he Rente of the Armes of the crusyfyx and cast hit vndyr
his fett and defowlyd yt and tredyd all a brode^e And a gret
flame of þe fyr came out of the Crusyfyx mouth /and of þe
wych drem meny mañ had gret wondyr the goodmañ þat dremyth
þis dreame had tould hit to A knythe þatte¹⁰ þane was most
preuy to þe kyng of all meñ and this knyzt[ys]¹¹ meñ callyd
hamondos Son and the monke and he told de dreame to the kyng
and sayd þat it¹² shuld be kensone^f opyr thyng þan good And
neuwr delesse the kyng lavzyd¹³ twhyis¹⁴ or tryis and lytill
Sett þer of and thouth þat he wold gone honte and play hym
in his forest And hys meñ hym conseld þat he shuld nott þat
day for no maner thyng came in þe wood Soo þat he Aboth at
home be for mett but euwr as he had ette nomañ myth hym
hold þat he wold gone to wood for to haue his disporte And
hit be fyll

⁷Stroked out. ⁸Inserted by corr. above; caret in text.
⁹Vertical line separates he from ded. ¹⁰-tt- from -n-
by corr. ¹¹Erased. ¹²By corr. over erasure. ¹³-v3- by
corr. over erasure. ¹⁴t- by corr. above; caret in text.

that on of his knyghtes that men called Wauter Tyrell wolde haue schot to an hert and his arewe glazed^a vp on a bowh of a tree and as meschaunce scholde falle the arew smote the kyng to the herte and so he fille doune ded and spake neuer worde there after And þus endede he his lyfe in myscheffe and hit was no wondir for the same day he hade lette to ferme^b the Bysschopriche of kaunterburi And al so ij grette Abbais of Engeland And euer more he werred vp on holy cherche. And euermore he dede hem moche wronge with takyng of taskes.^c And noñ durste with stonde him of þing that he wolde haue doñ And of his wikkednesse he wolde neuer with drawe him ne cesse no amende his (fol. 50^ab) lyfe And therefore god wolde no lengere sufre hym to lyue in his wikkednesse and he regned xiij 3ere and vj wykkes and he was entered at wynchestre.

Of kyng henre Beauclerk^d þat was williames brother le Rous and of the debate that was be twen hym and Robert Curtoys his brothir Capitulo vj^{xx} quintodecimo

And after william Rous regned henre beauclerke his brothir for as moch as william Rous hade no childe geteñ of his body and this henre was crouned ate london the iiij day after his brotheres deth that es to saye the vj. day of August And anoñ as the Erchebischoþ of kanterburi Ancelyn herde telle that william Rous was ded he com a3ene in to Engeland And the kyng vndir ffonged him with mochil honour and reuerence and this was in the first 3ere that henre Beauclerk was made kyng And a noñ ther after he spoused Maude that was the quenes doughter Mergaret of Scotlond And Ancelyn that was Erchebischoþ of kaunterbury spoused hem to gydere. And this henry be gate vp on his wyfe ij sones and a doughter that es to saye william Richard and Maud þat was afterward Emperesse of Almaine. And in the seconde 3er of his regne his brothir Robert Curtoise that

þat one of his knyztys that hyth watyr Tyrell wold haue
 Schott in to An horte and his Arrowe glaunsyd a Syd oppoñ
 A branche and þour mysse A wentur smott þe kyng vn to the
 harte and so he fyll downe ded [wyt]¹¹ to þe grond wyt out
 any word spekyng And so he hendyd his lyvf And hit was
 none gret wondyr for þe same day he deid he lett to ferme
 the Essbyschoppys to⁷ holy chyrche þurch wrongfull
 takenge¹⁵ and axinges for no mañ durst⁸ wyt saye þat he
 wold haue done of his lechernesse he wold neuyr wytt draw
 hyme nethir amend¹⁶ his lyffe (fol. 73^a) And therfor god
 wold nott suffyr hyme no longer Reigne in his wekydnesse
 and he had ben kyng xiiij 3er 7 vj wekys and lyith att
 westmestyr

Of herry bewclerke

And wen þis¹ william the Rous was ded /henry the beuclerke
 his brothyr was mad kyng for enchesyne þat william the
Rous had none schyld be gotoñ of his body And thus
 /beauclerke was Crownyd kynge at london the fyrst day
 aftyr his⁶ his brother was ded þat ys to say the v. day
 of August And anone Ancellyn² // þat was Ersbeschope of
 Cauntyrbury þat was at þe courte of rome hard tell þat
wylliam De Rous was ded he come a 3ene in to Englund and
kyng hery bauclerke welcom hym wyt much honor þat þe fyrst
 3er þat kyng henry was crownyd he spousyd Maud that was
 Marget dou3tyr quen of Scotlond

¹⁵-g- over -i- by corr. ¹⁶-d by corr. above; caret in
 text. Fol. 73 ¹wen þis by (?) scribe above; caret in
 text. ²By corr. over erasure.

was Duke of Normandye come with an houghe mayne of peple
 for to Chalange the lande And so thorow councyl of wyse
 men of the land they were brought to accord vp on this
 condicioun that henre Beuclerke scholde paie to Robert
 Curtoise duke of Normandye A thousand ponde of Siluer And
 whiche of hem lengest leuede scholde be otheres heir And
 so that be twene (fol. 50^ba) heme scholde be non hevynesse
 no non debate and vp on this acorde the Duk wente a 3ene
 in to Normandye And whan the kyng hade regned iiij 3ere
 there be gaue a grett debate be twene him and the
 Erschebischof of kaunterburi Ancelyn for as moch as thee
 Erschbischof wolde nought graunt him at his wille the
 talages^e and taxses of holy Cherch And anon Ancelyn be
 Eschbyssop wente a 3ene to the Court of Rome and there
 abode with the pope And soo hit fille that the same 3ere
 pat the Duke of Normandye come a 3eene in to Engelande to
 speke with harry his brothir And so they speken to gydere
 that the Duke for 3aff to kyng henry his brothir the M^l
 pounde of mone that he scholde paie him euery 3ere. And
 so with grett loue thei departed a soundir And so the Duke
 wente home a 3ene in to Normandye And so hit fill after
 whanne that ij 3er was passed there be gaue a gret debate
 foru enticement of the devel be twenne the kyng and the
 Duke of Normandye and alle the grett lordes of the lande.
 So that the kyng went ouer be See and come in to Normandie
 And all the grett lordes of the lond of Normandie comen
 and retourned hem to kyng henry and forsoke here owne
 lorde be duke of Normandie and delyuerden him vp alle the
 Tounes and Castelles in Normandie And so ther after be
 duke was take and brought in to Engeland and kyng henre
 anon lett hym faste be done in to prisone. And that was
 goddes vengauce ffor whanne be Duke was in the holy lond
 almyghti god 3af him there moch honour ffor he was schosen
 there to haue ben kyng of Iherusalem. And he wolde nought
 (fol. 50^bb) but for sok that moch honour And ther fore god

/and þe Ersbyschop of Cauntyrbury þat was at þe Contre at
 Rome And hym for to Seke And to þe kyng hym 3eldyd And all
 þe Castellys of þe good townys of normandy And sone after
 the Duke was take and led wyt þe kyng of Englonde And þe
 kyng lett þe duke be pott in to presoun and þis þe wengans
 of god for wen þe Duke was in the holy lond god 3af hym
 So mich mythe and honour þer for he was chosyne to be kynge
 of Irlaⁿ^a and he wold not be it but forsake yt /And þerfor
 god

sente him that dispite that his brothir had don hym in to prisoun And thane wente the kyng henre and Seisede al Normandie in his honde and helde hit duryng al his lyvis tyme. And in the same 3er the Erschbyssshop of kaunterbury come a 3eñ in to Engelond from the Court of Rome. And was accorded with the kyng And the nexte 3er ther after there be gañ a grett debate be tweñ kyng philip of ffraunce and the kyng henre of Engelond. And kyng henre wente þoo ouer the See in to Normandie And strong werre was long tyme be twen heme twoo in the mene tyme duryng thee werre the kyng of fraunce deide and lowys his sone was made kyng after his faderes deth And kyng henre þoo come a 3ene in to Engelond and dede marye maude his doughter to henry Emperour of Almaygne.

Of the debate that was be twene kyng lowys of ffraunce and kyng henre of Engelond 7 how kyng henre of Engelond too sones were lost in the See Capitulo vj^{xx} xvj^{mo}

And whanne kyng henry hade beñ kyng xvij 3ere ther be gañ agret debate be twen kyng lowys of ffraunce and hym for enchesoun that kyng henre hade sente his meñ in to Normandie for they scholde helpe the Thebaud þat was Erle of Belynes^f in his werres a 3ens kyng Lowys of fraunce ffor as moch as they were entendaunt And as redy to the Erle as to here awne lorde. And that was for enchesoun þat the Erle hade spoused Maude kynge henris sister And ther for kyng lowys was wroth and dede moch Sorwe in Normandye. And ther fore kyng henre was wroth and in haste ordeignede an houghe pouere and wente ouer the See in to Normandie for to kepe (fol. 51^a) the lande. And the werre endured be twen hem ij 3ere and so at the last they nome a day of Bataille. So they comen to gider and sore foughte and that day the kyng of fraunce and his men wer discourfited and the kyng vnneth schaped away and the most part of his men

send hym þat Schame and dyspyte for to pott in to his
 brothyrs presoun Thane sayd^b kyng henry all normaṇdy vn
 to his hond and held all his lyve tyme and in the same
 3er to þe Ersbyshope Ancelyne frome þe cuntre of Rome in
 to Englonð a3ene And þe kyng and he wer accordyd and in
 þe 3er nex comyng aftyr theyr be gane A grett debatte by
 twene kyng Philip of france And kyng Henry of Englonð wher
 for kyng Enry wente in to normandy and þe wer was strong
 by twene hem (fol. 73^b) to and deid the kyng of fraunce
 and lawys his sone was mad kyng anone aftyr his dethe And
 thane wente kyng henry A none in to Englonð and Maryd
 Mawd his dou3ter to henry the Emperour of Almayne

Of debate of kyng harry 7 lowes

Whene kyng henry had bene quene³ kyng xviij 3er a grett
 debatte a Rosse by twene kyng lawys of fraunce And kyng
 henry of Englonð for enchosyne þat kyng hyme hade⁴ sente
 in to normandy to his meṇ for thay shul be helpyng to þe
 Erle of blaynes as much as þay mythe in wer a3ens þe kyng
 ys louf^{5c} of fraunce and þat þay wer as Redy vnto hyme as
 thay wold be vn to her owne lord for enchosyne þat þe
 Erle had in spousyd^d his susstyr⁶ dame Mawd for enchosyne
 the kyng of fraunce did much sorrow to normandy for to
 defend þat lond And þe wer last by twen heme ij 3er tyll
 at þe last thay ij fowth to gyddyr And þe kyng of fraunce
 was dyscomfyte 7 vnneth he schapyd a way wyt much payne
 and the most party of his meṇ

³Stroked out. ⁴-d- over -u- by corr. ⁵Vertical line
 separates ys from louf. ⁶Second -s- inserted by corr.

were taken and brought to henre the kyng to don with heme what he wolde. And som of heme he let gone and some he dede to deth Afterward tho ij kynges were accorded And whanne kyng henre hade al the londe of Normandie in his hande and hade ouercome his enemyes of ffraunce he tourned a 3ein in to Engelande with moch honour And his ij sonnes william and Richard wolde folwen after here fader the kyng and ordeynede heme and wente to the See with a grett companye of men and ar þat they myght come to londe ther come so houghe atempest of weder that thei were dreven a 3ens a Roch of Stoune and here Schip al to brast in too pecis And so alle there they were y drenched but o man was saved of the same schip And this was vp on a Seynt^a katernes day. And these were the lordes 7 ladies that were drenched and loste in the same schip fferst william and Richard that were the kynges sones the Erle of Chestre And Octouel his brothir Godfray Rydel walter Sumrty Geffray Archedeken and the kynges doughtour the Countesse of perches that was the kynges nece the Countesse of Chester and many oper worthi folkes. And whanne kyng harry and many other lordes wer comen in to Engeland and herde these tydyns he made moch sorwe. And than was al here merth and solas tourned in to care and sorwe

Howe Maude the Emperesse come afterwarde a 3ene in to Engelande and howe sche was afterwarde spoused to Geffray Erle of Agoun Capitulo /vj^{xx} vij^{mo}/¹

(fol. 51^ab) And after whenne ij 3ere was gon for as moche as the Erle Melett^b hade dwelled with the kyng by fore So vp on atyme the Erle wente fro the kyng and by gaue to werr vp on hym and dede him moch sorwe. And his land al so of Normandie. And whenne kyng henre herde this tyding

Fol. 51 ¹Boxed in red.

wer takyne and þe kyng of Englonde ded wyt heme wat hym⁷
 lykyd And sum of hem he lett gone fryly And sum he lett
 pott to dethe but aftyrwar thay ij kyngys wer accordythe
 And when kyng henry lokyd^e all þe lond for normandy And
 dyscomfyt hys enmysse of fraunce he tornyd aȝene in to
 Englonde wyt much⁸ honour And his ij Sonnes wylliam 7
 Rychard or thay wold come aftyr her fadyr And went vn to
 þe See a gret company of pepyll but or that þay myȝt come
 to lond þe schippys come aȝens þe Roke and brake all to
 pesys And all wer drenchyd þat wer þer in Saue one mañ þat
 was in the Same chyrche³ schip that eschapyd and that was
 onne (fol. 74^a) Sente katernys day and þes wer namyd þat
 wer drynchyd þat ys to say wylliam þe kyngys Sone Rychard
 his brothyr the Erle of Chestyr Otouell his brother
 Gyfferay Rydalle water contre Godfray Erched kent^a to þe
 kyngys douȝter the Countesse of perchesse the kyngis nece
 the countesse of Chestre and many othyr when kyng henry
 and othyr lordys wer a Ryvid and herd of these thynges in
 Englonde þay mad sorrowe I nowch and all her merth and Ioy
 was turnyd in to¹ much care

And whene thay ij wer gone and that Erle had dwellyt wyt
 þe kyng the Erle went þan from þe kyngys And by gane to
 wer vppon þe kyng and ded mucche harme in the londe of
 normandy wherfor kyng henry was sor Amewyd when he hard
 this tydyngys

⁷-y by corr. over -e. ⁸MS. has 6 minims for mu-. Fol. 74
¹Inserted above by (?) corr.

he was wondir wroth with the Erle Molete and in al the haste
 that he myghte he wente over the See and come in to Normandie
 and toke the Castel And so kyng henre dwelled ther al that
 3ere And thañ to him come tyding how that henre Em̄perour
 of almaine that hade spoused Maude his doughter was ded
 and that sche nolde dwelle no lenger in Almaine and sente
 him worde that sche wolde come home a 3ene in to Normandie.
 And whenne sche was come he wente a 3ene in to Engelande
 and toke with him Maude his doughter And whenne they were
 bothe come he made Englyschmen to doo maude his doughter
 the Emperesse of Almaine feaute 7 oth And william the
 Erschbischof of kaunterbury made the firste oth to the
 Emperesse and thane nexte him dauid bat was kyng of
 Scotlond And aftward alle the Ereles and barons of Engelande
 And so hit fille afterward that the good Erle of Agoyn a
 good knyght and a worthy that sente to kyng henre and
 prayde him that he muste haue Maude his doughter to his
 wif that was Emperesse of Almaine and the kyng graunted
 him for cause that he was agoode man and a worthy 7 so the
 Erle come and spoused here And hade here in to Normandye
 and this Erle begate aschilde that men called afterward
 henre the Emperesses sone. And after al this kyng henry
 dwelled xij month in Normandye and anon ther after ther
 come vp on him astrong maladye wher poruh he (fol. 51^ba)
 deyde. And thus kyng henre regnede xxxv 3ere and iiij
 monethis and deide in Normandye and his herte was take owte
 of his body and beried in the muchel Cherch of oure lady at
 Reen and his body taken and brought in to Engeland and
 beried at Redyng in the Abbey with moch solempnite of the
 which Abbay he was the first foundour

Howe Stephene that was kyng henres Susteres sone was made
 kyng of Engelande. Capitulo vj^{xx} decimo Octauo 7c

and wyt all þe hast þat he mythe he passyd ouyr the See
 and com in to rNormandy^b to take þan a strong castell and
 þer he dwellyt þat 3er And þane come tydyng vn to hem that
 Endry þe Emperour of allmayn̄ þat had spousyd Maud his
 dou3ter was ded and sche dwellyth no lenger in almayne²
 and þat Sche wold come a3en vn³ to Englonð to her fadyr
 And whene sche was come vn to hyme he toke þan her to hyme
 And come A3ene in to Englonð and mad the Englismen̄ to done
 [A]⁴ othe 7 foyalte to þe Emperesse and þe furst þat mad
 þe othe was þe Ersbyshop of Cantyrbury and that othyr kyng
 Dauyd of Scottlonð and afftyr hym all the barons And Erles
 of Englonð And also aftyr hym the nobyll mañ the Erle of
 Angoune a worthy knyth sent to þe kyng of Englonð þat he
 wold graunt hym and consent þer to he toke hys dou3ter and
 led her (fol. 74^b) in to normandy and come to þe nobyll
 Erle Gaufryd and he spousyd þe Sayd mavd⁵ wyt much honour
 And þe Erle by gat vppon her A Sone And aftyrward whane
 þis was done kyng henry dwellyt all þat 3er in normandy
 and aftyr þat long tyme A grewos Seknes toke hyme wher for
 he deid and this kyng henry Reignid xxxv 3er and iiij
 monethes and aftyr he died⁶ as be for ys sayd in normandy
 and hys harte was interyd in the Chyrche of our lady of
 Roun And hys body was brouthe wyt much honour into
 Englonð and was enteryd att Redynge in the abbay of the
 wyche abbay he was be gynner and founder

Of kyng Steven̄

²-yñ- by corr. over erasure. ³By scribe above; caret in text. ⁴Erased. ⁵-y- by corr. over partly erased -y-.
⁶By corr. above; caret in text.

And after this kyng henre the fyrste regned his Neveu his sistres sone Stephene that was Erle of Boloyñ ffor anon as he herde of his vncles dep he come ouer See in to Engeland þoru councell and help of many grett lordes of Engelande aʒens here oth that þei hade made to Maude the Emperesse of Almaine and toke to him al the lande and lete crowne him kyng of Engeland and william the Erschebyschoþ of kaunterburi made^c the firste oothe and feaute to Maude the Emperesse sette the crowne vp on his hede and anoynted him and Roger that was Bischoþ of Salesburye mayntened the kynges partie in as moch as he myghte And the firste 3ere that kyng Stephene by gan to regne he ordeygned him an houghe Oost and wente towarde Schotlond and the kyng of Scotlond come aʒens him in pees and in faire maner And kyng henry of Scotlond trustede vp on him ande dede to him non homage for as moch as he hade done homage to Maude the Emperesse whenne that sche come in to Engelande. And thoo be gane astrong werre be twene the kyng and herre and so that Maude the Emperesse went and fledde in to the Toune of Nicholle to abyde there in strength And the kyng purseuede and long tyme beseged the Toune and the kyng myghte nought spede there no gette the Toune for the men þat were with in the Toune kepte it (fol. 51^b) wel and manlich defended hit And so pryuilich they that were with ine þe toune aschaped awhey with owtene hany harme. And thanne came the kyng in to the Toune and there dwellede til hit wer Candilmesse and thane come all the Barons that helde wyth the Emperesse that es to saye the Erlee Randolff of Chestre the Erle Robert of Gloucestre Sir hugh Bygote Robert Moleyne with here pouere that theye hadde.

Howe Maude the Emperesse wente fro wynchestre to Oxenford and froo thens sche wente to Wallyngford 7 her persecucioun
 Capitulo vj^{xx} decimo nono

Aftyr thys kyng henry that was þe first henry was mad kyng
 his nevy his sustyr Sone Stevyne Erle of boleyne⁷ anōn as
 he hard tydyng cuncell of hy vncle he passyd þe See and
 come in to Englonð thurgh cuncell and strenth and of help
 of many lordys of Englonð aʒens her othe þat þay had made
 to māvð þe Emperesse bot by toke þe Reme and lett Crowne
 stewyne kyng of þe lond And þe Ersbyschop wylliam of
 Cauntyrbury þat furst mad othe of feaute vnto /maud þe
Emperesse set the Croune fyrste vppoñ /stewyns hed 7 hym
 annoyntid⁸ and bysshop Roger of Salusbury Mayntenyd þe
 kyngys party in as much as he mythe þe fyrst 3er þat kyng
 stewyne by ganne to Reyne⁹ he assemlyd a grett hoste 7 went
 hym toward scottlond¹⁰ bott þe kyng of Scottys com Aʒens
 hym in peere¹¹ pece and in good maner and to hym be
 trustyd bott he mad to hym noñ homage for as mucche as he
 had mad homage to the Emperesse Maud went vnto the Sette
 nycholle and the kyng stevene her besegid long tyme and
 my3th not sped so well the Cyte was kepte and defendyd and
 tho þat weryne in the Cytte (fol. 75^a) and dwellyd ther
 tyll candylmas and come to þe barons that held wyt þe
Emperesse sso that ys for to say the Erle of Randolfe of
 chestre þe Erle Robert of Glouscestyr hugh by gatt Roberd
 and mordbay and Brogh wyt hym a gret pour

⁷-e- from -o- and -y- over erasure by corr. ⁸-noy- by
 corr. over erasure. ⁹-eyne by corr. over erasure.
¹⁰Two dots like raised colon. ¹¹Stroked out.

And whane the kyng was taken̄ and put in prisoun in to the Castel of Bristowe Maude the Emperesse was than̄ vndirfonged for lady of al Engelande and alle helde of here but the folke of kent helde of kyng Stevenes wyfe and Sire william Pree Chivaler helde werr a 3ens þe Emperesse And anon̄ there after come the kyng of Scotlond to heme with an howge peple and so they went to wynchestre there that the Emperesse was and haven taken her And þe Erle of Gloucestre came and 3afe bataille to heme And whils that þe batayle last and debate Maude thee Emperesse priviliche wente fro wynchestre and came in to Oxenford and ther helder^d privilich for the Erle of Gloucestre was taken̄ in that Bataylle and with him moch peple and for his deliveraunce kyng Stephene was delivered owte of prisoun And thane he toke his meñ and went to Oxenford and there be segede Maude the Emperesse and that Sege endurede frome Michelmasse vn to Seynt Andrewes tyde. And the Emperesse cloped her al in whit linnen clop for cause that sche nolde not be knowen̄ for in (fol. 52^a) that tyme ther lay moche snowe 7 so sche wente her weye be the temyse that none of here Enemyes perceyuede it and fro thens sche went too wallyngforde and there sche dwelled and the kyng wolde haue be segede here but he hade so moch to done þat he myght not abide ther too ffor the Erle Randolfe of Chestre and Sire Bygod werred so harde vp on him that he nyste where to abide. And the Erle of Gloucestre halp hem with al his pouere.

Howe Galfride Erle of Agoun 3alde vp to henry the Emperesse sone al Normandie Capitulo vj^{xx} quadringentesimo 7c

And whanne al this was done the kynge wente to wylton̄ and thought to haue made there a Castell And the Erle of Gloucestre come vp on him with an howge hoost and hade al most take the kyng and his company and 3iet þe kyng aschaped with moch peyne and Sire william Martell was ther

And in this same tyme was kyng stevyne takyne and put into
 þe castell of brestowe /Maud þe Emperes was mad lady of
 the lond and much pepyll held wyt her But þo of kent held
 wyt þe kyng Stewyne wyff And wylliam of Pre wyt his
 retenewe com azens his Maud þe Empris And thane come þe
 kyng of schotlond wyt a gret muiltetude¹ of pepyll to help
 hem 7 thane they went to wynschestyr and ther þe Emperis
 was and wold haue had her but the Erle Randolph com wyt his
 powr and halpe heme And in the meñ tyme þe Emperis Scapyd
 Away and went to Oxinfort and besegyd þe Emperis and the
 Sege induryd frome mykylme3 to sent Andry day And þe
 Emperes lett clod her all in wythe clothe for sche wold
 nott be knowe for in that tyme was a grett Snawe And so
 sche escapyd from her Enmyis by the watyr of Thamis and
 went to wallymforth² and held her ther and þe kyng wold
 haue besegid her bu he had so much to done þat he wyst wat
 to doo [...] ³ wyt þe Erle Randolph of chestyr helpyd hym wyt
 his pour ----- And-a-⁴

Of kyng Steven

And aftyr thys kyng went to wyltoun and wold haue mad
 tothir Castell but þe Erle of Glaucestyr come wyt a strong
 pour and almost had take þe kyng but 3it neuyr delesse he
 Schapyd wyt much Sorrowe 7 payne But 3ett neples (fol.
 75^b) wylliam Mertyll was

Fol. 75 ¹-tu- by scribe above with caret in text; -d- by
 corr. from -t-. ²-y- by corr. over -o-. ³Two letters
 apparently stroked out, but illegible. ⁴Red flourish
 after pour to finish line; And a stroked out at beginning
 of next line.

y take and the kyng 3af for his delueraunce to the Erle of
Gloucestre a thee^a goode Castelle of Schirbourne. And whane
this was doñ the Nobble Erle Roberd of Gloucestre and his
meñ went thens to faringdoñ and ther by gañe to haue made
a Castell and tho come the kyng with his pouer and drof
hem pens and the same 3ere the Erle Randolfe of Chester
was made acorde w^{ith} the kyng and come to the kynges Court
as he was prayde and whañ he was come the kyng let take
him a noñe and putt him in prisone And so he muste neuer
come oute tyl he hade 3ouen hym the Castel of Nichole that
he hade y taken fro the kyng with strength in the xv 3ere
of regñ of the kyng Stevene And Gaufride Erle of Angun 3afe
vp to henre his sone al Normandye And in the 3er (fol. 52^ab)
that come nexte there after þis Erle Gaufride deide and
henre his sone þoo wente anoñ a 3eñ to Angoñ and ther was
made Erle with moch honour And all the lond come to him
and dede him feaute 7 homag and this was henre the Emperesse
sone Erle of Angoñ and Duk of normandie and in the same 3er
ther was made adyuors be tweñ the kyng of ffraunce and the
quene his wif that was rightful heir of Gascoiñ for hit was
proved that thei wer sib of blod and henre that was the
emperesse sone spowsede her sone there after and so he was
Erle of Agoun and duke of Normandie and Duke of Gascoyne
And in xviiij 3er of þe regne of kyng Stephene this duke
henre come with astrong pouer in to Engeland and be gañ to
werr vþ on kyng Stephene and come and toke the Castell of
Malmesbury and dede moch harme to the countre and to the
kyng so that the kyng wiste nouht what to doñe and so at
the laste theye were accorded and that made the
Erschebysschoþ of kaunterbury Sire Tybaude and othir lordes
of Engeland in this maner that þei too scholde departe the
reame of Engeland bee twen heme So that henre the Emperesse
sone scholde haue halfe thee reame. And thane after kyng
Stephenes day he scholde haue all the hole Reame and in
this maner the werr was cessed be twene hem and pees cride

take for whos delyuerance þe kyng 3aff to þe Erle of
 Glaucestyr þe castell of Scarborowe þat he had takyne And
 when þis was done þe kyngys Enmys wente to faryngdoun and
 he be gane ther to make a fayr castell but þe kyng come
 wyt a gret Power and droff hym A way And hon the Same 3er
 was Erle Randolph accordyt wyt þe kyng and come in to þe
 Courte and went to haue gone saff and come saff but þe
 kyng let take hym and put hym in presoun and held hyme
 ther tell he gaff vp to hym þe castell of lencoln þe wych
 he had take frome þe kyng the xv 3er of his Reyng and
 Andfryd þe Erle of Angoy gaff vp to henry þe Emperis sone
 all normandy and harry his sonne þan a3ene turnyd anone
 a3ene to Angun And þane he was mad Erle wyt much honour
 of his⁵ men of the 10⁶ lond and feaute 7 homage to hym
 And þan was harry þe Emperes soñ Ele^a of Angoun duke of
 normandy and dewke of gascoyne And in the xviiij 3er þis
 henry come into Englund wyt a strong pour and by gane to
 wer vppon kyng stewyne and ded much harme and than kyng
 stewyne was so wrot vppon þat he ne wyst what to done but
 at þe last þay wer accordyth by the Ersbyschopp Theobald
 and þour opyr lordys of the lond So that þe kyng shuld
 haue tone halfe of the Reme And henry⁷ þe Emperis sone
 the tothyr half and ho þat longeste lyvid shull haue hit
 to hym Self holle and was pesse cryd

⁵Superscript -i-. ⁶Stroked out. ⁷Traces of -r- under -n-.

thourgh owt al Engelande And whenne the accorde was thus made be twene heme kyng Stephene be gañ to make so moch sorue that was wondir to witte for enchesoun that he hade lost halfe his reame of Engelande. And therfor he (fol. 52^ba) toke to him swech sorwe that brought him to hys deth And he deyde in the xix 3ere viij wikes v dayes of hys regne. And he lieth in the Abbey of ffeuersham that he let make in the vj 3ere of his regne.

Of kyng henre pat was the Emperesse sone in whos tyme regned Seynt Thomas of kaunterburi that was chaunceler of Engeland Capitulo vj^{xx}. xlj^o

And after this kyng Stephne regned henre that was the Emperesse soñe and Thebaud that was Bisschof of Caunterburi was made the ky^b the xvij day be fore criste masse day And in the same 3ere Thomas Bekete of london Erschebischof of kaunterbury was made the kynges Chaunceler of Engeland and in the seconde 3ere that he was crounede and y made kyng of Engeland he lette felle downe alle the Newe Castelles that were be longyng to the croune that kyng Sthephene hade 3euen to dyuerse men that he hade made Erles and Barounes for to halde with him in his werres a 3ens henre the Emperesse soñes And in the fourth 3er of his regne he putte in to his owne lordschiþ the kyng of walis And al so in þe same 3ere the kyng of Scotlond And whanne he hade in his lordeschiþ the Touñe of Carlill and the Castel of Bamborough and the Castell vp one tyme^c and the Erldome of lancastre a noñ the same 3ere the kyng wente in to walys with an houghe pouer and lette felle a down trees and wodes 7 made weyes and made the Castel of Ruthland and of Basyngwerker and among alle othir he made an hous of the temple^d and in the same 3er Richard his sone was bore and afterward he was Erle of Brittaigne and in the same 3ere he Chaunged the koygne (fol. 52^bb) of hys mone And in the vj 3ere of his

pour out þe lond And by gane kyng stewyne full sorry by
cause he hath loste halfe his Reme and fyll to Such maledy
and deid in the xix 3er of his regne viij wekys and v dayis
iñ (fol. 76^a) werr and contekk and lyith in þe abbay of
feuyrsame the wych he lett make þe vj 3er of hys Reigne

Of harry þe Emperus sone

And aftyr þis kyng /stewyne regnyd [.]¹ harry the Emperus
Sone and was Crownyd of the Ersbyschoppus of Cantyrbury
the xvij day of Crystmes in þe same 3er Thomas byga²
Bekyd Arsbyschop of Cauntyrbury was mad þe kyngys
Chaunceler of Englonde And in þe sam 3e^a 3er he lett
cast done all þe new castellys that longit to þe Croune³
the wych kyng stewyne had 3euyne to dyuers meñ for to hald
wyt hyme azens kyng herry 7 in the iiij 3er of his Reigne
~~bub-vndyr-his-subieccone~~² the kyng of walys lett cast
doune many wodys and castellys and mad þer han² howses⁴
of the tempyll and in the same 3er was Rychard hys sone
was² borne was Erle of Oxinforthe and in the same 3er he
schangid his money And in þe v. 3er of his

Fol. 76 ¹One or two letters erased. ²Stroked out. ³-e
by corr. over erasure. ⁴-s inserted above; caret in text.

regne he nome with him an howge hoost and wente in to
 Tholous ande conquerede al the countre And in thee vij
 3ere of his regne Thebaude deide þat was Erchebisschoþ of
 kaunterburi And in the same 3ere al the Toune of
 kaunterbury was almost brent thorough mys aduenture. And
 in the ix 3ere of his regne Thomas Beket that was
 Channcler of Engeland was chosen to be Erchebischoþ of
 kaunterburi And vp oñ Seynt Barnabe day he was consacred
 ⁊ in the same 3er Elianore the kynges doughter was boreñ
 And in the x 3er of his regne Seint Edmund the kyng was
 translated with mochil solempnite And in the xj 3ere of
 his regne he held parlement at Northampton And Seint
 Thomas of kunterburi flede frome thens for the debate that
 was be twen the kyng and him And if he hade beñ founden on
 morwe he hade ben slayñ and therfore he wente fro
 Northampton priuylich with three of his men on fote that
 no man hit wiste and went ouere the See to the Court of
 Rome And þis was the cause of þe debate þat was be twene
 him and the kyng. yf a Clerke hade ben take and aproved of^e
 a thief þat he scholde haue bene an honged and done to the
 deth and holi cherch scholde nought haue saued him And the
 xij 3ere deide Maude the Emperesse that was kyng henre
 modir and in the same 3ere Ion his doughter was booren And
 in the xiiij 3ere of his regne the Duke henre of Saxsone
 spoused Maude his doughter and be gate vp on here iij
 sonnes that es to saye henre Othus ⁊ william. And in the
 xiiij 3er deide the goode Erle Robert of Gloucestre that
 made the Abbay of Nonnes of Etoñe And in the same 3er Marik^f
 that was kyng of Ierusalem conquerde the Toune of Babulons^f
 And in the xv 3ere of his regne he let crowne henre his
 soñe kyng (fol. 53^a) of Engeland atte westmynstre of
 Roger þat was Erchebisschoþ of 3orke and that was done in
 preuidice and in harme of Seynt Thomas Erchebisschoþ of
 kaunterburi And therfore this sire Roger was accorsed of
 þe Popes mouthe

Reyne he went ouyr to Tholouus 7 conquerd yt And þe vj 3er
 of hys Reign deyð þe Ersbysshopp Thabald of Cauntyrbury
 þe wych cantyrbury was almoste brente þurch mysse happe
 And in the xx 3er of his Reyng was borne Alyonor þe kyngys
 dou3tyr And Becket þe kyngys chauncelere⁵ was mad
 Ersbyschop of Cantyrbury and in þe x 3er of his Reigne
 Sent Edmond was trancelatt wytt much honour and worship
 And the xj 3er of reigne he held hys² his parlamente At
 hamtoun and fro thens fled Thomas þe Ersbyschop of
 Cauntyrbury for a grett debatt by twne þe kyng and hyme
 for and he had bene fowndon on þe morow he had bene slayne
 but he went wyt ij fellows to þe Cuntre of Rome And this
 was þe specyall causse þat he shuld a deid (fol. 76^b) Thane
 þe kyng wold haue put Clerkys to dethe þat had be ataynte
 of felon wyt out priueleg of holy chyrche And in the xij
 3er of his Reigne was Iohn his⁶ sone borne And in þe xiiij
 3er of his Reigne deid maud his modyr the Emperes And in
 the same 3er was borne Iohn his dou3tyr And in þe xiiij
 3er of his Reigne Duke henry Saxsons spowsyd Maud hys
 dou3tyr and be gatt vppon her iij Sonnez . Henry . Othus .
 7 wylliam And in the xv 3er deid þe good Erle Robert of
 Gleuister þat foundyd the Abbay of Nonnes of Etoun And in
 the same 3er Marik of Irlo^b conquerd Babeloun And in the
 xvj 3er of his Reigne he lett Croune henry hys sone kyng
 at westmestyr whom crownyd the Ersbysshop of yorke in
 harmyng of Thomas Arssbysshop of Cauntyrbury wher for the
 Ersbysshop was A Cursyd of the pope

⁵By corr. over erasure. ⁶Superscript -i-.

Of kyng henry that was the sone of kyng henre that was the Emperesses sone and of the debate that was be twen him and his fader whiles that he was in Normandie Capitulo Centesimo xliij^o

After the coronacioun of kyng Henry the emperesses sone this henry went ouer the See in to Normandie and there he mariede Elianore his doughter to dolfines that was kyng of Almaine And in þe vij 3ere that Seint Thomas of kaunterburi was exiled out of the land and the kyng of ffraunce made hem too accorded and þane come seint Thomas a 3eine in to Engeland to his owne Chirch at kaunterbury And the accorde was made be twene him and kyng henre in the be gynnyng of aduent And after the v day of cristemesse Seint Thomas was done to the deth ffor kyng henre though^a vp on seint Thomas as he sat at his mete on cristus masse day and saide thes wordes If that I hade any goode knyght or trewe abowte me he wolde auenged me vp on̄ this erchebisschoþ many a day y goñe And anoñ priuilich Sire william þe Britton Sire hugh de Moruyley Sire william Tracy and sire Regnolde fitz vrs þo went ouer the see and come to Caunterburi and þere thei martered the holi mañ seint Thomas att the auter of seint benet in the heigh Cherch of kaunterburi And that was in the 3er of the Incarnacioun of our lord ihesus crist M^l C xl and xij 3ere and anoñe ther after kyng henre the 3onge kyng be gañe to werre vp on his fadir henre and al so his bretheren that were kyng henre soones and the kyng of fraunce 7 the kyng of Scottland and with him al the grettest lordes of Engeland were all at on assent to werre vp on kyng henre the fadir And att the last þorough godes grace he ouere come heme all that were his enemies and so that the kyng of fraunce and he were accorded and frendes. And kyng henre (fol. 53^ab) the fadir sente to the kyng of fraunce 7 praide him specially that he wolde sende to him the names y wretten of hem that bi gonne to werr vp on him

Of kyng harry the sonne of kyng harry

And aftyr the incornacioun^c of kyng henry sone of kyng herry þe fadyr went ouyr the See in to normandy And lett marry[d]⁷ his douztyr to þe Dolfene kyng of Almayn And in the vij 3er of his Reigne the Ersbyssshop was A cordyd wyt þe kynge And þane come he home in to hys owne chyrche and this A cordyng was⁸ in the begynnyng of herfest And aftyr [was]⁹ he was martyrd the v day of Crystmes nex followyng ffor kyng henry vppon Crystmes day þouzt vppon the Erssbyschop and sayd and he had ony good knyzte þat lovyd hem he had bene A wengid long A goo on Sent Thomas of Cauntyrbury And Anone Syr wylliam Bretoun 7 syr hugh Movil Syr wylliam tracy Syr Raynold¹⁰ fyt3 vrs berson in (fol. 77^a) Englysch^a Pryuylich come in to Englond to þe chyrche of Cauntyrbury and þer hyme Martrid on Sent benetys Autyr in the modyr chyrche And þis was in þe 3er of our lord Ihesus Cryst M^l C lxxij. And Anone henry the newe kyng by gane to wer vppon herry þe fadyr and eke oppon hys broþyr And so oppon atyme þe kyng of fraunce and þe kyngys sonnes and the kyng of Scotlond and the gret lordys of Englond arysyne azens kyng harry the fadyr but As god wold he conquerd hys Enmys and was acordyd wyt þe kynge of fraunce and by south hyme tell¹ þe namys .² of heme þat mewyd wer azenst hyme bethe^b

⁷-d erased. ⁸Inserted by corr. above; caret in text.

⁹Erased. ¹⁰Second minim of -n- erased (or rubbed).

Fol. 77 ¹By corr. above; caret in text. ²Superfluous letter, poss. b, v, or start of h.

And the kyng of fraunce sente him the names I wretten and saide that Iohn his sone ⁊ Richard his sone and henre his sone that he hade y made kyng in his stede were cause of the bygynnyng of the were that was vp on him And þo was kyng henre the fader wondir wroth towardes his sones and sore he cursed thee tyme that euere he heme begate And whiles that the werr laste henre the newee kyng deide and sore repented him of Seynt Thomas deth of kaunterbury and praide his fader with sorwful herte and pitouse to for 3eue him his trespas And the fadir hade of him pitte and rewth and for 3af him his trespas and sone after he deide the xxxvj 3ere of his regne and he lieth att redyng.

Howe cristene men in kyng henre tyme losten the holy lande that made a fals cristene mane^b that be came a saresen
Capitulo Centesimo xliij^o

And in kyng henres tyme that was the Emperesses sone there was astronge bataille in the holy londe be twen cristen men ⁊ sarecenes and moch peple of cristen men were there slayn and that was þorwe tresoun of the false Erle of Tripe þat haue hade to wife the quene of Ierusalem that was sum tyme baldewynes wife and sche forsoke him and wolde nought haue him And sone ther aftere sche spoused alorde that men called Sir Guy of perches. And there fore the Erle of Tripe was ful wroth And a noñe wente to Saladyñ the Soudon of Babilon and by come a Sarasene and forsoke his owne lawe and his cristendome And the cristene mene wiste right nought of his cas but wende to haue hade of him moche socoure and helpe as thei hade of him be fore. And whanne he come in to bataille he for soke cristene men and helde with sarsenes and so were the cristene men be gilled and done to foule deth and the Citte of Ierusalem y take and distroied and the holy cros boren a wey for euere And vp on a tyme the kyng of ffraunce and alle the gret lordes

and he ded soo and þe fyrst was Iohn̄ his sone and Rychard
 his brotþyr and henry his sone and þan was henry wondyr
 wroth and a corsyd the tyme þat hem³ heuyr^c by gatte And
 whil de warre duryd kyng henry þe sone deyde sor Repentyng
 his mesdedis and mad much sorowe for Sent Thomas of
 Cauntyrbury and prayd his fadyr of forgefnes and mercy
 and he for gaff hym and had of hym grett pyte and aftyr
 he deid the xxvj 3er of his Reign̄ and lyith att Redyng

And whylle kyng henry þe Emperour sone Reignyd a gret
 batell was done in the holy lond by twene þe Crystenmeñ
 and the Sarsons but þe Crystenmeñ wer slayne purch tresoun
 of þe Erle⁴ of Trypp þat wold haue had to wyffe the quene
 of Ierusalem And sche toke a kny3te to her hosbond callyd
 Syr Guy purchas werfor þe Erle of Trippe was wroth and
 when þe Englysmen and þe Crystyn⁵ mene wend þat þe Erle
 had bene wyt hem as he was (fol. 77^b) wonte to be he for
 soke and thur his tressoun wher thay dyssaywyd and kyllyd
 euyry chone and was the Cytte of Ierusalem distrewd⁶ And
 þe holy crosse done and borne away And thane the kyng of
 fraunce and meny othyr lordys

³m abbreviation-mark added by corr. ⁴Superscript -r-.
⁵-n blotted. ⁶dis- by corr. in right margin at end of
 line with double hyphen.

of the Reame let doñ heme croyce^c for to (fol. 53^ba) wende in to the holy londe And amonges alle othire Richard kyng henres sone of Engelande was the firste after the kyng of fraunce that vndertoke þe cros of Erschbisschoþ bartilmewe of Toures but he wente not forth þat tyme for enchesoun that he was occupiede abowte other diuerse thinges. And whanne kyng henres fadir hade regnede xxxv 3ere 7 v mone his 7 iiij daies he deide and lieth at ffount Euerarde

Of kyng Richarde that conquerede in the holi londe alle that þe cristen men hade lost Capitulo Centesimo xliiij^{to}

And after this kyng Henre Richard hys sone was made kyng of Engeland an hardy man and astronge and he was crouned kyng at westmynstre of the Erchbischoþ of kaunterbury Baldewyn the ij day of September And the iiij day of his regne the Erschebischoþ Baldewyn was ded fare in his bede And so it was that thee kyng 7 houberde bischoþ of Salesbury and Randoulp Erle of Gloucestre and many othir lordes of Engeland wente in to the holi londe And in þat viage Baldewyne Erschebischoþ of kaunterburi was ded faire in his bed^d And kyng Richard wente forth faire in his wey to ward the holye londe and toke the Toune of Cipres with moch strength And fro thens he wente to Ierusalem and pere conquerede so moch londe as the cristene men be fore hade loste saue the holy cros. And whanne kyng Richard come to Acres for to take the Citte there be gañe agrette debate be twen him and the kyng of ffraunce so that kyng Richarde retourned a 3ene in to ffraunce al in wrathe And ar he wente fro the Citte of Acres he hade take the Toune And whenne he hade gete þe Toune he dwelled ther inne alitel tyme And in the mene tyme þer com tydinge that the Erle Iohn of Oxenforde his brothir wolde sese al (fol. 53^bb) Engeland in to his hond 7 al Normandy and al so wolde croune hym kyng of the land And whenne kyng Richard herde

ded Crosshem in to þe holy lond And Amongys hem went
 Rychard henry Sone and toke þe Ersbyssshop off touris bothe
 he went in his viage at that tyme for other nethis þat he
 had to done And when kny⁷th kyng henry had Reignid xxxv
 3er 7 v. monthis and iiij dayis he deid and lyith att
 fount Euerard

Richard

And aftyr this kyng henry Rychard his⁸ sone astrong mañ
 and Aworthy And he was Crownyd at westtmester of þe
 Ersbyschopp of Raldewyne of Cauntyrbury⁹ and in the
 second 3er of his Reigne he and þe Ersbyschop of Salysbury
 Radulf Erle of Chestyr and many opir lordys of Englonð
 went vn to þe holy lond And in þat wyage deid þe Erssbyshop
 of Cauntyrbury And kyng Rychard wente ber¹⁰ fer^{11d} into þe
 holy lande And Rest nott tell he come in his way into
 Cypris and toke yt on fotte thens he went forthe into þe
 holy lond and gat as much as þe Englysmen loste by fore
 thorow gret mythe saue honly þe holy Crosse And þane come
 kyng Rychard in to þe towne of Crosse and gyt þe Cyte And
 thane AROS a gret debatte bytwene þe kyng of fraunce and
 þe kyng of Englonð So þat kyng Rychard wente A3ene bot
 hor he departythe he gatt þe Cite of Acres And dwellythe
 þer a whylle And come tydyngys to hym of þe Erle his
 brother of oxinforthe þat wold haue sesyd all Englon in
 to hys hand And wold Crowne hym kyng And qui¹⁰ when kyng
 Rychard hard

⁷kny³th stroked out; kyng by corr. above. ⁸Superscript
 -i-. ⁹First -t- stroked out (at end of line). ¹⁰Stroked
 out. 11-e- from -o- by corr.

þis tyding he wente a 3ene to ward Engelond with al the
 peple þat þei myghte but the duk of Estrich mette with him
 and toke him and broughte him to the Emperour of Almaigne
 and the Emperour broughte him in to his prisoun and
 afterward he was delyuered for an howge raunsome to bene
 paide eche othir Chalis of Engelond was melte and made in
 to monee and alle the monkes of the ordur of Cisteaux
 3euen alle here bokes þoru Engelond to done heme for to
 selle and þat raunsome for to paie

How kyng Richard come home a 3ene from the holi lande and
 auenged him of his enemyes Capitulo Centesimo xlv^{to}

Whilles kyng Richard was in prisone the kyng of ffraunce
 werrede vp on hime strongelich in Normandie and Iohn his
 brothir werred vp on hym in Engelande but the bisschopes
 and the Barounes of Engelond with stoden him with al the
 pouere that they hade and my3te seche and gaten the Castel
 of wyndesore and alle othir Castelles. And the forsayde
 Iohn saw that he hade none myght no power azens the barouns
 of Engelond for to fighte þo anoñe hee wente ouer the see
 vn to the kyng of ffraunce And whenne kyng Richard come
 owte of prisone and was deliuered and come in to Engeland
 Anoñ after Candel masse in grett haste he wente vn to
 Notyngham And the Castel of Notyngham to him was 3elden.
 And þoo disherited he Iohn his brothir and al that with
 him helde And afterward he wente to the Cite of wynchestre
 and there he lett croune hym kyng efte sonis And after he
 wente in to Normandie for to werre vp on the kyng of
 ffraunce. And the kyng of ffraunce come with vj.C knyghtes
 to ward Giseres and the kyng Richard mette hym and wolde
 haue 3eueue him bataille but the kyng of ffraunce fledde
 and an hundred knyghtes of his were taken and ij C knyghtes
 and stedes were traped withe Eren^e And anon after wente
 kyng Richarde for to be sege the Castell of Gy (fol. 54^a)

thys tydyngys he wente azen toward Englonde wyt all þe my3th But de duke of ostrech (fol. 78^a) mett wyt hym and toke hym And brouth hym to þe Emperour of Almayne and þe Emperour brouth hyme in to presoun And aftyrwas¹ he was delyuerd out of presoun for C M¹. li for wyche Rawnsoun to be payd a chaleys of euyr chirch² of Englonde was multon^a and mad in money And all þe mon[.]kys³ of þe orther of Sextens^b hol sped hym well in þat raunsoun

And whene þis /kyng Rycharde was in presone þe kyng of fraunce werryd sor vppon hyme in Englonde but þe byschop and þe barons of Englonde wythstod hyme and gatt meny castellys and sayd Iohn Sauwell þat his pour myth nott endewr a3ens þe barons but went wyt hym ouyr þe See in to fraunce to þe kyng and when kyng Rycharde was delyuerd oute of presone he come into Englonde at Candelmesse to Nothyngame 7 hit was 3oldon vn to hyme And þane desherte⁴ he Iohn his brother and all þat wyt hym held and aftyr he wente to wyncestyr and ther he lett Crowne hym þe⁵ kyng of fraunce^c come wyt C kny3tys toward Gyfers and kyng Rycharde met wyt hyme but þe kyng of fraunce fled And C kny3tys of his weryne takyne and all þat þay had brouth wyt heme. Thane Anone aftyr went kyng Rycharde to be sege þe castell

Fol. 78 ¹-was stroked out. ²a chaleys of by corr. over erasure; eu' chirch by corr. in right margin with caret, with caret in text. ³n abbreviation-mark added by corr.; letter, prob. -k-, blotted out. ⁴-h- by corr. above; caret in text. ⁵Inserted above by corr.; caret in text.

Gillard^a and as he 3ede vp on a day And as he 3ede vp on
 aday^b be the Castel ffor to take avisement of the Castel
 An arublast^r smot hym with aquarel that was enuemenede^c
 And the kyng drouh out the schafte of the quarel but the
 quarel heued abod stille in his heede and hit be gañ for
 to rancle þat he myght nought helpe hym selfe ne meue his
 armes. And þo that he wiste þat he hade dethes wounde that
 he might nought bee hool for no maner thing he comaunded
 a noñ alle his meñ scharpely for to assaile þe castel so
 that the castel was taken or þat he deyde and so manlich
 his men deden þat þe peple that were in the castel were
 alle taken. And the kyng dede with heme what þat he wolde
 and he comaunded his meñ þat thei scholde brynge be fore
 him the man þat him so herte and so woundede And whenne
 he come be fore the kyng he axede what was his name and
 he saide sere myn name es Bertram Gurdoun. Wherfore saide
 þe kyng haste þou me slayñ sithe þat y dede the neuer noñ
 harme Sire saide he þou 3e ded me neuer none harme 3e haue
 y done to my frendes mochil harme ffor 3oure selfe with
 3oure hand quelled my fadir and my brothir and þerfore now
 y y^d haue quytte 3ou 3oure trauaille Tho saide kyng Richard
 he that deide vp on the cros to bringe manes sowle fro the
 peyne of hell for 3eue the my deth and y al so for 3eue it
 the tho comaunded the kyng þat no mañ scholde hyme mysdone
 But for al the kynges defendyng some of his mene him
 foluede and priuely him quelled. And the vj day after the
 day after the kyng dede him schrive and sore repentaunce
 hauyng of his mysdedes and was housled^e and anoynted And
 this kyng ne regned but ix 3ere 7 xxxix wokes and deide
 and lith be seide his fader atte ffounteuerarde

Of kyng Iohn that in the ferste 3ere of^l his regne loste
 al Normandie Capitulo vj^{xx} xlvj^{to}.

Fol. 54 ^lMark like er abbreviation-mark betw. 3ere and of;
 ? poss. a false start for h.

Gaylerd As as he Rode vppon̄ A daye by the castell he toke
 Awysmente of þe castell an hawblastyr Smott hym . wyt a
 quarell þat was venomyde And kyng Rychard droff oute þe
 chafte of þe quarell but þe hed abod styll in his hed and
 his hes^d hed be gane to Rankyll þat he my3th help hymeselfe
 And west well þat he had his Ded wonde and Comandyd all hys
 meñ Scharply for to sayll⁶ þe castell so þat þe castell was
 (fol. 78^b) take or that he deid and the pepyll takyne And
 kyng Rychard comand his meñ þat þay shull brynge befor hyme
 þe mane þat hyme so horte⁷ and so he was And the kyng axid
 hym wat was his name. And he sayd Bartrame Vuerdoun wherfor
 quod þe kyng hast þou my horte 7 þus wounde suche that I
 ded de neuyr harme Syr sayd he thowgh 3e ded me neuyr harme
 3e haue done to my fryndys for 3our howne hondys slowyne
 my fadyr And my brother and many othyr of my frendys and
 þer for I haue 3oue qwyte nowe 3our trawaylle Than sayd
 kyng Rychard /he þat deid vp on̄ A Crosse for 3eff 3ou
 myne Dethe and I for 3eff 3ou And comand none of his meñ
 shuld mesdoñ hym but for all þe kyngys Comandement þe
 kyngys meñ slow hym or he my3th Aschap And þan kyng
 Rychard deide sor Repentyng at-f⁸ þe ix 3er of his Reigne
 And xxxiiij wekys And lyth at fount Euerard be syd his
 fadyr

Of kyng Iohn̄

⁶Flourish at start of long s-. ⁷Upper part of h- appar-
 ently erased. ⁸Stroked out.

Whenne kyng Richard was ded for enchesoun that he hade non heir nothir sone nor doughter his brothir Iohn was made kyng and crouned at westmestre of Houberd that was the Erschebisscho^p of kaunterburi. And whene he be gaⁿe for too (fol. 54^ab) regne he be come so meruelous a maⁿ and wente ouer in to Normandie and werred vp on the kyng of ffraunce and so longe thei werred to gidere til at þe laste kyng Iohn loste normandie and Angoun wherfore he was sore annoyed and was no meruaile Tho lett he assemble before him at london Erchebisshopis bisshopis Abbottes and Priours erles and Barouns and helde there a gret perlement and axede there of the clergie the tenthe of eueri cherche of Engeland for to conquere and gette a 3ene Normandie and Angoun that he hade lost and thei wolde nought graunte that thing wherfore he was wondir wroth And in the same tyme deide the bischop Houbert And the Priour and the Couent^f of kaunterburi Chosen² a 3ens the kynges wille to ben Erchebisshop maister Stephene of langtoun a good clerke that wonede atte Court of Rome and sende to the pope here eleccioun And þe pope confermede hit and sacrede^g at Viterbe whenne the kyng wiste this tyding hee was wondir wroth and drofe the Priour and the Couent fro kaunterbury and exilde heme owt of Engelande And comaunded þat no maner letter that came fro the Court of Rome no noⁿ maundement scholde be vndirfonged ne plead in Engeland whenne this tyding come to the pope he sente vn to kyng Iohn be his letter and praide him with goode wille and with good herte þat he wolde vndirfonge Stephene Erchebisshop of kaunterburi vn to his Cherch and to soffre the Priour and his monkes to come a3ene to here owne dwellynges but the kyng wold not graunt hit for no thing

²Minuscule c with dot = C.

And whene Ryng⁹ Rychard was dede by cause he had none
 neyr his broþyr Iohn was Crownyd kyng at westmestyr of
obbard þe Ersse byschop of Cauntyrbury and whene he be
 gane to Reigne he be come A merwelosse mane as yt was
 wondyr to wytt And he went ouyr þe See into normandy and
 werryd vppon þe kyng of fraunce and so long þay warryd
 tyll at þe laste þe kyng Iohn̄ lost all normandy and
 gascoyne and Gyone þat he had lost And was kyng Iohn̄ Sor
 Amewyd And þan he lett Sembyll a gret ost at london both
 of Spirituall 7 temperall And the haxid of the clarge a
 dyme¹⁰ (fol. 79^a) [...]hch¹ of þe Chyrche for to conquer
 all normandy and Gascoun aþene þat he had loste but þay
 wold not þat graunte² thyng^a And ther for he was wondyr
 wrothe And in this same tyme deid þe byshop huberd and þe
 preur of cowent of Cauntirbury chosyne Aþens þe kyngys
 well Mastyr stewyne of langtoun to be Ersbyssshop of
 Cauntyrbury þe wyche was at þe corte of Rome 7 sent to þe
 pope þer aleccioun And þe poppe confermydid yt and when
 kyng Iohn̄ wyst þat he was wondyrly wrothe and drof þe
 Cowente and þe priour frome Cantyrbury And exilid heme
 And comand þat no lettre or mandemente þat come fro Rome
 shuld be vndyr fong ne pleded in Englund And when this
 tydyng come vn to þe pop of Rome he sent by hys letters
 to kyng Iohn̄ And perayd³ hym wyt good hert to vndyr fong
 Stewen of Englund langdoun to his chyrche And suffyr þe
 priour and his monkys to come aþen vnto her owne lyfflod
 bot þe kyng wold not grant yt for none maner thyng

⁹Attempt poss. made to alter R- to k-. ¹⁰a dyme by corr.
 over approx. 3 erased letters. Fol. 79 ¹First two letters
 obscured by stain.²By corr. in right margin at end of line.
³p- followed by er abbreviation-mark.

Howe kyng Iohn wolde no thing doñ for the Popes comaundement wherfore al Engelond was enterdited and suspended^h Capitulo Centesimo xvij^o.

And at the laste the Pope sente be his autorite and Ennioyned to bisshopis of Engelande that if the kyng wolde not vndere fonge the Priour of kaunterburi 7 his monkes that thei scholde doñ generale enterditeng þoru3 out al En (fol. 54^ba) gelonde and grauntede fulle pouer to iiij bisshopes to pronounce the enterditynge yf hit were nede. The firste was bisshop william of london And that othir Eustace bisshop of Elye. The iij was water bisshop of Wynchestere. And the ferth was Giles bisshop of Herforth And these iiij bisshhopes praide the kyng kneleyng on here knees and sore wepyng that he wolde doo the popes comaundement and schewde him the bulles of the enterdytinge but for no praier that they myghte praie he wolde nought concete þere too. And whene the bisshopis saw this thei wente fram the kyng And in the morwe after the Anunciacioun of owr lady they pronouncede the general enterdytyng þoru3 owt al Engelande soo þat þe chirche dores were schit with kaies and with othir fastenyng and with walles. And whenne the enterdytyng was pronouncede thenne the kyng bee gañe to wexe al owte of mesure ande nome in to his hande ale the possessiounes of the iiij bisshopes and of alle þe clergie þoru3 alle the londe and ordeignede men for to kepe hit þat the clergie myghte nought haue here lyuyng wherfore the bisshopis kursede alle ham þat pulteⁱ or scholde medle with hoolye cherche goodes a 3ens the wille of heme that heme owede. And whenne the kyng wolde nought cesse of his malis for noñ maner thinge the iiij bisshopes aboue seide wente ouer the see and wente to the Ersschebisshop of kaunterburi and tolde him all the doynge And the Erchebisshop to him saide þat þei scholde go a 3en to kaunterburi and he wolde come þethir to heme or elles he welle sende þeþer

Howe kyng Iohn̄ was Rebell a 3ens the Pope Capitulo

And at þe last þe poppe sent by hys Autorrytes and
 Enyoynid to byschopys of Englonde þat 3eff kyng Iohn̄ wold
 not sesse of þe percycucioun þat he ded to holy chyrche
 ne vndyrfong mastyr steuyne langtoun ne þe prior⁴ and his
 monkys that þay shuld do de generall enterdytyng 3if hit
 wer ned And enyoyned iiij byschoppis to fulfyll yt The
 fyrst was þe byschop of london̄ And þe Second þe byschop
 of Ely and the thyrd the byschope of wauter And þe iiij
 byschope Gyles and thes iiij come in to þe kyng knelyng
 oppoñ her kneis full (fol. 79^b) sore wepyng And besecheyng
 þe kyng to do de popys commaunndemente And schewd hyme
 þe bullys of the intertydhynge þurch oute Englonde So þat
 þe chyrch dorrys wer schet and slozyd thourh⁵ oute Englonde
 And kyng Iohn̄ seing⁶ þis token in his all þe possessioun
 of holy chyrche þuroute þe Reme and hordynynd meñ for to
 kep heme And þane þe bysshop Corsyd all heme þat medelyth
 wyt holy chyrche a3ens þe wyll of hym And when þe kyng
 wold nott sesse of his malysse þe iiij byschopps whente
 hem ouyr the See to the Ersbyshopps of Cauntyrbury and
 told hym all the doynge And þe Ersbyshops bad heme gone
 A3ene to Cantyrbury and he wold come thedyr hyme selfe or
 send

⁴-o^r by corr. over erasure. ⁵-h added by corr. ⁶MS. has
⁴ minims for -in-.

certeine personis in his stede þat scholde do as moche as him selfe were þeree And whene the bisshopes herde this þei tornede a 3ene to kaunterburi The tiding come to the kyng that the bisshopes were comen a 3ene to kaunterburi and (fol. 54^b) him selfe myghte nought come þeder þat tyme he sente thedir bisshopes Erles abbottes for to trete whith heme that the kyng scholde vndirfonge the Erchebisshop̄ Stephene and þe Priour and alle the monkes of kaunterburi And he scholde neuere after þat tyme no thing take of holi chirch a 3ens the wille of heme þat owen the goodes and þat the kyng scholde make ful amendes to heme of whame hee hade eny goodes taken and that holi cherch scholde haue alle her fraunchises as ferforth as he^j hadde in seynt Edwardes tyme the confessour

Howe Stephene of langtoun come in to Engelande þoru3 the popes comaundement and he wente a 3ene Capitulo Centesimo lxviij^o

Whenne the foure^k of accorde þous was ordeygned hit was in a peire of endentures and thei putte her seales to that oo parte and thei þat comen in the kynges name putte here seles to þat other endentures and the iiij bisshopes aboue saide toke þat of þo endentures with ham And that othere parte of that endentures thei bare with him for to schewe the kyng whenne the kyng saw the forme and vnderstoded he helde heme ful wel a paide of alle maner thing þat thei hade ordeiynde saue as towchinge the restitucioun of the goodes for to make a 3ene to that thing he wolde^l And so he sente worde a 3en to the forsaid iiij bisshopis that þei scholde doñ owt and putte a whay that o poynt of restitucioun And they answerde that they nolde not doñ a wey o worde. Tho sente the kyng to the Erchbisshop̄ iiij bisshopes that he scholde come to Caunterburi for to speke with him there. And sente vn to him safe condit vnder

such as shuld do as much as heme selfe ther And þey come
 a3ene in to Cauntyrbury And þann came tydyng to þe kyng
 þat þe iiij bysshop wer comen a3ene and for as much as he
 mythe nott come hyme selfe he send thethyr lordys bothe
sperituall 7 temperall And so þe kyng was entretid⁷ ~~with~~⁸
 to vndyrfong the Ersbesshop and þe preiour also and his
 monkyus^b and þat he shuld aftyr þat tyme do nothyng A3ens
 holy chyrche A3ens þe wyll of hem þat owed þe gooddys And
 also þat þe kyng shuld make full a mendys to hem of home
 he hade take ony good And þat holy chyrche shuld haue all
 her fraunchisis in like wysse as thay had in kyng
 Edwardys tyme þe confessur

Howe Mastyr Steven langtoun come in to Englonde Capitulo

When the poyntys⁹ of Accord thus was hordynid it was
 wryttyne in a payr of endenturs 7 thay put þer Selys on
 both parties And the tone party is remaynid wyth iiij
 byschops and þe tothyr was brouth vn to þe kyng to schew
 hyme (fol. 80^a) and whene kyng saw þe forme he was well
 plesyd wyt all saue as þe tochyng þe restytucioun of þe
 goodys for to make a3ene to þat þe kyng wold not Assente
 in nomaner of wysse And sent A3ene vnto þe iiij byschoppys
 þat he shuld doo oute þat one poynt¹ and þan he wold
 consent to all and thay Answerd and sayde þat þay wold
 nott do oute no² word And þane sente þe kyng to þe
 Ersbyshop of Cauntyrbury þat he shuld come 7 spoke wyt
 hyme ther And sent to hyme sawe condyt vndyr

⁷-retid by corr. over erasure. ⁸Stroked out. ⁹By corr.
 over erasure. Fol. 80 ¹Badly formed -o- like a; -t by
 corr. over erasure. ²By corr. over erasure.

plegges that es to seye his Iustices Gilberde Peytevyne
 william de la Breuer & Iohn le fitz hughe þat in here
 condit saflich he scholde come and goȝe a ȝene at his
 wille. And in this manere the Erschebisshop̄ Stephene come
 vn to kaunterburi And whanne the Erchebisshop̄ was comen
 the kyng came to Chilham for he wolde come no nere
 Caunterburi at þat tyme but he sente be his tresorer
 bisshop̄ of wynchestre that he scholde doȝe owte of the
 endentures the clause of restetucioun for to make of the
 goodes. And the Erchbisshop̄ made his ooth þat he wolde
 neuere do owt oo worde there ofe no chaunge that the
 bisshopis hade y spoken & ordeygned And so the Erchbisshop̄
 wente a ȝen to Rome with owte any mor doynge kyng Iohn þo
 was moch wroth more thanne (fol. 55^a) euer he was be fore
 and let make a comune crie thoruz owte al Engeland that
 alle þoo that hadde holy cherche rentis and wente ouer þe
 See that þei scholde come a ȝene in to Engelande at a
 certeine day and ellis they scholde lese here rente for
 euer more. And þat he comaunded to eueri schereue þoruȝ
 out Engeland that þei scholde enquer if eny bysshop̄ Abbot
 Priour or eny othir prelate of holy schirch froo that day
 afterward receyuede hany maundement þat came fro the Pope
 that þei scholde take the body^a and bringe hit be fore
 hime And þat þei scholde take in to kynges hand alle his
 landes of holy cherch that were y ȝouen vn to hanye man
 be the erchbisshop̄ Stephene or be the prioure of kaunterburi
 fram the tyme of elleccioun of the Erchebisshop̄ And
 comaunded that alle the wodes that were the bisshopes
 scholde be caste adoune to the grounde and alle solde

Howe kyng Iohn distroied the ordor of Cisteaux^b Capitulo
 Centesimo quadragintesimo ix^o

And in the same tyme the Iressh men bigoȝe for to werre vp
 on kyng Iohn and kyng Iohn ordeygned hime for to wende in

pleggys that ys to say his Iustyce Gylbard Patewyn̄ and
 wylliam. Brewer Iohn̄ fitz huhe þat he shuld sawyly com
 and gone aȝene at his owne wyll And in thys maner come
 þe Ersbyshop of Cauntyrbury And when̄ he was come þe kyng
 come to Chylham and wold com no ner but sent to þe Ersbyshop
 þat he shuld doo out þat clause of Restyticioun spesyfid in
 þe endenturs And þe Ersbysshop sayd þat he wold do nothyng
 out þat was spesyfid to for by the bysshoppus And went
 Aȝene to Rome wyt out ony on³ Mor doynge And þan kyng Iohn̄
 was wrother þane euyr a was be forne And anone lett Cry
 thorū oute þe Reme þat þey þat⁴ had holy Chyrchys goodys
 and was ouyr þe See shuld come aȝene in to Englonð And
 euery Scryffe^a þour owthe þe reme shuld enquer ȝif ony
 prelat of Englonð fro that tyme² forthe Ressayvid ony
 Mandmente that come fro þe pope þat þay shuld take þe body
 and bryng hit by for heme And takyd vn to þis kyngys hond
 all þeyr goodys And so all thayr londys þat weryne ȝewyne
 to any mañ þurch þe Ersbyschop Stewyn̄ or by þe Pryour of
 Cauntyrbury fro þe tyme of þe Eleccioun of the said
 Ersbyschopp And he Comandyd allso þat þe wodys of (fol.
 80^b) the Arsbysshop shuld be cast done 7 sold

Howe kyng Iohn̄ distroyed þe ordi[.]⁵ of Cisterne

And in the same tyme the Irysmeñ begane tower vppon̄ kyng
 Iohn̄ And he hordynyð hym to goo

³Stroked out. ⁴þey þat by corr. above; caret in text.
⁵Last letter blotted or badly altered.

to Irlonde and leet arrer an howge tax thoruz owte al
Engelonde that es to seyn xxxv thousand mark and sente poruz
al Engelond to the monkes of the Ordure of Cisteux that bei
scholde helpe him of vj M^l marc of siluer And they answerde
and seide that they derste no thing done on^c her schief
Abbot of Cisteaux wherfore kyng Iohn whanne he come a3ene
in to Engelond he dede heme so moch sorwe 7 care that bei
nyste where for to abide ffor he toke so moch raunsome of
eueri hous of hame that the soume amounted ix M^l 7 iij C
marc so that bei were clene y loste and distroied and
voided here hous 7 her londes pour3 out al Engelond And
the abbot of wauerseie drede so moche his manace that he
forsoke al the abbey and wente thens and priuilich
ordeigned him ouer the See to the hous of Cistieux whenne
the tydinges come to the Pope that the kyng had don so moch
malice poo was he to ward the kyng ful wroth and sent ij
legatis vn to the kyng that on men called Pandolff and
that other Duraunt that bei scholde warne the kyng in the
popis name that he scholde cesse of his persecucioun pat
he dede vn to holi cherch and amende the wrong (fol. 55^ab)
and the trespas that he hath don to the Erchbisshop of
kaunterburi and to the priour and to the monkes of
kaunterburi and to alle the clergie of Engelond and that
he scholde restore the goodes a3ene that he hade y taken
froo heme a 3ens here wille. And elles thei schulle kurse
the kyng be name And to done this thing and to conferme the
Pope toke ham his letters in bullis 7 patentis pese ij
legatis come in to Engelonde and comen to the kyng to
Norhampton there that hee helde his perleament 7 ful
curteisly they hym saluede and saiden on. We be comen fram
the Pope of Rome the pees of holi chirche and of the lond
at mende. And we monest 3ou first in the Popis name that
3e make fulle restitucioun of the goodes that 3e haue
rauessed of holi Cherch and of the lande And that 3e
vndirfonge Stephene Erchbyssshop of kaunterburi in to his
dignite And the priour of kaunterburi and his monkes and

to Irlonde and lett a Rer and heugge taske^b purch out all
 Englonde pat ys to say xxxv M¹ Marke And he sent to þe
 mongkys of Cysterñ pat þay shuld helpe wyt vj M¹ Marke
 and þay Answerd and sayd þat þay myth nott wyt out lyssens
 of theyr Cheff Abbatt ne nothyng to done wyt outtyne hyme
 werfor kyng Iohn dyd hyme much Sorow and care when he come
 from Englonde³ Irlond and toke so much Raunsoun of euery
 howsse of hem þat þay myzth nott A byd hys Dyscressioun^c
 but fled ouyr the See And when this tydyng come to þe pope
 he was sor a mewyd 7 wroth toward þe kyng Iohn /And send
 to hym to lygatys The tone of heme men callyd Pandolf And
 the todir Durante pat þay shuld waryne þe kyng in hys name
 to sesse of hys persecusioun⁶ pat he ded to holy chyrche
 and to Amend all the wrongys and trespasse pat he ded to
 þe Ersbysshoppe of Cauntyrbury and to [doo]⁷ þe priur and
 þe mongys of þe same and to all þe Clerg⁸ of Englonde and
 to make restitucioun

⁶-sec- by corr. over erasure. ⁷Erased. ⁸Followed by
 small tear in vellum.

that 3e 3elde a3ene vn to the Erchbisshop̄ alle his londes
and rentis with owte hany with holdeyng And 3iet more ouere
that 3e sweche restitucioun heme make as holy Cherche schal
holde here a paide Tho answerde the kyng as touching the
Priour and his monkes of kaunterburi al that 3ee haue saide
y wille gladli do 7 al thing that 3e wille ordeigne. But as
towching the Erchbisshop̄ y schal telle 3ou myn herte as hit
lith that the Erchbisshop̄ leet his bisshopriche And þān
that þee Pope for hime wille pray And þān vp on aduenture
me scholde like sum̄ othir bisshopriche to 3eue him in
Engelond And vp on this condicioun y wille him receive and
vndirfonge And netheles in Engelond as Erchbisshop̄ though
he abide he schal neuere haue so good safe condit that he
schal be take^d Tho saide Pandolff vn to the kyng holy
Chirch was neuer wont to desgarde^e Erchbisshop̄ with owte
cause resonable but euere he was wont to chastice prince3
that to god and holi cherch were inobedient what how now
quod the kynge manace 3e me Nay saide pandolff but 3e now
openlich haue tolde as hit standith in 3oure herte And to
do 3ou wel to witte to telle what es the Popes wille thus
hit stant that he hath 3ou holi enterditede (fol. 55^ba)
and accursedde for the wronges that 3e haue dōn to holi
Cherch and to the clergie and for as moch as 3e duelle 7
beep in wille to abide in 3oure malice and wille not come
to none amendement 3e schal vndirstonde as fro that tyme
after ward is vp on 3ou 3eueene and halte stede 7 strengthe
and vp on al þo þat with 3ou hath comuned be fore this
tyme whether that thei bēn Erles Barounes or knyghtes or
eny othir what so euere that thei bien we hame assole
sauelie in to this day And fro this tyme afterward of what
condicioun euer þat they bee we hame accurse þat with 3ou
comune And so do we sentence on heme openly and specially
And we assoilen quitlich^f Erles barounes knyghtes and alle
othir maner men of her homages seruices and feaute3 that
they scholde vn to 3ou dōne And this thing to conferme we

Than Answerd kyng Iohn̄ as tochyng the priour and monkys
 of Cantyrbury all þat 3e cane horden⁹ gladly I wyll
 fulfyllyd But Astochyng to þe Ersebyschop of Cantyrbury
 I² woll tell 3ou myne harte let þe Ersbyschop let his
 benefysse And þe Pope for hym Pray And þan peraventur men
 shul like for to 3if hym Some othyr bennefysse¹⁰ in
 Englonde And vppon this condicioun I wyll Ressayve hem and
 fong heme And (fol. 81^a) nevyrlesse in Englonde 3eff he
 woll a byd he ne shall haue none so good savcondyde but
 þat he shall be take then sayd Pandolfe to þe kyng holy
 chyrche was neuyr wont to dyschard^a ony Arsbysshoppys or
 ony othyr Prelatt wyt out Cawse Resonabyll but euyr she¹
 was wont to chastese princes þat to² god and wold³ holy
 chyrche wold not bene obbedyente What how now quod þe
 kyng Manace 3e me /Nay syr quod Pandolf 3e haue opynly
 told vs 3our harte And to 3oue we wyll Schew 3ou þe popys
 bull 7 comandemente for thus yt stondyd he hathe 3ou
 interdited and Acursyd for wrongus that 3e haue done to
 holy chyrche and to þe clerge and for as much as 3e dwell
 in 3our malice And wold not come to Amendement 3e shall
 vndyrstond fro þis tyme forth the sentens ys vppon 3ou
 3ewyne And takyd styll vppon all tho þat wyt w^b 3ou
 holdene and helpyne in hony thyng azenst holy chyrche

⁹-ñ added by corr. ¹⁰First -ñ- poss. inserted by corr.
 Fol. 81 1s- over c- by corr. ²By corr. above; caret in
 text. ³Stroked out.

3euen plein pouer to the bisshoꝑ of wynchestre to the
 bisshoꝑ of Northwych And the same poure we 3eue in to
 Scotlond to the bisshopis of Rouschestre and of Salesburi
 And in to walis we 3euen the same pouer to the bisshoꝑ of
 Seint Daud and of landa and of Seint Assa. And more ouer
 we sendeth þoruȝ al cristindome and alle the Bisshopis by
 3onde the See that they done acurse alle þo that helpeþ
 3ou [...] ¹ or any counsell 3eue in eny maner nede that 3e
 haue for to do in any parte of the worlde. And that
 assoile ale heme that a 3eyens 3ou meue any maner werr
 And we assoile heme al so be the autorite of the Pope and
 comaunde hem also with 3ou for to werr as with him þat es
 enemy vn to al holi cherch Thoo answerde the kyng what
 mowe 3e do me more Tho answerde pandolfe we seyn to 3ou
 in verbo dei that 3e non heir^g that 3e haue neuer after
 this day may be crouned Tho saide the kyng be him þat es
 almyȝti god and I hade y wiste of þis (fol. 55^b) thing
 ar that 3e come in to my land that 3e hade me brought
 swech tyding y scholde haue made 3ou ride al an hol 3ere
 þoo answerde Pandolfe ful wel wende we at oure firste
 comynge that 3ee wolde haue bieñ obbedient to god and ² to
 holi cherche and aue fulfilled the popes comaundement and
 now we haue pronounced and schewde vn to 3ou the Popis
 wille as we wer charged there with And as nowe 3e haue
 saide that if 3e hade y wiste the cause of oure comyng
 that 3e wolde haue made ws ride al an hol 3er. And as wel
 3e myght haue saide that 3e wolde haue take an hoolle
 3iere of respite by the Popes leue But for to soffre what
 deth that 3e coune ordeigne we schulle not spare for to
 telle 3ou hoolich al the Popes mesage and his will that
 we wer schargeth with

Fol. 55 ¹Two letters erased. ²d by corr. above.

And we 3eff 3ou³ þe same pour to all þe byschopps of
 Englund of Scotlond of walys of Irland and all opyr londys
 be yone þe See And we asoyll heme þat meve ony wer⁴ azens
 3ou or fyte⁵ azens 3ou or dystroy 3oue as enmy to hall
 holy chyrche Thane . Answard þe kyng Iohn wat may 3e doo[.]⁶
 Mor thane sayd Pandolfe we say to 3ou in verbo Dei þat 3e
 none of 3ours heiryys be crowne kyng aftyr this day wyt
 oute þe pour of þe pope Than sayd þe kyng be allmy3ty god
 and I had wylt her off or 3e had comyne in to ths lond
 and brou3t me suche tydynges 3e shull haue south me all
 A holl 3er Than sayd Pandolf full well west we of our
 fyrst comynge þat 3e wold haue ben Obbedient (fol. 81^b)
 to god and to holy chyrche and to hawe fullfylllyd þe
 popys Comandement And we haw now schewe 3ou þe popys
 wyl and his comadement^c as we wer chargyd wyt and we wold
 not and 3e had wylt of our comynge 3e wold haue mad vs Ryd
 all A holl 3er And as well 3e my3te haue sayd þat 3e wolde
 a take an holle 3er of Respyte But for to suffre what
 dethe we my3t Soffer we shall nott spare to tell 3ou þe
 trewth of þe Popys wyl 7 comandement þat wer chargyd
 wyt

⁴Stroke separates ony from wer. ⁵-e by corr. over erased
 -h. ⁶Letter erased, poss. -n.

Howe Pandolff deliuered a clerk that hade falsed and
 conterfeted the kynges mone bi fore the kyng him selfe
Capitulo C quinquagesimo

Anoñ þo comaunded the kyng the Scherif 7 Baillyfs of
 Northampton that were in the kynges presence that thei
 scholde bringe forth alle the prisoneres that thei myght
 be doñe to the deth by fore pandolff for enchesoun the
 kyng wende that they wolde haue gayñ seide here worde
 ffor cause of deth all thinges that he hade spoken fore.
 Whenne the prisoners were come be fore the kyng comaunded
 some to bien enhonged^h and some to be drawe and some to
 drawe her eigen owt of her hed. And among alle othir there
 was a clerke þat had falsed the kynges mone. And the kyng
 comaunded that he scholde ben honged 7 drawe. And whenne
 Pandolff hede þis comaundement of the kyng he sterte hym
 vp smartly and a noñ axed abok an candeale. And wolde haue
 acursede alle hem that sette vp on þe clerke hany honde.
 And pandolff hym selfe wente for to seche acros. And the
 kyng folwed him 7 delyuerede hym selfe the clerke be the
 hande that he scholde do with him what þat euer that he
 wolde. And þus was the clerk deliuered and wente thens.
 And pandolff 7 dwrant his felowe wente þo ffro kyng Iohn
 And come A 3eine ffro the Pope of Rome (fol. 56^a) and
 tolde hym þat kyng Iohn wolde not amended ben but euer
 abide so accursed And no the le3 the Pope graunted þat
 3ere þoru3 Engelande þat men my3te synge messe3 in
 Couenable Cherchis 7 make godes bodi 7 3eue hit to seke
 men that passe oueral And whenne the pope wiste 7 saw þat
 the kyng wolde nought be vndir the rule of holy Cherch
 for no maner thing The pope þo sente to the kyng of
 ffraunce in remissioun of his synnes that he scholde take
 with hym al the pouere þat he my3te 7 wende in to Engeland
 ffor to distroie kyng Iohn whenne this tyding come to kyng
 Iohn þo was he sore annoyed 7 sore a drad lest þat he

Howe pandolfe diliuerid the clerke Capitulo

Anoone the kyng comandyd the Schyrvis and þe bayleis of northamtoun that thay my3th bryng forthe all þe presonerys that þay myth be² brouth to dethe by cause þat Pandolf shuld gensay all þat he had sayd to for for dred of dethe And when þe presoners wer come by for the kyng he comandyd some to be hangyd and drawyne And some to be hang drawyne 7 quartyr And ther was A clerke þat had falsyd þe kyngys money And þe kyng comandyd þat he shull be hangid and drawe And Pandolf sawe þat he stert hym vp Smertly And axid a boke and a Candell and wold haue cursyd all þay þat sett hond on þe clerke 7 pandolf hym self went for to seche a Crosse And the kyng followd hym and delyuerd hyme þe clerke by þe hond to done wyt hym wat he wold And than Pandolf and Durante wente azene to Rome and told þe Pope þat kyng Iohn wold not be correctyd (fol. 82^a) in no wysse and neuyr lesse þe pope grauntyd þat þey¹ þat² mythe haue messe I songe and all þe Sacrementys wer fullfylid And the pope herynge of kyng Iohn wold nott come to Amendemente ne stond to the Rewell of holy chyrche þen þe pope sente to þe kyng of fraunce And chargyd hyme in Remyssioun of his synnes þat he shull take wyt hyme all þe pour þat he my3te for to dystroy þe kynge Iohn /And when thys [d]tydingys³ com to /kyng Iohn he was sor a mewyd and adred leste he

Fol. 82 ¹-y from -r by corr. ²Stroked out. ³d- erased.

scholde lese his reaume & hym selfe ben doñ to the deth
 Tho sente he to the pope messengers & seide þat he wolde
 be Iustefied^b & come to amendement in all maner þinges
 att his owne wille & said þat he wolde come to amendement
 in alle thinges & þat he wolde make satisfaccioun to alle
 maner men after the Popes ordinaunce. Tho sente þe Pope
 a 3ene in to Engelande Pandolff & othir messengers &
 comen to kaunterburi to þe kyng þere þat he abode. And þe
 xiiij day of May the kynge made an oth to stond to the
 Popes ordinaunce by ffore Pandolff the leget in all maner
 thinges for the which he was accursed & þat he scholde
 make full restitucioun to alle men of holi Cherch and of
 religioun of the goodes þat he hade taken of hem a 3eins
 her will & alle the gret lordes of Engelande swore vp oñ
 the boke and bi hys halidome þat if the kyng wolde nowght
 holde his ooth Thei seide þat þeye wolde make hym holde
 hit bi strengthe þo putte the kyng him to the Court of
 Rome and to the Pope and so 3af vp the Reame of Engelande
 & of Irland for him & fore his heire3 for euermore þat
 scholde come after hym so þat kyng Iohn & his heire3
 scholde take þo ij reames of the Popes hande and scholde
 holde þo ij reames of þe pope (fol. 56^ab) as in ferme
 paiynge eueri 3ere to the Court of Rome a thousand Marc
 of Siluer And þo nome the kyng the Crowne of his hed and
 sette hit on his knees. And these wordes seyinge in
 herynge of alle the gret lordes of Engelande here I
 resigne vþ the Croune and the Reame of Engelande in to
 the Popes honde Innocent th þridde and putte me holich
 in to his mercy & in his ordinance þo vndirffongede he
 Pandolffe the croune of kynge Iohn & kepte hit v daies
 as for Seisyng takynge of þo ij^o Reames of Engeland and
 Irlonde & confermede alle maner þiges^c by his Chartur þat
 ffolweth after

shuld d^a lesse hys Reme And hym selfe to done to deth And
 he send to pope messangers And sayd he wold com to
 Amendement in all maner thyng at hys owne wyll Thane sente
 þe pope pandalfe a3ene and oþyr Messangers come to þe pop
 and told hym how kyng Iohn mad anothe to stond to þe
 ordynaunce of pandolf the legat in all maner thyng wher
 of he was Acousyd And wyt þat also þat he shuld make
 Restitucioun to all meñ of holy chyrche of the goodys þat
 he haue take from hyme And all þe grett lordys of Englund
 sworñ Apone A boke þat 3if kyng Iohn wold not hold hys
 ooth thay wold make hym be strenth And thane the kyng v²
 put hym in to þe corte of Rome and to þe pope and 3aff vp
 de Reme of Englund and of Irlond for hyme and for his
 eirs shuld take þes ij Reme3 of the pope as to ferme Payng
 by 3er to þe corte of Rome A M¹ Marke of Syluyr And thane
 toke þe kyng the Croune of hys hed and sett hym done vppon
 hys kneys and thes wordys he sayd in heryng of all [.]he⁴
 gret lordys of Englund Her I Resyng vp the crown (fol. 82^b)
 And the Reumys of Englund and of Irland In to the Popys
 honde Innocente þe iij and put me holy in his mercy and
 hordynaunce Than Vndyrfong Pandfull the Croune of kyng
 Iohn And kep yt v. dayes as for Sesyng takyn in the Remes
 of Englund and of Irlonde and confermyd all thyng of his
 Charchare chartir⁵ followynge

⁴First letter missing (tear in vellum). ⁵Charchare
 stroked out; chartir by corr. above.

Of the letter Obligatourie that kyng Iohn made to the Courte of Rome wherfore the Petrus pens beep gadered pour3 al Engelond Capitulo Centesimo 1 primo

NO^d alle cristene peple poru3e owte þe worlde dwellynge Iohn bi the grace of god kyng of Engelond grettyng to 3oure vnuersite^e And knoweyng hit be as moch that we haue greuede and offended god 7 owre modir Chirch at Rome. And for as moch as we haue nede to the mercy of oure lorde Ihesus crist and we may no þing so worthi offre competent satisfaccioun to make to god 7 to holi Cherch but if hit werr owne body as with oure Reames of Engelond 7 of Irland Thanne be the grace of thee holi gost we desiren to make vs for the loue of him that mekede him to the deth of þe cros pour3 counseil of the noble Erles And Barouns we suffre 7 freli graunte to god 7 to the Appostelles Seint Peter and Seint Poule and to owre modir Chirch of Rome And to owre holi fadir the Pope Innocent þe bridde and to alle the Popes that cometh aftir him alle the Reme and patronagis of Chirchis of Engelond and of Irlonde with all the appourtenaunces ffor remissioun of our synnys and help and helth of our kyn soule3 and of alle cristen soule3 so that ffro this tyme aftirward we wille resceyve Ande halde of our modir Chirch of Rome as fee ferme^f doynge feaute to our holi fadir þe pope Innocent the pride And to alle the popes that cometh after hym in the maner aboue seide And in presence of the wis man Pandolffe the Poppes Southdeken^g we maketh lige homage as hit were in the Popis (fol. 56^ba) presence and be fore him were And we schull do alle maner thinges aboue saide. And ther to we bindeth vs and all that cometh aftir ws and oure heires for euermor with owte hany gayn sailynge to the Pope. And eke the warde of Chirch vacaunt3.^h And in tokene of this þing euere for to laste we wille conferme and ordeigne that our special rentis of the forsaid remes

Of the bonde that Kyng Iohn̄ made Capitulo

To all Crystene pepyll in this world Iohn̄ by þe grace of
 god kyng of Englonde sendyt gretynge to [.]our⁶ vniuersite
 Be it knowynge foras muche as we haue grewyd our lord god
 and our mothyre the chyrche of Rome And haue ned to þe
 mercy of our lord Ihesus Cryste And may nothyng offer to
 god and to holy chyrche so worthy but 3if yt wer our owne
 body And wyt our Remys of Englonde and of Irland for þe
 lowf of hyme þat mekyd hym appon a tree to de dethe
 Thurch consell of our Erls and barons we A for seyde have⁷
 grantyd to god and to þe Appostolus Petyr and pawll and
 to our mothyre chyrche of Rome And to our holy fadyr the
 pope and to all þe popys þat comythe aftyr hyme the Reumes
 of patrenages of Chyrchys of our Remes of Englonde wyt all
 þe portenanssys in to Remyssions of our Synnes And help
 of our kenys Soulys So that fro hens forthe we wyll
 Resayue 7 hold thes ij Remes of our moþir chyrch of Rome
 as ffeferm̄ doyng fealte to ur holy fadur the poppe
 Innocente And to all þe popys þat come afor⁸ hym And in
 presente of pandolf we make liege homage as we wer in the
 present of our pope And we shall doo all maner thyng
 a bove sayd And þer to wee bynd vs and our heirs for euyr
 mor wyt out gaynsyng to the pope⁹ (fol. 83^a) And Eke the
 ward of the chyrche and we shall hold his ferme and
 stabyll for euyr mor and we wolle þat our Spesyall Rentys
 of bothe Remes

⁶Letter erased. ⁷seyd by corr. over erasure; have in
 left margin of following line by corr. ⁸Prob. attempt
 by corr. to alter -o- to -ti-. ⁹Catchword by scribe
 below; and eke the

sauynge Seint Petrus pens in all thing to the modir Chirch of Rome Paying be 3eer a þousand marke of siluer at too termes of the 3ere for alle maner coustomes þat we schulle doñe for the forsaide reames þat es to seyen at Michell masse 7 at Estre þat es to seye vij hundred mark for Engelande and iij hundred mark for Irland sauynge to vs and to our heirres oure Iustices and our othir ffraunchise3 and othir realte3ⁱ þat pertenynt to the croune and all these thinges þat be fore bien saide we wille þat hit be ferme and stable with outen ende. And to that obligacioun we 7 alle oure successours and our heires in this maner beþ bounde that if we or any of our heires þoru any presumpcioun falle in any point a 3ens these thinges a boue seyde and he ben warned and wille nought right amende him he schal þanne lese the forsaide Reames for euer mor And that this chartre of obligacioun and our waraunt for euermore be ferme and stable with outen gayn saiynge. We schulle fro this day afterward be trewe to god 7 to oure modir Chirch of Rome. And to the Pope Innocent the þride and to alle the Couent^j aftir him And the Reames of Engelande and of Irland we schulle maintien treuelich in alle maner poyntes a 3ens all maner of men be oure pouer þour3 godes helpe.

Howe the Clerkes that weren owlawed out of Engelande come a 3ene 7 how kyng Iohn was assoillede Capitulo Centesimo lij^{do}

Whenne this Charture was made and enselede the kynge vndirfonged a3eine the croune of Pandulphus handis and sente anoñ vn to the Erschebisshop Stephene and to alle his othire Clerkes and lewde men that he hade exilled owt of his lond that thei scholde come a 3en in to Engelande and haue a 3ene her landes and her Rentes and that he wolde maken (fol. 56^b) restitucioun of the goodes that

Sawynge Sent petyrs Spensse paying to our modyr chyrche of Rome a M¹ Marke of Syluyr att to termes¹ of þe 3er for all maner costoms þat ys to say at mykylme3 and at Ester vij C¹ Marke for englond and iij C for Irlond Sawynge to vs and to our eyrsse by anny maner of presomysoun shall genesay ony pownte Above sayd and wold not Ryth yt ne a mend yt he shall lesse þe forsayd Reme for euyr mor And we shall be trew and all our eyrs fro this day forthe to god and our modyr chyrche of Rome And to pope Innocente iij And to all þat comyth aftyr hym And þe Remes of Englond 7 of Irlonde we shull maynte truly in all maner powntys þur godys helpe

Howe the clerkis come a 3ene in to Englonde that weren exilid ¶ And howe kyng Iohn was exilid Capitulo

When² thys lettyr was mad and enselyd kyng Iohn vndyrfong hys Crowne a3ene of Pandolfe And Send to the Ersse byschop stewyne to come home and to hys clerkys euery chone and lewd meñ Whome he had exilyd And thay shul haue their londys and theyr Rentys and he wold make Restytucioun of the goodys þat

Fol. 83 ¹First -e- from -r- by scribe. ²Blue initial W followed by 4 line hole in vellum; writing round it.

he hade taken of hem a 3eiens her wille The kyng him selfe
 þoo and Pandolf and Erles and Barouns wente vn to
 Wynchestre a 3eins the Erschbisshop̄ Stephene. And whenne
 he was come the kyng wente a 3ens him and fel adoune vn
 to his feete and seide to him ffair Sire 3e beep welcome
 and I crie 3ou mercy for enchessoun that I haue trespassed
 a 3eins 3ou The Ershbisshop̄ tok him vp in his armes and
 cussede him curteisly ofte tymes. And afterward ledde him
 to the dore of Seint Swithenes Cherch bi^l the hande and
 assoilled him of the sentense and hym reconsilede to god
 and to holi Cherch and that was on seint Mergarettes day.
 And the Bisshop anoñ wente for to singe the messe. Ande
 the kyng offrede at the messe amarc of golde And whenne
 the messe was doñ alle thei went for to vndirfonge alle
 here londes with outen any maner gaynsaienge And that day
 thei made alle merthe and Ioie y nough but 3iet was nought
 the enterdited^k releessed ffor encheson hade sent^l that the
 enterditing scholde nouht bien vndoñ til þat the kyng hade
 mad ful restitucioun of the goodes that he hade take fro
 holi Cherch And al so that him selfe scholde done homage
 to the Pope be a certeine legatt that he scholde sende in
 to Ingelonde þo nome Pandolfe his leue of the kyng 7 of
 the Ersbisshop̄ and went a 3ene vn to Rome. And the
 Erchbisshop̄ anoñ let come be fore him prelates of holi
 Cherch att Redynge for to trette and counsaile hou moch
 And what thei scholde axe of the kyng for to make
 restitucioun of the goodes þat he hade tak of heme And thei
 ordeigned and seide that þe kyng scholde 3eue to the
 Erchbisshop̄ þre thousand marc for the wrong þat the kyng
 hade done to him. And al so þat othir clerkes bi porcions
 xv þousand marke And in the same tyme Nicholas Bisshop̄ of
 Tuscan Cardinall pentauncer of Rome come in to Engelerde
 þour3 the Popes comaundement the v kalend of October and

he had takyne f^a wrongfully from heme And thane kyng Iohn
 7 meny mo 7 his lordys 7 pandolfe wente to wynchestyr and
 Resawyd þe Ersbyshopp Stewyne And kyng fyll done one kneis
 to hyme And sayd fayr syr 3e be welcom home And (fol. 83^b)
 I cry 3ou mercy þat I haue trespassyd to 3ou And than the
 Ersbyschopps toke hym vp in hys harmes and kyssyd hym
 houth^b tymys And in Sent Stewyne chyrche he Assoillyd hyme
 of hys Synnes thys was vppon sent Margaret day And þe
 Ersbyshop anone to syng messe and the kynge offerd a Marke
 of gold And whene messe was done þay went to vndyrfong her
 londys and rentys wyt out any gaynesayinge and mad merth
 7 Ioy I now3e But 3it was þe entyrdytyng done ne relesyd
 vn to þe tyme restitucioun was mad of þe goodys þat kyng
 Iohn had take fro holy chyrche And also hyme self shall
 do homage³ to þe pope by a sertene lygate And þa Pandoll
 toke hys leff and went to the Pope of Rome And thane the
 Ersbyschop lett be for hym come prelatys wyt much opyr
 pepyll att redyng and consell shuld axe of þe kynge for
 Restiticioun 7 þay hordynyd þat þay shuld 3eue to þe
 Ersbysshop iij^l M^l Marke and to opir clerkes xv M^l Marke
 by porcionis And in þe same tyme bysshop Tuskane came
 vnto þis lond penytauncer of Rome by the popys comandement

³MS. has 4 minims for -m-.

come to lundoñ de v Noñ of October^m ffor Enchesoun that kyng Iohn and alle the kynges þat comen aftir heme schold euermore halde the Reames of Engeland and of Irland of God and of the Pope Paying to the Pope be 3ier as is aboue saide

How the enterditynge was vndoñ in Engelande and of the debate that was be twene kyng (fol. 57^a) Iohn and the Barounes of the Reame Capitulo Centesimo liij^o

Whenne kyng Iohn hade doñe his homage to the legat þat schewde him the Popis lettre that he scholde paie to Iuliane and 3elde a 3ene þat was kyng Richard is Wyf the iiij parte of the lande of Engelande and of Irland that he hade with holde seth that the kyng deide Whenne kyng Iohn herde this he was wondir wroth ffor vterlich the enterdytinge myght nought been vndoñ til þat he hade made gree and restitucioun of the for seide Iuliane of that sche axede The legat wente þoo a3ene to the Pope after Cristemasse And the kyng sente þo messengeres ouer the See to Iuliane that was kyng Richardes wife for to haue a reles of þat þat sche axede of him And so hit fille þat Iuliane deide anone aftir Estre and in so moche the kyng was quite of the thing þat sche axede but þo atte the feste of Seint Iohn that come nexte after þoru3 the Popis comaundement the enterditynge was ferst relested þoru3 oute al Engelande the vij day of Iulij and songe masse þoru3 owt lundoñ and so after thour3 al Engelande And the nexte 3er after ther be gane a gret debate be twene kyng Iohn and the lordes of Engelande ffor enchesoune that he wolde nought graunte the lawes 7 holde the wiche Seint Edward hade ordeigned and hade bien vsed and holde vn to þat tyme that he hade heme broken ffor he wolde no lawe holde but ded al thing that him likede And disheriede many men with owten concent of lordes and pieres of the

for by cause þan kyng Iohn̄ ne none of his heirs shuld eu~~y~~
 mor hold þe Remes of Englonde and of Eyrlond of þe pop
 paying by 3er as is Abow sayd

Howe þe endirditing was for done

And when̄ kyng Iohn̄ had done homage to the popys legatt yet
 he most pay to Iuly some tyme kyng Rychard wyffe þe iij
 parte of Englonde and of Irlonde that he had wyt holdene 7
 þan kyng Iohn̄ was wondyr wrothe 7 (fol. 84^a) Ewyll Aplesyd
 for vtterly the entertydyng mythe nott be vndo wyt out þat
 he wold make Restytucioun as well to her as to A nothyr of
 home he had take ony goodys And thane the lygat Seing ~~/~~¹
 this went ou~~y~~ þe See to þe pope And þane kyng Iohn̄ Sente
 Messangers ou~~y~~ the See to Iuliañ for to be Relessyd of
 that che haxid hyme of And so in thys mene tyme Iulyane
 deid And þane kyng Iohn̄ was dyscharged in So mucche And
 þane sone aftyr was þe enterdyting for done And thys was
 done in the vij 3er of kyng Iohn̄s reigñ And thane was þe
 messe songe and the bell Ronge þurth² out þe lond /And in
the next 3er þer fyll a grett debatte by twene þe kyng and
 þe lordys for he wold nott kepe þe lawes þat Sent Edward
 hordynyð wych he had broke meny tymes of her londys 7
 tenementys

Fol. 84 ¹-eing by corr. over erasure. ²-t- from -c- by
 corr.

lande ⁊ he wolde haue disheried the goode Erle Randolfe
 of Chestre for enchesoun that he vndire name him of his
 wikkednesse And for cause that he dede so moch schame and
 vilonie to god and to holi Chersch And al so for he helde
 and hauntede his owne brotheris wif And lay al so be
 manye othir women and grete lordes doughtres ffor he
 spared no womaⁿe that him likede for to haue Wherfore alle
 the lordes of the lande were with him wondir wrothe and
 wente to lundoⁿ and toke the Citte And for to cesse this
 debate and sorwe The kyng and the Erschbisshop and othir
 grette lordes of the londe of Engeland assemblede (fol.
 57^ab) hem afore the feste of Seint Iohn the Baptiste in
 a medwe be sides the toun of Stanis that is called
 Romenemed^a And the kyng made heme there a chartur of
 ffraunchise³ as thei wolde axen and in swech maner thei
 were accorded And þat accordement laste nought ful longe
 ffore the kyng hym selfe sone after dede azeins the pointes
 of the same Chartur þat he hade y made. Wherfore the moste
 parte of the lande of lordes assemblede heme ⁊ bi gonne to
 werr vp on kyng Iohn and brente his tounes and robbede his
 folk and ded all the sorue that thei myghte and made heme
 astronge^b as thei my3te with al here pouere and thou3te
 to dryue him out of Engelande and maken Lowis the kynges
 sone of ffraunce kyng of Engelande. And kyng Iohn sente
 þoo ouer the See and ordeigned so moch peple of Normandis
 and of Picardis and of fflemynge so that the lande myghte
 nought heme susteigne but with mochil sorwe And among alle
 othir peple there was a man of Normandie that men called
 ffau^x of Breut and this Norman ⁊ his companye spared
 nothir Chirch nor hows of religioun that they ne brent no
 robbede hit ⁊ bare a weye al that theye my3te take so that
 the londe was all distroied what in oo side ⁊ in that
 othir The Barouⁿs and lordes of Engelande ordeignede
 amonge heme the best spekere and wisseste men and sente
 hem ouer the See to kyng Philip of ffraunce and prai^de

And he wold deshert yt þe good Erle Randolfe of chestyr
 for henchosyn þat he vndyr toke þe kyng of his wykydnes
 for he ded so muche wellony to god and holy chyrche And
 also he hantyt his owne brothers wyff and lay by oþyr meny
 grett women̄ and gret lordys dousters wherfor þe lordys of
 Englund wer wondyr wrothe And wente heme to london̄ by for
 the fest of Sent Iohn̄e the baptist in a medwe by syd the
 towne of stanys callyd Ronnemedē³ And kyng Iohn̄ mad hym
 þer A Charter⁴ suche as thay wold axe and in this maner
 þay wer accordyd but þat laste nott longe for þe kyng
 hyme self dyd azenst mony of þe powntys wherfor the most
 party of the gret lordys of Englund Assemlyd hem (fol.
 84^b) And by gane to wer azenst kyng Iohn̄ and ded much
 harme to hys lyvlode and pouzt to dryve heme out of
 Englonge And make lewos the kyngys sone of fraunce kynge
 of Englund And kyng Iohn̄ made⁵ A grett Pour of Aliens to
 come vnto thys lond so þat yt mythe no susten̄ hym and hys
 pour Amongys thes mayne ther was mañ callyd ffrankes Breut
 of Norman̄ and he sparyd no maner thyng ne no chyrche So
 þat þe lond was almost dystroyd wat one Syd and wat
 Anothyr syd And þan the bretons of Englund ordynyd amongys
 heme awysse mane to goone to kyng Philype of fraunce and
 praid

³MS. has 4 minims for -m-. ⁴-rter by corr. over erasure.
⁵By corr. above; caret in text.

him that he wolde sende lowis his sone in to Engelande to be kyng of Engeland & to vndirfonge the Croune

How lowis the kynessone^c of ffraunce come in Engeland with astronge pouer of peple to be kyng of Engeland Capitulo Centesimo lliij^{to}

Whenne kyng Philip of ffraunce herde this tyding he made certein aliaunce be twen heme by her comune eleccioun pat lowys kyng Philip's sone of ffraunce scholde goñe with ham in to Engelande & driue out kyng Iohn of the londe and all (fol. 57^ba) that were in presence of lowys made vnto him homage and be comen his men And þe Barouñs of Engelande helde heme stille at london & abiden there lowis the kynges sone of ffraunce and this was next saturday before the Ascencioun of our lorde that lowis come in to Engelande with astronge pouere. And that tyme kyng Iohn hade y take alle the Castelles of Engelande in to Alienes handes And lowys come þo to Rouchestre and besegede the Castell and toke hit with strengþe and the þorsday in Whitson wike and^d lett honge alle the Aliens pat were therinne And the þorsday þo next sewynge he come to london and there he was vndirfonged with mochil honour. And þe lordes that abiden him þere & alle to hym thei maden homage And afterward in the tuesday next after Trinite sonday he tok the Castel of Reygate and in the morwe after the Castel of Gildeford And the friday next after the Castel of ffarnham And the moneday next after the Citte of Winchestre to him was 3olde. And in the morwe after seint Iohnes day the manere of Wolneye and the tuesday next after the viij of seint Peter and seint Poule thei toke þe Castel of Of^e Odyham And the moneday next after Seint Mergareteday he ordeigned him towarde Beaumer for to be sege the Castel and there he dwellede xv daies and my3te nought gette the Castel. And þei wente thens & come

to send ouyr lewys hys sone to be kyng of Englonde and to
vndyrfong þe Crowne //

h^a Howe lewlyn^b þe kyngis sone of ffraunce come in to
Englonde for to be kynge Capitulo

And wene /kyng Philipe of fraunce hard þis he was glad And
vppon þat condycioun þat his sone shuld be kynge he sent
hym ouyr in to Englonde and all þat wer in presens of lowes
mad to hyme homage and fealte and þe barons held hyme at
london and abode⁶ ther /lawys be kyngys sone of fraunce
And he come in to Englonde att Assencioun of our lord
Ihesus Cryste wyth⁷ a strong pouer And kyng Iohn that tyme
had take meny castellys in to halyans hondys And levys
come in to þe castell of Rowchestyr and toke yt and slow
all þe alyons þat þer in was And þane come

⁶-de by corr. over erasure. ⁷-h inserted by corr.

to lundoñ and þe Toure to hym was 3olde.

And in the same tyme the Pope sent in to Engelande Alegat
þat me called Swalno^f and of kyng Iohnes deth Capitulo
Centesimo lv^{to}

And in the same tyme the Pope sent in to Engelande allegat
þat men called Swalue and he was prest ordinale of Rome
for to mayntene kyng Iohnes cause a 3eins the Barouñs of
Engelande. But the Barouñs hade soo huge parte 7 help
thour3 lowis the kynges sone of ffraunce that kyng Iohn
wist nought whedir for to turne no goñ And so hit fille
þat he wolde haue goñ to Nichole and as he wente thedirward
he come be the Abbay of Swenesheuede and there he abode ij
dayes (fol. 57^b) and as he sate atte mette he axede amonke
of the house how moch the lof that was afore him was worth
and the monke seide that the lofe was worth but an halfe
peny Oo quoth the kyng þo þat es grett chep of bred Now
quoth the kyng and y may lyue sweche a lof schal be worth
xx s or halfe 3erre be goñ And whañ he hade seide this
worde moche he thouth and ofte tyme he seighede and nome
7 eete of the brede And saide be god the worde that y haue
spoke hit schal be sop The monk that stode be fore the kyng
was for this worde ful sori in herte and thoughte rather
he wolde him selfe suffre pieteous dep and thought if that
he my3te ordeigne ther ffore sum maner remedie And a noñ
the monke went to his Abbot 7 was schriuen of him and tolde
the Abbot al þat the kyng hade saide and praide his Abbot
for to assoile him ffor he wolde 3eue the kyng swech a
wassail^g that al Engeland scholde be glade ther offe and
Ioifull Tho wente þe monk to agarden and fonde a grett
Toode þerin and nome he^r vp and putte here in a coppe and
prikede thee tode þoru3 with abroch meny tymes til þat the
venyme come owte in to the coppe and þo he nome the cuppe
and fellede hit with good alle and brought hit be fore the

to london and was vndyrfong wyt much honour and worship
 And meny of the lordys mad homage vn to hym and fealtes
 And pane /levys gatte meny castellys in thys lond in dyuers
 plasys And pan he went in to be tour of london 7 held hym
 per allyll^c

(fol. 85^a) Howe Swale the popis legate com into Englonde

And in thys same tyme be pop sente legatt¹ in to thys lond
 callyd /Swalo prest Cardenall of Rome for to maynte kyng
 Iohn a-causte² A 3enst barons but pey³ wer so strong by
 the help of /lewys pat kyng Iohn myzte not wytstond hem
 and so he wold haue gone in to lyncelyn And lay at be
 abbay of Swyneshed ij dayes and as he satt at his mette
 he axid a monke⁴ of the house wat A loff was wrorthe^a pat
 was sett by for hym on the tabyll And be monke sayd And
 halpeny⁵ 0 quod he pane pat⁶ is gret chep bred lo quod the
 kyng And I may leff such a loff sall w² be worthe⁷ xx s or
 a halfe A 3er by paste And pane be mongke heryng her of
 and was full of Sorow 7 thouth rather hyme selfe for to
 dye 3if he myzth hordene per of sum Remedy And went to hys
 Abbot and scrhyvid⁸ hyme clene and told hyme howe be kyng
 sayd And prayd his Abbot to A Soyll heme for he wold 3eff
 be kyng such A drynge pat all Englonde shuld be glad and
 Ioyfull And pane went be monke vn to A gardyne and fond
 a gret tode per in and prekyd her ofte tyme tyll be wenym
 come vute vnto be cop And fyllyd this cup wyt good alle⁹
 and broute yt vnto be

Fol. 85 ¹In right margin opp. by (?) scribe; le[g], with
 g erased. ²Stroked out. ³but pey by corr. above; caret
 in text. ⁴-ke by corr. over erasure. ⁵-y by corr. over
 erasure. ⁶By corr. above; caret in text. ⁷-h- by corr.,
 prob. over a letter. ⁸-r- inserted above by corr. with
 misplaced caret in text. ⁹-e added by corr.

kyng ande knellynge saide Sire quop he watsaile ffor neuer daies of oure liues ne dronke 3e of such a coppe. Byghynne monk quop the kyng and the monk drank a gret drauhte and sette a doune the Coppe and the kyng toke vp the coppe and dranke a grette draught and sette þe coppe doune a 3een. The monke anon right went in to the fermorie^h and there he deide anon on whos soule god haue mercy amen And v monkes sengeth for his soule specially and schulleth whilles the abbay standeþ The kyng aros vp anone ful euel attesse and comaunded to remeue the table and axed after thee monke and men tolde him that he was deed for his wombe was broke in sundir Whanne the kyng herde this tiding he comaundede for to trosseⁱ but al hit was for nought ffor his belly began to swelle ffor the drinke þat he dranke that he deide with in[e]^l ij daies þe morwe affter seint lukes day And this kyng Iohn hadde feire childeren of his bodi gotten (fol. 58^a) that es to seye Henry his sone that was kyng after his fadyr and Richarde that was Erl of Cornewaylle and Isabelle that was Emperice of Rome and Elianor that was quene of Scotlande. And this kyng Iohn whenne he hade regnede xvij 3er v monthes and v dayes he deide in the Castell of Newerk and his body was beried at West^l Wynchestre

Of kyng henre th þredde that was crouned at Gloucester
Capitulo Centesimo lvj^{to}

And after this kyng Iohn regned Henri his sone and was crouned att Gloucester whenne he was ix 3er olde on Seynt Symondes day and Iude of Swalo the legat þoru3 councel of alle the grette lordys that helde with kyng Iohn his fader that es to seye the Erle Randolf of Chestre William erl marchal William Erle of Penbrok William the Berner erle

kyng And sayd wassayll for nevyr dayes of yeur Also²
 lyfe dranke 3e off Suche A cupp by gyne monke quod þe
 kyng And the kyng drang a grett drawthe when þe monke
 had done And þe monke went vnto fyrmory and died anon
 rythe And v monkys syng (fol. 85^b) for hyme 3erly and
 shall for euyr mor And þe kyng hat Comandyd to Remeve
 the tabyll And axid aftyr þe monke and meñ told hym þat
 he was deed And he comandyd to trosse but he Swell so
 þat he my3t nott labyr ne trawell and deid on sent lucas
 day And kyng Iohn had fayr Chyldryn of hys body be goton
 þat ys to say herry þat was kyng aftyrward And Rychard
 þat was Erle of Cornuell And Esbell þat was Emperus of
 Rome And Elynor that was queñ of Scotlond And þis kyng
 Iohn reignid xvij 3er and v montys and v. dayes and ys
 berryd

Of kyng herry the þird þird yeer^b þat was crownid at
 Glowcestre

Aftyr kyng Iohn Reignid herry hys sone and was Crownyd at
 Glaucester þe ix 3er of his [h]age¹⁰ oppon Sent Edmondys
 day Swalo þe lygatt purch consell of all þe grett lordys
 of Englund þat was kyng Iohn hys fadyr þat ys to say Erle
 Randolf of chestyr wylliam Erle Marchall of Penbroke and
 meny hodyr lordys 7 kny3tys

¹⁰_h- erased.

of fferers Serle the Maule barouñ 7 alle othir grette
 lordes of Engelande helde with lowis the kynges sone of
 ffraunce. And anoñ after as kyng Henry was crouned Swalo
 the legat helde his counseil att Bristowe att Seynt
 martinus feste and there were xj Bisschofs of Engeland and
 of Walis and of othir prelatis of holy chirche a grett
 noumber and Erles and barounes and many kny3tes of Engeland
 and alle thoo that wer at the counceille swore feaute vn to
 Henrē the kyng that was kyng Iohnes sone And a none after
 the legat enterditede Walis ffor enchesoun that thei helde
 with the barounes of Engeland And al so all þoo that holpen
 or 3af counceill to meue werr a 3eiens the neue kyng henry
 he accursed heme And in the begynnynge he putte in þe
 sentence the kynges sone of ffraunce Lowys And neuertheles
 the same lowis wolde nou3t spare ffor all that but wente
 a none and toke the Castel of Berkhamstede and eke the
 castel of Hertford And ffrom that day after warde the
 Barouñs dede so moch harme þoru3 all Engeland And princypaly
 the frensche men that were come with Lowys where ffore the
 grette lordes and alle the comune peple of Engeland lette
 heme croice^a ffor to dryue Lowis and his company owt of
 Enge (fol. 58^ab) londe Butte some of the barounes and ek
 of the ffrenchemen were y goone to the Citte of Nicholle
 and token the Citte and helde hit to kyng lowys profytt
 But theþir comen kyng Henriess men with a grett pouer that
 es to seye the Erle Randolfe of Chestre and William Erle
 marchal and William de la Breuñ Erle of ffereres and manye
 othir lordes with heme and 3af bataile vn to Lowis men.
 And there was slayn the Erle of Perches ande lowys men
 were there foule scounfytede And there was take Serle
 Erle of Wynchestre and Hunfrey de Bouñ Erl of Herforde
 and Robert the sone of water^b and many othir that hade be
 gone werr a 3ens the kyng ther were taken and lede to the
 kyng henrē kyng Iohnes sone. Whenne the tydyng of this
 scounfitur come vn to lowys he remeuede þens and wente

And when¹ henry was Crownyd he held hys Counsell at
 Brestow at Sent Margyd fest wer was meny lordys bothe
sperituall 7 temperall And all þay mad homag to hen²
 kyng herry kyng Iohn³ Sone And anone aftyr the kyng^c
 entyrditid walys by cause he held aʒens þe kynge herry
 and all heme þat wer aʒens þe kyng henry or mewyd ony
 werre aʒenst hem and he cursyd hem and in the begynnyng
 lewys þe kyngys sone of fraunce And than⁴ lewes was mor
 frendyd and much mor harme (fol. 86^a) þane euyr he ded
 be for And when^a to þe castell of berkhamsted and held
 hem ther and þane ded the barons much sorow in to þis
 londe and toke þeyr counsell A mongys heme þat lewys
 shuld be gone out of Englonde and his company But some
 of the frenche men and þe lordys þat wer gone to lynceln
 and to þe Syte and held hyt to kyng lewys profite but
 thethyr come kyng herry is men⁵ wyt a grett pour and ʒaff
 batayll to lowys men And ther was slayn þe Erle of Perche
 and þer wer takyne and Somfyte^b meny of lawes men And
 meny lordys weryne takyne and led to þe kynge And lewys
 heryng her of went from þens

vn to lundoñ and leten schett the gatis faste of the Citte. And anone after the kyng sente to the burgeises of london that thei scholde 3elde hem vn to him and the citte al so 7 he wolde hem graunte alle the ffraunchices that euer thei were wont for to haue and wolde conferme hem by his newe charter vndir his grett seal And in the same tyme a grett lorde þat me callede Eustace the Monk come owt of ffraunce with a grett companye of lordes and wolde hafe come in to Engelande ffor to haue holpe lowys the kynges sone of ffraunce But hubbert of Brught and the vif^c portes with viij Chippes and no mo mette with heme in the heigh See and assailed ham egerli and ouer come hem þoru3 strength and smetten of Eustace þe monkes hede And token al so the gret lordes of ffraunce and putte hem in to prisoun and quelled al most alle þe men that come with hem and a noñ (fol. 58^ba) drenchide the schippes in the see

How lowys torned a3eyen in to ffraunce And of the conffirmacioun of kyng Iohnis Charter Capitulo Centesimo lviij^o

Whenne lowys herde this tyding he drade sore to be dede and lost and lette ordeign and speke be twene the kyng and lowys be þe legatt Swalo And þourgh the Erschebischoþ of kaunterburi and þoru othir grette lordes that alle the prisoneres of on halfe and on þat othir scholde be diliuerede and goo quyt Ande Lowys him selfe sholde haue for his costages^d a þousand pound of seluer and scholde goñ owt of Engeland and come neuer ther inne a3ene And in this maner was the accorde made be twen kyng Henri and Lowys. And þo was lowys assoilede of the popes legat that men callede Swalo of th Sentence þat he was in and the Barounes of Engelande al so And after this kyng henre and Swalo the legat and lowys wente in to merton and there

to london And lett schet gatys of þe Cyte And a none after
 the kyng sent to þe Burgessys of london þat þay shuld ȝeld
 vp the Cyte and ȝeld heme vp also to heme And he wold
 graunte all þe frauncesys þat þay wer wont to haue by for
 tyme by his gret new charter vnder his gret Selle And in
 then¹ same tyme a gret man of fraunce But the v portys And
 toke x grett lordys of fraunce And put hem into presoun
 And kyllyd meny of the men that comyd wyt heme And drynch
 þeir Schippis in the^c

Howe lewis turned a ȝene in to ffraunce Capitulo

And when thys lewys hard of thys tyding he was sor adred
 to be ded And lett entyr the kyng herry by the Ersbyschop
 of Cauntyrbury and Swalo and meny oþyr lordys So þat all
 þe presiners^d (fol. 86^b) on bothe sydys shull be delyuerd
 vnto presone and lewys shuld haue to hys costys a M¹ li
 and go home Sawely and come neuyr aȝene And in thys maner
 þay wer bothe Accordyd kyng herry And kyng Iohn of fraunce
 lewes was Asoulyd and all the othyr pepyll And þane went
 kyng herry and lewys and all þe lordys to mertyne And ther

was the pees confermed and be twene hem ordeigned And
 afterward lowis wente fro thens vn to london And nome his
 leue and was brought with moch honour att the See with the
 Erschebischof of kaunterburi ⁊ with other bisschopes And
 al so with Erles Barouñs And so wente lowys in to fraunce
 And afterwarde þe kyng ande the Erschbisshof ⁊ Erles ⁊
 Barouñs assemblede heme at london at Michilmesse þat nexte
 þo come sewynge And held þere apparlement And þere were þo
 renewede alle the ffraunchises that kyng Iohn graunted
 hade at Roume mede And kyng Henre þoo confermede heme by
 his charter the whech 3et bep holden þour3 all Engeland
 And in that tyme the kyng tok of euerich Plough londe ij
 s And Huberd of Burgh was made the Chief Iustice of all
 Engelande And this was the iiij 3er of kyng henres regne
 And in the Same 3er was Seynt Thomas of kaunterbury
 translated the viftyth 3ere of his marterdome And after
 hit was ordeyned by alle the lordes of Engelande that
 Aliens scholde owt of Engeland and come nomore þere (fol.
 58^b) inne And the kyng þo nome alle the Castelles in to
 his hande that kyng Iohn his fadir hade y 3ouen and taken
 vn to Aliens for to kepe that helde with him But the proud
 ffaukes of Breut richely lette Arraye hy^e Castel of Bedford
 the whiche he hade of the kynges 3effte Iohn And he held
 þat Castel a 3ens kyng henres will with myght ⁊ strenght
 And the kyng come þedir with strong pouer and be segede
 þe Castel. And the Erchebischof of kaunterburi maister
 Stephene of langton with afair companye of knyghtes come
 to the kyng him for to helpe And frame the Ascensioun vn
 to the Assumptioun of our lady last þe Seege and þo was
 the Castel wonne ⁊ take And the kyng lett honge alle þo
 that wer wente in to the Castel with her good will for to
 holde the Castel þat es to wette foure score men And þo
 afterward ffaukes him selfe was founde in a Chirch of
 Couentre and ther al Engeland with moch schame he for
 swore and wente þo a 3ene in to his owne cuntre And

was the pesse confermyd And lewes fro pens vnto þe See
 And So home wyt much honour And aftyward þe kyng and all
 þe lordys both Sperituall and temperall Assemblyd hem at
 london at Mykylmes þan nex followyng And held ther a grett
perlemente And ther wher grauntyd all the frauncechys þat
 kyng Iohn had grauntyd att Ronnemed² and he confermed by
 her chartors the wich bene holden 3it þourch out Englonde
 And in þat tym the kyng toke euyry plowe lond ij ̄ and
 hubbert of burch was mad cheff Iustysse of Englonde And in
 the iij 3er of hys Reigne was sent tomas of Cauntirbury³
 trianslatid the v. 3er of hys marterdom And hyt was
 hordynyd by all the lordys of Englonde þat all þe halons
 shuld goo out of the Reme and come no mor ther a3ene ?
 the kyng toke þan þe castellys in to hys hondys þat kyng
 Iohn had 3euyne to dyuers Alyons for to hold wyt hyme But
 prowde frankys of Brente had a Rayd hys castell in the best
 A Ray And held wyt lawys A3ens kyng herry wyt myth and
 strenthe And þe kyng com wyt A grett pour and be segid þe
 castell And Mastyr stewyn lontoun come wyt A fayr mayne
 fro Cantirbury and for help the kyng And þis sege A duryd
 fro the Assencioun vn to þe Assumsioun of our lady And
 thane was þe castell takyne and all þat wer þer in wer
 hangyd iiij^{xx} men in nombyr And frankys Anone A (fol. 87^a)
 none^a was fonde in A chyrch by syd coventre and fore Swor
 Englonde wyt much Schame And

²MS. has 4 minims for -m-. ³Superscript -i-.

whiles that kyng henre regnede Edmund of Abyngton pat was tresorer of Salesburi was consacred Erschbischof of kaunterburi And this kyng henre sente ouer the See vn to the Erle of prouince that he scholde sende him his doughter in to Engelande that men callede Elianore and he wolde wede her And so scheo come in to Engelande after cristus masse day And in the morwe after Seynt Hillar the Erschebischof Edmond spoused hem to gidere at Westmenstre with mochil solempnite And ther was a swette sighte be twen hem that es to seie Edmund pat was [kyng]² nexte after him his brothire flour of curtesie and of largesse. And mergarete that was aftirward quene of Scotlonde And Beatrice that was afterward Countesse of Britayne And katherine pat deide maide in religioun

Of the Quinzime^f of Goodes that werr Graunted for þe newe Charters 7 of the puruiaunce^g of Oxenford Capitulo Centesimo Quinquagesimo Octauo 7c

(fol. 59^a) And thus hit fille that the lordes of Engeland wolde haue some addiciounes ine the Charter of ffraunchise³ pat they hade of the kyng and spoken thus be twen hem and the kyng grauntede hame alle her axinge and made to hem ij Charters that on es called the grett schartour of ffraunchises And pat othir es called the Charter of fforest And for the graunt of þes ij Charteres prelates Erles 7 Barounes and alle the comunes of Engeland 3af to þe kyng a þousand marke of Siluer Whenne kyng henre hade ben kyng xliij 3ere pat same 3ere he hade^a his lordes Erles and Barouns of the Reaume wente to Oxenford and ordeignede alawe in amendement of the reaume And ferst swore þe kyng him selfe and after alle the lordes of the reaume that thei wolde halde the Statut for euermor And

²Erased.

wylle kyng herry reignyd Edmond of habyngdoun tresour of Salusbery was consecrat Ersbyschop of Cantyrbury and þis hery Sent in to Cauntyrbury^b vnto þe Erle of provens þat he shuld send hym hys dou3tyr in to Englonde callyd Alynor And he wold wed her And so che come 7 was spowsy to kyng herry wyt much Solembnyte And ther was A-fay-fyr-Set-of fayr¹ Sey3th of Edward þat was kyng after heme hys broþyr flour of Curtessy and of manhod And Marget þat was afterward queñ of Sotlond^c And beatrice þat was Countes of bretayn And kateryne þat deid Maid in Relygioun

Of the Quindecim þat was gadered Capitulo

And hyt be fyll þat þe lordys of þe lond wold haue moo Addisciouns in the Chyrches^d of fraunsys and for thes þat þay had be spokyne by twen heme and þe kyng grauntyd heme þeir Axinge 7 mad to heme to Chartres oon þat ys callyd þe chartre of forest And þe toþyr þat ys chartre of fraunchyses And for þes grauntys þe lordys and þe comens 3aff to kynge A M¹ Marke of Syluyr And in þe xlvj 3er of kyng hery he and hys lordys went to Oxinforthe and ordynid theyr lawys in Amendemen of the Reme And þe kyng Swore by hyme and all þe lordis after hym to hold hym for euyr mor And

who that hem brak scholde be ded But the seconde 3er after
 the ordenaunce the kyng pourgh counsel of Sire Edward his
 sone and of Richard his brothir that was Erle of Cornewayle
 And and al so othir repented heme of that oth that he hade
 made for to holde that lawe and ordinaunce And sent to the
 Court of Rome to be assoiled of þat ooth And in þat 3ere
 nexte comynge after was the grete derth of corn in
 Engeland ffor aquarter of whette was worth ffoure 7 twenty
 schellynges and the pore peple eet nettles for hunger and
 othir wedis 7 þere deide many a þousande for faute of meete
 And in the xlvij 3er of kyng henries regne be gañ werr and
 debate be twen hym 7 his lordes for enchesoun that he hade
 be¹ broken the couenaunt þat was made be twen hem att
 Oxenford And in the same 3ere in lente was the toune of
 Northampton take and the solk^{2b} slayne that was with ynne
 ffor enchesoun that they hade ordeigned wilde fire ffor to
 haue brent the Citte of london (fol. 59^ab) And in the month
 of may that come next vp on seynt Pancras day was the
 bataile at lewys þat es to say the wednesday be fore
 seynt Dunstonus day And there was take kyng henre him
 self and sere Edward his sone and Richard Erle of
 Cornuayle and many othir lordes And in þat same 3er next
 sewynge sere Edward the kynges sone brak out of the warde
 of sere Symund of Mountfort erl of leicestre att Herforde
 and wente to the barouns of þe marche and thei vndirfonged
 him with mochil honour And in the same tyme Gilbert of
 Clarence Erle of Gloucestre þat was in the warde al so
 of þat forsayde Symound pourgh comaundement of þat kyng
 henry that wente fro him with grett herte for enchesoun
 that he saide þat the forseide Gilbert was a fole in his
 counsaile Wherfore he ordeignede him afterward And so he
 helde with kyng henre And the Saturday next after the
 myddes of August sere Edward the kynges sone descounfited

Fol. 59 ¹Stroked out by scribe. ²No cross-bar on long s.

who þat heme broke shuld be ded Butt in de second 3er
 aftyr þe consell of Syr Edward his sone And Rychard hys
 bopyr^e Erle of Cornuell 7 othyr repentyd hem of þat oothe
 for (fol. 87^b) to hold that lawe and ordenaunce And sent
 vnto our curte of Rome to be Assoylid of that ooth And in
 the same tyme was a gret derthe² of Corne for a quarter
 wett was at xxiiij s̄ And ther³ pour pepyll hetyn for
 hongyr netyrcis^f And wedys and deid þousandys of þeme for
 defaute of mette 7 dryng And aftyrward by come Agrett
 debatte by twene kyng harry and hys lordys for cawsyne
 þat he had brokyne þe lawys at Oxinforthe And in that
 Same 3er was þe towne of Sowthamtoun takyne and þe folke
 slayne þer in for cause þay hordene to brene the Cyte of
 london And in þe monyth of May oppoñ Sent panchras day
 was a gret batell at lewys /And þer was take þe kyng hym
 Self And Syr Edward his sone brake out of the ward of Syr
 Symone Mounfort Erle of Salysbury and ther for he went
 vn to þe barons of the Marche and þay vndyfong hem wyt
 much honour And in this same tyme Gylbard of Clarens Erle
 of Glowcestyr was in þe ward of þe sayd Syr Symond þour
 comandement of kyng herry for caws he wente fro þe kyng
 herry in wrreth of kyng herry sayd he was but A folle And
 it happyd aftyrward þat Syr herry þe kyngys Sone discomfyd

²Superscript -r- by scribe. ³-r- stroked out.

sere Simound the Mountfort att kemworth but the gret lordes
 pat were there with hym were takyn that es to seyen
 Baldewyn Wake William of Mouchensye and manye other grete
 lordes And the tewys day next after was the batail doñ at
 Euesham And ther was quelled sere Symond þe Mountfort hugh
 þe Spenser and Mountfort þat was Raf Bassettes fadir of
 Draitoun And othir manye grette lordes And whanne the
 bataile was doñ alle the gentiles^c þat hade ben with Erl
 Simound were disherited and thei ordeigned hem to gidere
 and dede moch harme to alle the londe for thei distroied
 her enemyes in al that þei myghte.

Of the seege of kemworth and how the gentill men were
 disherited þourgh counsell of lordis of the Reame of
 Engelond and how thei come a 3eyen 7 hadde her londis
 Capitulo Centesimo quinquagesimo Nono 7c

And the 3ere next comynge in may the ferth day be fore the
 feste of Seynt Dunston was bataile 7 sconfiture (fol. 59^ba)
 att Chesterfelde of ham that wer disheritede and there many
 of heme wer quelled And Robert Erle of fferers there was
 take and Baldewyn Wake and Iohn de la hay with mochil sorwe
 schapede thens And in seynt Iohnes euen the Baptist þo
 next sewynge be gan the sege of the Castel of kembworth
 and the sege last tyl seynt Thomas euen the Appostl in the
 which day sere hugh hastyng hade the Castel for to kepe
 that 3elde^d vp the castel vn to the kyng in this maner
 that hym selfe and alle the othir that wer with ynne the
 Castel scholde haue hir lyf 7 lyme and as moch thing as
 they hade theryne both hors 7 harneys and iiij dayes of
 respite for to deliuere clanseliche^e the Castel of heme
 selfe and of alle maner of thing that they hade with ynne
 the Castel And so thei wenten fro the Castel 7 the kyng
 and his men wente in to the Castel And sere Simound de
 Mountfort the 3onger and the Cuntasse his modir wer fled
 ouer the See in to ffraunce and ther helde ham as peple
 þat were exilled owt of Engelond for euermore And sone

Syr Symond att kenylworth And meny gret lordys wer takyne
 þer þat ys to say Balwyne wake wylliam of Monford 7 meny
 obyr grett lordys And soñ aftyr þis was A batayll done at
 Euesham And þer was slayne Syr Symond de Mounfort huch
 Spenser Rawf bassetis ffadyr of Dragoun And this batell
 was done þe Gentelles þat Eld wyt þe Erle Symond and
 dishit^g and ded much harme to all þe lond for þey (fol.
 88^a) dystroyd in all þat þay mythe

Of sege of kenelworth¹

And in þe sam² 3er was A gret Schomfetur and a grett
 batayll done at chestyrfeld of hym þat weryn dyssherte and
 ther meny of þeme wer kyllyd And Roberd Erle fferers was
 take þer And baldewyne wake 7 Iohn̄ delaye aschapyt³ wyt
 mich⁴ Sorrow fro thens And at þe fest of Sent Iohn̄ baptyst
 bygane þe Seg of kenelworthe and endeuryd tyll Sent Thomas
 day And syr hug hastyng had the castell in kepyng and 3eld
 yt vp to the kyng in this maner So þat he hyme self and as
 meny as wer þer in shuld haue lyff and lyme in Resonabyll
 tyme to Awoyd her herneys wyt in þe castell and sso thay
 went thedyr thay wold and þe kyng enteryd And in the same^a
 the Countes and her sone Syr Symond of Mondford fled in to
 fraunce and þer held hyme as pepyll exilid for euyr more
 And sone

Fol. 88 ¹Guide chapter-heading by scribe in right margin,
 unerased but lopped; of þe seg of kenwo / þat dyssherte
²Followed by small hole. ³Superscript -t. ⁴Minim prob.
 omitted from mu-.

after hit was ordeigned bi the legat Octoboñ and be othir grette lordes the visest of Engeland þat alle þoo that hade beñ aʒens the kyng and were disheritede scholde haue aʒen here londes and by greuous raunsom after that hit was ordeigned And thus they were accorded with the kyng Tho was pees cried þorugh al Engelande and thus the werre was ended Ande whañ this was doñ the legat nome his leue att the kyng and of the quene and of alle the grette lordes of Engeland and wente to Rome the vif 7 fyfty 3er of kyng henre regne And Edward kyng Iohnes sone of Britaigne Iohn Vessy Thomas of Clarence Roger of Clifford Othes of Grauntsoun Robert le Brus Iohn of Verdoñ and manye othir lorde of Engelande 7 be 3onde the See token her (fol. 59^b) wey toward the holy lond And the kyng henre deide in the mene tyme at westmynster whenne he hade been kyng lv 3er and xix wekkes in Seynt Edmundes day the Erchebisschoþ and he was entered at westmynstre on seynt Edmundis day the kyng In the 3er of incarnacioun of our lord Ihesus crist M^l CC^o lxxij.

Profecye of Merlyn of kyng henre expounded that was kyng Iohnes Sone Capitulo Centesimo lx^{mo}

And of this kyng henry propheciede Merlyn and saide that alombe scholde come owt of wynchestre In the 3er of Incarnacioun of our lorde M^l CC^o xvj with trewe lippes and holynesse wreten in his herte And saide soth ffor the goode henre the kyng was bore in wynchestre in the 3er aboue seyde and he spak goode wordes 7 swette 7 was a holi mañ 7 of goode concience And Merlyn saide that that this henri scholde mak the feirest place of the worlde that in his tyme scholde not been ful ended and he said soth for he made the newewerk^f of the Abbay of Seynt Petrus Scherch at westmynstre that es feyrer of sight thañ any other chirche þat men knowen þourgh al cristendome

Aftyr by the legate Octoboun and oþyr wysse lordys of
 Englund þat all þat had bene A 3enst þe kyng shuld haue
 þeir londus A3ene and Raunsond grewosly and thane þay wer
 accordit 7 þus was pesse cryd þour oute þe lond and so
 þey wer^b Endyt And when þis was done this Octobone toke
 hys leve of þe kyng 7 þe quene And went to Rome And in
 þe lv 3er of kyng harry Reignid Edward kyngis sone of
 bretayn Iohn wessy Thomas of clerke Roger clefford Othes
 of Graunsoun Robert brus Iohn of wedoun and may oþyr
 lordys of Englund 7 of the be a3ened þe See toke her wyage
 to holy lond And kyng herry deyde in the men tym (fol. 88^b)
 at westmestyr þe xv 3er and ix wekys of hys Reigne oppon
 Sente Edmond day and was enteryd att westemestyr þe 3er
 of our lord it^c M^l CC lxx ij^o

but kyng henre deide or that werk wer full made and that
 was grett harme And 3iet saide Merlyn that this lambe
 scholde haue pees the moste tyme of his regne And he saide
 ful soth ffor he was neuere annoyed pourgh werr no
 disessede in nomaner wise til alitil be fore his deth And
 3iet saide Merlyn mor in his prophecie that in regne and
 the ende of the fforseide lambe awolf of Straunge lande
 scholde doñ him grete harme pourgh his werr 7 þat he
 scholde att the laste be maistre þurgh help of A reede
 fox þat scholde come owt of the north west and scholde
 hym ouercome 7 þat hee scholde dryue hym vn to the water
 And þat prophecie ful wel was knowen ffor with ine alitil
 tyme or the kyng deide Simound þe mountfort erle of
 leicestre that was borre in fraunce be gan a 3eiens him
 stronge werr pourgh which doynge many a good bachelor was
 schent 7 ded 7 disheriede (fol. 60^a) And whane kyng henre
 hade the victorie att Euesham And Symound the Erle was
 slayn thourgh help 7 myght of Gilbert of Clare erl of
 Gloucestre that was in kepynge and ward of the fforseide
 Symounde pourgh ordinaunce of kyng henry that wente a 3en
 to the kyng with mochil poer the fforseid Symound was
 schent and that was grett harme to the comunes of Engelande
 that so good aman was schent for treuth and deide in
 charite 7 ffor the comune profit of the same folc And
 þerefore almyghti god for hym hath sethnys schewed many
 feir meracles to diuerse men and wymmen of Sekkenes 7 of
 dissesse þat þei haue hade for the loue of hyme And merlyne
 al so tolde and saide in his prophecie þat after that tyme
 the lambe scholde leue no while and thane his sed scholde
 be in straunge lond with owte Pastur and he seide soth
 for þis kyng henre leuede no whille after whenne Simound
 Mountfort was ded þat kyng henre ne deide anon after hym
 And in the mene tyme Sire Edward his sone þat was þe
 beste knyght of the worlde of honour was þo in the holi
 londe and shete^a þere Acres And in that countre he be gate

Blank Page

in dame Elianore hys wyf Iohne of Acres his doughter that
afterward was Countesse of Gloucestre And he made in the
holy londe swech a viage þat al the worlde spake of his
knyghthode And eueri man drade hym heige and lowe þorgh
al cristendome as the storie of him telleþ as afterwarde
þe schulleth her mor openly And fram the tyme that kyng
henre deide til that sere Edward was crouned kyng all the
grette lordes of Engeland wer as fadir les childeren with
owte any socour þat heme myghte mayntene ⁊ gouerne ⁊
defende a 3eiens here dedlich enemyes.